Sc. Mil.

35 h

Field Exercise

Teilen Off

Number — Telegr. in Abdeutung & Sechs

mark to Fuck Time — Jn 4 deck various way

Subdivision — Zeit

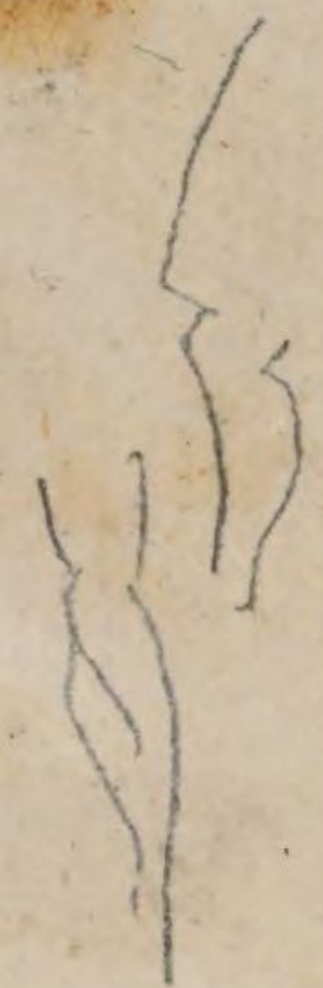
do — Lesst —

Sections — Lesst —

do — do

Voices do — do

from Sp[illegible]



R. mil.

[illegible] Paces

[illegible] Dis[illegible] Tare, [illegible] Pace

28 Königstr. 20 - Mer

$$\begin{array}{r|l} & 2 \\ \hline 3 & 56 \\ \hline & 18 - \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r|l} & 2 \\ \hline 3 & 40 \\ \hline & \cancel{13} \end{array}$$

~~13~~ Noten -

Mdd

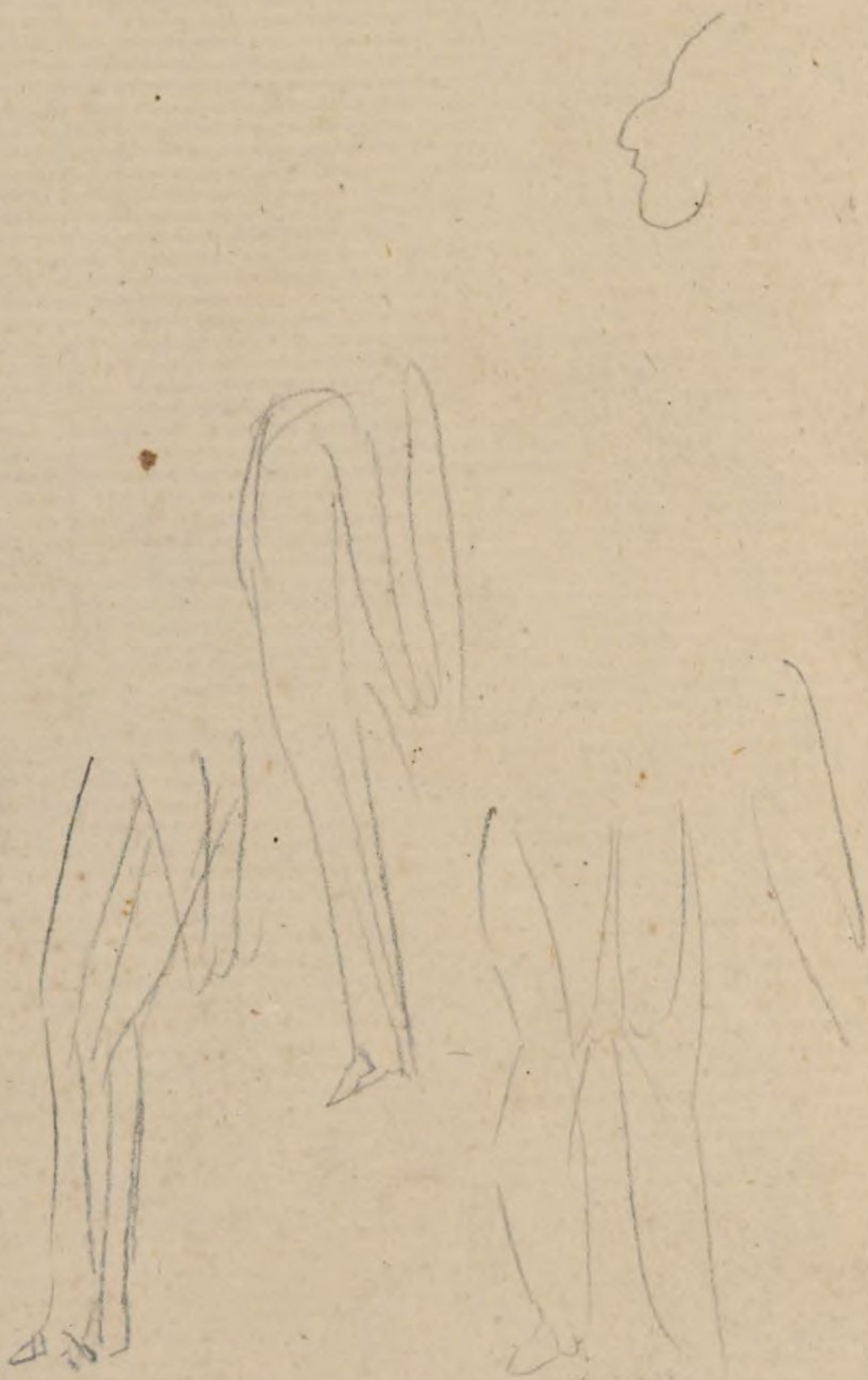
[illegible] -

[illegible] Lesen Conferenz -

Vor König

[illegible] Lesen d. Mitgl. Sectionen - Zuerst [illegible]

No 2.



BY HIS MAJESTY'S COMMAND.

FIELD EXERCISE

AND

EVOLUTIONS

OF

THE ARMY,

AS REVISED IN

1833.

BY AUTHORITY:
PRINTED AND SOLD BY WILLIAM CLOWES,
14, CHARING CROSS, LONDON.

BIBLIOTHECA REGIA MONACENSIS

DOUBLETTE DER KÖNIGL. BIBLIOTHEK MÜNCHEN

14 3

22

20 2 / 48 / 3 1 / 1 mea

GENERAL ORDER.

Horse Guards,
21*st August,* 1833.

THE System of Field Exercise and Movement of the Infantry has been revised, by a Board, composed of Officers selected for that purpose by the General Commanding in Chief, and approved by THE KING.

The Board has, upon the most careful and anxious consideration, recommended that the System in question shall, for the future, be conducted under the following Rules and Regulations, and the General Commanding in Chief having concurred in that recommendation, HIS MAJESTY has been pleased to confirm and approve the said Rules and Regulations, and to command, that they shall be promulgated to the Army.

It will be seen that the Board has, in no instance, lost sight of the principles inculcated, originally, by

the late General Sir David Dundas, and, subsequently, by the late Major-General Sir Henry Torrens; *viz.* those of uniting "simplicity with utility, and precision with celerity," although, in furtherance of the purpose for which it was assembled, it has deviated from the System of those lamented and able Officers, in the instances in which the test of practice suggested deviation.

The General Commanding in Chief has, upon this occasion, received the KING's special commands to require of all General Officers, in charge of Troops, the most scrupulous adherence, upon their own parts, to the System now adopted by HIS MAJESTY for HIS Infantry, and to remind them, that it is to their superintendence and vigilance that HIS MAJESTY trusts for the enforcement of prompt and implicit obedience to all General Orders and Regulations, and that they cannot fulfil HIS MAJESTY's pleasure, nor prove themselves deserving of the confidence reposed in them, in this respect, if they suffer any Individual whatsoever, serving under their authority, to depart from the System thus laid down by HIS SOVEREIGN for General Instruction.

The General Commanding in Chief feels, that He cannot more effectually impress upon the minds of the Officers of the Army, the weight of responsibility which they will incur by attempting to introduce or practise what they may deem to be improvements upon the System now promulgated, than by annexing literally the terms in which His Majesty was pleased to signify His approval thereof; *viz.*—

"Approved,"——

"This Field Exercise to be rigidly adhered to, "and the General Officers on the Staff are required, at "their different Inspections, minutely to see, that each "Regiment does correctly follow His Majesty's "commands, as particularly set forth.

(Signed) "WILLIAM R.

"*Windsor Castle,*
16*th August*, 1833."

By Command of the Right Hon.
The General Commanding in Chief,

JOHN MACDONALD,
Adjutant-General.

Sutherland Highlanders

CONTENTS.

PART I.

Page

Instruction of the Recruit 1

WITHOUT ARMS.

SINGLE RANK AT OPEN ORDER.

Section

1. Position of the Soldier 3
2. Standing at Ease 4
3. Eyes to the Right 5
4. The Facings 6
5. Position in Marching 8
   Balance Step . . . . . *ib.*
6. Slow Step 10
7. The Halt 11
8. Stepping Out . . . . . *ib.*
9. Stepping Short . . . . . *ib.*
10. Marking Time 12
11. The Side or Closing Step . . . . . *ib.*
12. Stepping Back 13
13. Changing the Feet . . . . . *ib.*
14. Oblique Step . . . . . *ib.*
15. The Quick Step 15
16. The Double March . . . . . *ib.*

SINGLE RANK AT CLOSE ORDER.

Section		Page
17.	Dressing when Halted	17
18.	File Marching	20
19.	Wheeling of a Single Rank in Slow Time from the Halt	21
20.	Wheeling backwards a Single Rank	22
21.	Changing the Direction by the Wheel of a Single Rank on a Moveable Pivot	*ib.*
22.	Oblique Marching in Front	23
23.	Diagonal March	24

WITH ARMS.

24.	Position of the Soldier	26
25.	Different Motions of the Firelock	*ib.*
26.	Attention in forming the Squad	27
27.	Open Order	28
28.	Close Order	*ib.*
29.	Manual Exercise	*ib.*
30.	Platoon Exercise	*ib.*
31.	Firings	*ib.*
32.	Marching to the Front and Rear	29
33.	Open and Close Order on the March	32
34.	March in File to a Flank	*ib.*
35.	Wheeling in File	33
36.	Wheeling forward from the Halt	34
37.	Wheeling Backward	*ib.*
38.	Wheeling on a Halted and Moveable Pivot	*ib.*
39.	Stepping Out,—Stepping Short,—Marking Time,—Changing Feet,—The Side Step,—Stepping Back,—The Oblique Step,—The Diagonal March	35

PART II.

OF THE COMPANY.

Section		Page
1.	Formation of the Company	37
2.	Marching to the Front	39
3.	The Side Step	41
4.	The Back Step	*ib.*
5.	To Form Four Deep	42
6.	File Marching	43
7.	Wheeling from a Halt	45
8.	Wheeling forward by Sub-divisions from Line	*ib.*
9.	Wheeling backward by Sub-divisions from Line	46
10.	Marching on an Alignement in Open Column of Sub-divisions	47
11.	Wheeling into Line from Open Column of Sub-divisions	48
12.	In Open Column of Sub-divisions entering into a new direction on a Moveable Pivot	50
13.	Counter-marching	51
14.	Wheeling on the Centre of the Company	53
15.	Diagonal March	54
16.	Increasing and diminishing the Front of an Open Column halted	*ib.*
17.	Increasing and diminishing the Front of an Open Column on the March	56
18.	The Company in Open Column of Sub-divisions to pass a short Defilé by breaking off Files	57
19.	The Company, halted, or on the March, moves to a Flank in Column of Sections, or of Sections of Threes	58
20.	Forming Company, Sub-divisions, Sections, or Sections of Threes, from File Marching	61
21.	To form to either Flank, from Open Column of Sub-divisions	62
22.	The Company moving to the Front, to gain ground to a Flank, by a March in Echellon, by Sections	63
23.	To form the Rallying Square	*ib.*

PART III.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR THE MOVEMENTS OF A BATTALION.

Section		Page
1.	Commands	69
2.	Degrees of March	70
3.	Marching in Line	71
4.	Wheeling	74
	Table	79
5.	Movements	80
6.	The Alignement	81
7.	Points of Formation	83
8.	Dressing	87
9.	OPEN COLUMN	89
	Central Movements in Double Column	90
	Posting of Officers	93
	Marching by Sub-divisions, Sections, and Sections of Threes	94
	——— Four Deep	95
	Column of March or Route	98
	Diminishing and increasing the Front of Column	100
10.	COLUMN AT QUARTER DISTANCE AND CLOSE COLUMN	101
	Wheeling of Quarter Distance and Close Columns	103
	Posting of Officers	105
	Deployment	*ib.*
11.	Echellon	107
12.	Squares	117
13.	Firings	119
	Street Firing	122
	FORMATION OF THE BATTALION	125
	When a Battalion takes Open Order	128
	When a Battalion resumes Close Orde	129

EVOLUTIONS OF THE BATTALION.

Section Page

MOVEMENTS OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE . 131

14. When the Battalion, halted and correctly dressed, is to advance in Line . . . . . *ib.*

15. When a Battalion, advancing in Line, is to charge . 132

16. When a Battalion, moving in Line, passes a Wood or other Impediment, to front or rear by the flank march of Companies 133

17. When the Battalion advances or retires by half Battalions and fires 135

18. A Battalion formed in Line may have to make an attack, or to pass a bridge or short defilé to the front, from either flank, or from the centre 136

19. A Battalion formed in Line may have to retire over a bridge or short defilé, or to retreat from a flank or from the centre 140

20. When a Battalion, formed in Line, is successively to march off in column of divisions to a flank . . . 143

21. When the Battalion, halted in Line, is to form square on any named Company, or on the two centre Sub-divisions 144

22. When the Battalion forms a square or oblong two deep to protect baggage or treasure against Infantry only . . 151

23. When a Battalion, halted in Line, is to change its front to the rear upon the centre 153

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE BY MOVEMENTS OF THE OPEN COLUMN ON A FIXED POINT 154

24. When the Battalion is required to change position to the front or rear on any halted Company, by the flank march of Companies 154, 155, 156

ON A DISTANT POINT . . 157

25. When the Battalion formed in Line changes position by breaking into open Column, marching up in column to the point where its head is to remain, and entering the Line by the flank march of Companies 157

Section Page

26. When the Battalion formed in Line changes position by breaking into open column, marching in column to the point in the new position where its head is to rest, and to which its rear divisions form by successively passing each other and wheeling up 158

OPEN COLUMN MOVEMENTS . . 159

27. When the leading flank of the Column is changed by the successive march of divisions from the rear to the front . *ib.*

28. When it is required to change the wings of an open or half distance Column, formed upon a road where the space does not admit of the flank movement . . . 160

29. When the Column at open or half distance is required to form a square 161

QUARTER DISTANCE AND CLOSE COLUMN . 163

30. When a Battalion forms a close or quarter distance Column from line . . . . . *ib.*

31. When the Column at close or quarter distance marches to a flank 167

32. When the Column at quarter distance, moving to the front or rear, takes ground to the right or left by the Echellon march of Sections . . . . . *ib.*

33. When a Column, halted at close or quarter distance, is to wheel on a fixed or a moveable pivot . . . 168

34. When a close or quarter distance Column is to change its front by the wheel and countermarch of sub-divisions round the centre 171

35. When a Column at close or quarter distance is to open out to full or half distance from the front or rear . . 173

DEPLOYMENTS . . . 174

36. When the Battalion, in column of Companies at close or quarter distance (right in front), deploys into line . 175

ECHELLON FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS . 178

37. When a Battalion from line wheels forward by Companies to either Flank into Echellon . . . . *ib.*

Section Page

38. When the Battalion, having wheeled from line into Echellon, has marched and halted, and is to form back parallel to the line it quitted 180
39. When the Battalion, having wheeled from line into Echellon, has marched and halted, and is to form up oblique to the line it quitted 181
40. When the Battalion formed in line changes front on a fixed flank Company, by throwing forward the rest of the Battalion 182
41. When the Battalion changes front on a fixed flank Company, by throwing backward the rest of the Battalion . 184
42. When the Battalion changes front on a central Company by advancing one wing, and retiring the other . 186
43. When from open column the Companies wheel backward into Echellon, in order to form in line on the front Company . *ib.*
44. When from line the Companies of a Battalion march off in Echellon, successively and directly to the front, and again form in line, either to the front or to the flank . 189
45. When a Battalion in Echellon of Companies, halted or in motion, is required to form square . . . 191
46. When a Battalion marching in line is to take ground to a flank by the Echellon movement of sub-divisions or sections . . . . . *ib.*

SKELETON OR ROPE DRILL . . 193

PART IV.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR THE MOVEMENTS OF THE BRIGADE OR LINE.

1. Formation and Distances 195
2. Commands 197
3. The March in Line 199
4. Wheeling of Columns 203
5. Column of Route 205
6. Echellon of the Line 211

Section Page

7. MOVEMENTS IN GENERAL . . 214

Inversion of Columns and Lines 216
Regulating body of Movement . . . . *ib.*
Advance and retreat of alternate bodies . . . 217
Second Lines 219
Squares 221
Reserves and Supports 222

EVOLUTIONS OF THE BRIGADE OR LINE MOVEMENTS FROM LINE.

8. When a Line formed of several Battalions is required to move, to attack, or to pass a Bridge or Defilé . . 224
9. When a Line formed of several Battalions may have to retire from a flank or from both flanks in rear of the centre, over a Bridge or Defilé 226

CHANGES OF FRONT.

10. When a Line of several Battalions changes its front upon a fixed Company of any named Battalion . . . 227

CHANGES OF POSITION.

11. When a Line of several Battalions is to change its Position to any distant point, either oblique, or at right angles to the old Line 228

QUARTER DISTANCE AND CLOSE COLUMN.

12. When a Line of contiguous Battalion Columns, at close or quarter distance, is required to form a Mass of Columns upon any one Battalion 229
13. When a Mass of Battalion Columns, at quarter or close distance, wheels by Battalions into a Line of contiguous Columns 232
14. When a Line of contiguous Battalion close or quarter distance Columns is required to change its Front to the right or left flank . *ib.*

Section Page

15. When a Brigade formed in contiguous Battalion close Columns at close Order, is required to change its Front to the Rear 234

DEPLOYMENTS.

16. When a Mass of Battalion Columns, at close or quarter distance, deploys into Line of contiguous Battalion Columns 235
17. When a Line of contiguous Battalion Columns deploys into Line 236
18. When a Mass of Battalion Columns, at close or quarter distance, shall be required to deploy into Line to any distant position on detached Points 237

SECOND LINES.

19. When two Lines change front upon a flank of the First Line 238
20. When two Lines change upon a Central Point of the First Line 239

INSPECTION OR REVIEW.

Receiving the General 241
Marching past in Slow Time 242
Marching past in Quick Time 245
Marching past in Battalion Column at quarter distance . 248

PART V.

LIGHT INFANTRY.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR LIGHT INFANTRY FORMATIONS.

1. Duties, Movements, Training, &c. 253
2. Signals and Sounds for regulating Movements . 256
3. Detail of Formation 261

Section		Page
4.	Skirmishing	268
	Supports and Reserves	273
	Relieving Skirmishers	275
	General Rule for a Battalion skirmishing	276
	Instructions for Skirmishers and their Supports when charged by Cavalry	280
5.	Advanced Guard	283
	Patroles	289
6.	Rear Guard	291
7.	To pass a Bridge or Defilé	294
8.	Piquets and their Sentries	296
	General Outline of Field Training for Light Infantry	311
	Instruction of Officers	313
	Companies' Practice and Instruction of the Men	317
	Bugle Sounds	321

INDEX.

RULES AND REGULATIONS.

PART I.

INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

THE Instructors, to whom this duty is intrusted, and who are to be answerable for its execution, must possess an accurate knowledge of the part each has to teach, and evince such a clear, firm, and concise manner of conveying their instructions, as will command from the men a perfect attention to their directions. They must allow for the weak capacity of the Recruit; and be patient, not rigorous, where endeavour and good-will are apparent; for quickness is the result of much practice, and ought not at first to be expected.

Recruits must be carried on progressively; they should comprehend one thing before they proceed to another. In the first circumstances of position, the firelock, fingers, elbows, &c., are to be justly placed by the Instructor; when more advanced, they should not be touched; but from the example shewn, and the directions given, be taught to correct themselves when admonished. Recruits should not be kept too long at any particular part of their exercise, so as to fatigue or make them uneasy, and marching without arms should be much intermixed with the firelock instruction. Neither fife, nor music, must on

any

any account be used; it being essential to confirm the Recruit by habit alone in that cadence of step which he is afterwards to maintain in his march to the enemy, amidst every variety of noise and circumstance that may tend to derange him.

The habit here adverted to, is acquired by impressing the time upon the Recruit's mind by tap of drum, and no Recruit or squad of Recruits must therefore be permitted to exercise in marching, without the constant use of plummet, drum, and pace stick; the drum to beat the time *only* when the squad is halted, never when in motion: whenever the superintendent of the drill sees it necessary to give the time, every squad will instantly be halted at the first tap of the drum, and the recruits be required to give their whole attention to the proper cadence.

In the manner hereafter prescribed, each Recruit must be trained singly, and in successive squads; and until he is perfect in all points of his duty, he is not to join the battalion;—for one awkward man, imperfect in his march, or distorted in his person, will derange his division, and, of course, operate on the battalion and line in a still more injurious manner. Every soldier, on his return from long absence, must *be re-drilled* before he is permitted to act in the ranks of his company.

Short and frequent drills are always to be preferred to long lessons, which exhaust the attention both of the Instructor and Recruit; and too much pains cannot be taken by those intrusted with the instruction of Recruits to move them on, progressively from squad to squad, according to their merit, so that the quick, intelligent lad may not be kept back by those of inferior capacity. To arrive at the first squad should be made an object of emulation to the young soldier, by diminishing the number and duration of its drills.

WITHOUT

WITHOUT ARMS.

Single Rank, at Open Order.

Open order is taken by each recruit stretching out his right arm and keeping that distance from his right hand man.

S. 1. *Position of the Soldier.*

The equal squareness of the shoulders and body to the front is the first and great principle of the position of a soldier. The heels must be in a line, and closed;—the knees straight;—the toes turned out, so that the feet may form an angle of 60 degrees;—the arms hanging close to the body; the elbows turned in and close to the side;—the hands open to the front, with the view of preserving the elbow in the indispensable position, as above described, and thereby of preventing false distances when marching in line;—the little fingers lightly touching the seams of the trowsers, with the thumb close to the forefinger;—the belly rather drawn in, and the breast advanced, but without constraint;—the body upright, but inclining forward, so that the weight of it may principally bear on the fore part of the feet;—the head to be erect, and the eyes straight to the front.

In order to supple the recruit, open his chest, and give freedom to the muscles, he will be practised in the three first movements of the extension motions as laid down for the Sword Exercise.

Too many methods cannot be used to improve the carriage of the recruit, and banish the air of the rustic. But the greatest care must be taken not to throw the body backward instead of forward, as being contrary to every true principle of movement.

N. B. The words in the margin, which are printed in *Italics*, are the words of command to be given by the instructor.

All words of command, and particularly the words *Halt* and *March*, must be given distinctly and loud.

S. 2. *Standing at Ease.*

Stand at Ease.

On the words *Stand at Ease*, the right foot is to be drawn back about six inches, and the greatest part of the weight of the body brought upon it; the left knee a little bent; the hands brought together before the body; the palms being struck smartly together, and that of the right hand then slipped over the back of the left; but the shoulders to be kept back and square; the head to the front, and the whole attitude without constraint.

Attention.

On the word *Attention*, the hands are to fall smartly upon the outside of the thighs; the right heel to be brought up in a line with the left; and the proper unconstrained position of a soldier immediately resumed.

When the recruit falls in for instruction, he is first to be taught to place himself, on the word *Attention*, in the position above described, to remain perfectly steady, and to give his whole

attention

attention to his commander. Before the word *Attention* is given, and occasionally during the time of drill, the recruit may be allowed to rest by *Standing at Ease,* as above explained.

When standing at ease for any considerable time in cold weather, the men are permitted to move their limbs, but without quitting their ground, so that upon the word *Attention,* no one shall have materially lost his dressing in the line. In this case the *Stand at Ease* is given in the tone of a permission and not of command.

S. 3. *Eyes to the Right.*

Eyes Right.
Eyes Left.
Eyes Front.

On the word *Eyes Right,* glance the eyes to the right with a slight turn of the head. At the words *Eyes Left,* cast the eyes in like manner to the left. On the words *Eyes Front,* the look and head are to be directly to the front, the habitual position of the soldier.

These motions are useful on the wheeling of divisions,—or in closing to a flank,—or when dressing is ordered after a halt: and particular attention must be paid, in the several turnings of the eyes, to prevent the soldier from moving his body, which must be preserved perfectly square to the front;—but in all marches to the front, the recruit, at open order, must be taught to select objects in his front, and to march straight upon them:—at close order, the touch, with the preservation of a uniform and proper cadence, must form his only guide in marching.

S. 4. *The Facings.*

In going through the facings, the left heel never quits the ground; the body must rather incline forward, and the knees be kept straight.

The Right, face.

1st. Place the hollow of the right foot smartly against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the right on both heels.

To the Left, face.

1st. Place the right heel against the hollow of the left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the left on both heels.

To the Right about, face.

1st. Place the ball of the right toe against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the right about on both heels.

3rd. Bring the right foot smartly back in a line with the left.

To the Left about, face.

1st. Place the right heel against the ball of the left toe, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the left about on both heels.

3rd. Bring up the right smartly in a line with the left.

On

Right, or Left, half face. On the word of command *Right* or *Left Half Face*, each man will make an exact half face, as directed, by drawing back or advancing the right foot one inch, by which the whole will stand individually in echellon.

Front. When it is intended to resume the original front, the word of command *Front*, will be given, and the whole will face, as accurately as possible, to their former front.

Right or Left about three-quarters face. When it is necessary to perform the diagonal march to the rear, the recruit will receive the word *Right (or left about) three-quarters face*, upon which he brings the ball of the right foot (not the ball of the toe) to the left heel, or the right heel to the ball of the left foot, and makes a three-quarters face in the given direction.

Front. Upon the word *Front*, if he has faced to the right, he fronts to the left; and if he has faced to the left, he fronts to the right.

The feet in the first of the above motions are to be slipped back or brought forward without a jerk; the movement being from the hip, so that the body is kept perfectly steady until faced.

The greatest precision must be observed in these facings, for if they are not exactly executed, a body of men, after being properly dressed, will lose their dressing on every small movement of facing.

S. 5. *Position in Marching.*

In marching, the soldier must maintain the position of the body as directed in Sect. 1. He must be well balanced on his limbs. His arms and hands must be kept perfectly steady by his sides, and on no account be suffered to move or vibrate; care must be taken that the hand does not cling to the thigh, or partake in the least degree of the movement of the limb. The body must be kept erect and square to the front. The movement of the leg and thigh must spring from the haunch, and be free and natural. The foot must be raised sufficiently high to clear the ground without grazing it, carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed softly on the ground, so as not to jerk or shake the body in the slightest degree. The head to be kept well up, and straight to the front, and the eyes not to be turned to the right or left.

Balance Step.

The recruit being placed in the position of the soldier, as above described, is instructed in the balance step, the object of which is to teach him the free movement of his limbs, preserving at the same time perfect squareness of shoulders, with the utmost steadiness of body, and no labour must be spared to attain this first and most essential object, which forms indeed the very foundation of good marching. The instructor must be careful that the recruit does not contract a habit of drooping or throwing back a shoulder at these motions, which are intended practically to shew the true principles of marching, and that steadiness of body is compatible with perfect freedom in the limbs.

1st. *Without gaining Ground.*

Caution. Balance step without gaining ground, commencing with the left foot.

The left foot is brought gently forward with the toe at the proper angle to the left, the foot about three inches from the ground, the left heel in line with the toe of the right foot.

Rear. When steady the left foot is brought gently back (without a jerk), the left knee a little bent, the left toe brought close to the right heel. The left foot in this position will not be so flat as to the front, as the toe will be a little depressed.

Front. When steady, the word *Front* will be given as above, and repeated to the *Rear* three or four times; to prevent the recruits being fatigued, the word *Halt* will be given, when the left foot, either advanced, or to the rear, will be brought to the right.

Halt.

The instructor will afterwards make the recruit balance upon the left foot, advancing and retiring the right in the same manner.

2dly. *Gaining Ground by the word Forward.*

Front. On the word *Front*, the left foot is brought gently to the front without a jerk; the knee to be gradually straightened as the foot is brought

brought forward, the toe turned out a little to the left and remaining about three inches from the ground. In this posture he remains for a few seconds only in the first instance, till practice has steadied him in the position.

Forward. On this word of command, the left foot is brought to the ground, at 30 inches from heel to heel, while the right foot is raised at the same moment, and continues extended to the rear. The body remains upright, but inclining forwards; the head erect, and neither turned to the right nor left.

Front. On the word *Front*, the right foot is brought forward, and so on.

S. 6. *Slow Step.*

March. On the word *March*, the left foot is carried 30 inches to the front, and without being drawn back is placed softly on the ground so as not to jerk or shake the body; the recruit is to be taught to take 75 of these steps in a minute.

The recruit must be carefully trained, and thoroughly instructed in this step, as an essential foundation for arriving at accuracy in the paces of more celerity. This is the slowest step at which troops are to move.

S. 7. *The Halt.*

Halt. On the word *Halt,* let the rear foot be brought upon a line with the advanced one, so as to finish the step which was being taken when the command was given.

N.B. The words *Halt, dress*—to be considered as one word of command.

Three or four recruits will now be formed in one rank a open distance, and instructed as follows.

S. 8. *Stepping out.*

Step out. The squad marches, as already directe in slow time. On the word *Step out,* the recruit must be taught to lengthen his step to 33 inches, by leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This step is necessary, when a temporary exertion in line, and to the front, is required; and is applied both to slow and quick time; and at the word (slow or quick step) the pace of 30 inches must be resumed.

S. 9. *Stepping Short.*

Step Short. On the word *Step Short,* the foot advancing will finish its pace, and afterwards each recruit will step as far as the ball of his toe, and no farther, until the word *Forward* be given, when the usual pace of 30 inches is to be taken.

Forward.

This step is useful when a momentary retardment of either a battalion in line, or of a division in column, shall be required.

S. 10.

S. 10. *Marking Time.*

Mark Time. On the words *Mark Time,* the foot then advancing completes its pace, after which the cadence is continued, without gaining any ground, but alternately throwing out the foot and bringing it back square with the other.

Forward. At the word *Forward*, the usual pace of 30 inches will be taken.

This step is necessary when a column, division, &c., on the march, has to wait for the coming up of others.

S. 11. *The Side or Closing Step.*

The side or closing step is performed from the halt in quick time, by the following commands:

Right Close—Quick March.
Left Close—Quick March.

Right Close, March. In closing to the right, on the word *Quick March,* eyes are turned to the right, and each man carries his right foot about 10 inches directly to his right (or, if the files are closed, to his neighbour's left foot), and instantly brings up his left foot, till the heel touches his right heel, and proceeds to take the next step in the same manner; the whole with perfect precision of time, shoulders kept square, knees not bent, and in the true line on which the body is formed.

Halt. At the word *Halt,* the whole halt, turn their eyes to the front, and are perfectly steady. (Vide *S.* 3, Part II.)

NOTE.—In closing on rough or broken ground the knees must necessarily be bent.

S. 12. *Stepping Back.*

Step Back, March.

Halt.

The *Step Back* is performed in the slow time and pace of 30 inches, from the halt. On the command *Step Back—March*, the recruit must be taught to move straight to the rear, preserving his shoulders square to the front, and his body erect. On the word *Halt*, the foot in front must be brought back square with the other.

A few paces only of the Step Back can be necessary at a time.

S. 13. *Changing the Feet.*

Change Feet.

To change the feet in marching, the advanced foot completes its pace, the ball of the other is brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which instantly makes another step forward, so that the cadence may not be lost

This may be required of an individual, who is stepping with a different foot from the rest of his division; in doing which he will in fact take two successive steps with the same foot.

S. 14. *Oblique Step.*

To the Left oblique, March.

When the recruit has acquired the regular length and cadence of the slow pace, he is to be taught the oblique step At the words *To the Left oblique—March*, without altering his personal squareness of position, he will, when

when he is to step with his left foot, point and carry it forward 19 inches in the diagonal line, to the left, which gives about 13 inches to the side, and about 13 inches to the front. On the word *Two*, he will bring his right foot 30 inches forward, so that the right heel be placed 13 inches directly before the left one. In this position he will pause, and on the word *Two*, continue to march, as before directed, by advancing his left foot 19 inches, pausing at each step till confirmed in his position; it being essentially necessary to take the greatest care that his shoulders be preserved square to the front. From the combination of these two movements, the general obliquity gained will amount to an angle of about 25 degrees. When the recruit is habituated to the lengths and directions of the step, he must be made to continue the march, without pausing, and with firmness; when he has been made perfect in the oblique step in slow time, he must be instructed in quick time on the same principle.

As all marching (the side step excepted) invariably begins with the left foot, whether the obliquing commences from the halt, or on the march, the first diagonal step taken is by the leading foot of the side inclined to, when it comes to its turn, after the command is pronounced.

The squareness of the person, and the habitual cadenced step, in consequence, are the great directions of the oblique, as well as of the direct, march.

Each

Each recruit should be separately and carefully instructed in the principles of the foregoing sections of the drill. They form the basis of all military movements.

S. 15. *The Quick Step.*

The cadence of the slow pace having become perfectly habitual to the recruits, they are now to be taught to march a *quick* time, which is 108 steps in a minute, each of 30 inches, making 270 feet in a minute.

Quick March. The command *Quick March* being given with a pause between them, the word *Quick* is to be considered as a caution, and the whole to remain perfectly steady. On the word *March*, the whole move off, conforming to the directions given in Sec. 5.

After the recruit is perfectly grounded in marching to the front in quick time, all the alterations of step, as above, for slow time, must be practised in the quick time.

This is the pace which will be applied generally to all movements by large as well as small bodies of troops; and therefore the recruit must be trained and thoroughly instructed in this essential part of his duty.

S. 16. *The Double March.*

The directions for the March, in the preceding section, apply in a great degree to this step, which is 150 steps in the minute, each of 36 inches, making 450 feet in a minute.

On

Double March. On the word *Double March,* the whole step off together with the left feet; keeping the heads erect, and the shoulders square to the front; the knees are a little bent; the body is more advanced than in the other marches; the arms hang with ease down the outside of the thigh. The instructor will be careful to habituate the recruit to the full pace of 36 inches, otherwise he will get into the habit of a short trot, which would defeat the obvious advantages of this degree of march.

Halt. As directed in Section 7.

The word *March,* given singly, at all times denotes that *slow time* is to be taken; when the *Quick,* or *Double March,* is meant, the words *Quick,* or *Double,* as a caution, will precede the word *March.*

The great advantage attending the constant use of the plummet must be obvious; and the several lengths swinging the times of the different marches in a minute, are as follows:

		In. Hun.
Slow time	75 steps in the minute	24 , 96
Quick time	108	12 , 02
Double march	150	6 , 26

A musket-ball suspended by a string which is not subject to stretch, and on which are marked the different required lengths, will answer the above purpose, may be easily acquired, and should be frequently compared with an accurate standard in the adjutant's

adjutant's possession. The length of the plummet is to be measured from the point of suspension to the centre of the ball.

Single Rank at Close Order.

Six or eight recruits will now be formed in rank at close files, having a steady well-drilled soldier on their flank to lead, and will then be carefully instructed in *the touch,* which in close order constitutes the principal guide and regulator in marching. Each man, when properly in line, should feel his right or left hand man (towards the point of direction) at the thick part of the arm immediately below the elbow, which must continue turned in and close to the side. The fingers are kept straight, the thumb close to the fore-finger, the thumb and fore-finger in a small degree turned out, (in order to keep the elbows close,) the edge of the hand very slightly touching the thigh, and a little behind the seam of the trowsers. The touch must be light, and crowding carefully avoided.

S. 17. *Dressing when halted.*

Dress. Dressing is to be taught equally by the left as by the right. On the word *Dress,* each individual will cast his eyes to the point to which he is ordered to dress, with a slight turn of the head, but preserving the shoulders and body square to their front. The whole person of the man must move as may

be necessary, and bending backward or forward is not to be permitted. He must take short quick steps, thereby gradually and exactly to gain his position, and on no account be suffered to attempt it by any sudden or violent alteration, which must infallibly derange whatever is beyond him. The faces of the men, and not their breasts or feet, are the line of dressing. Each man is to be able just to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

In dressing, the eyes of the men are always turned to the officer who gives the word *Dress;* and who is posted at the point by which the body halts; and who from that point corrects his men, on a point at or beyond his opposite flank.

The faults to be avoided, and generally committed by the soldier in dressing, are, passing the line; the head too forward, and body kept back; the shoulders not square; the head turned too much.

With a view to establish more exactly the principles on which all dressing depends, the following instructions in the drill of recruits will be observed.

By the Right (or left), forward Dress.

The right-hand man will be moved up a pace and a quarter (or half), and another soldier, as a second point, four paces to his right, while the left-hand man, or any other person, serves as a corresponding point for the instructor, upon the left. The instructor will then give the word, *No. 2, By the Right, forward*

forward Dress, when the second recruit will take a pace to the front with the left foot, and shuffle up into line with the two points on his right, taking up his touch and dressing at the same time; the instructor, standing clear to the right of the two points, when he sees that the recruit is properly dressed, and the touch perfect, gives the word *Eyes front,* that heads may be replaced and remain square to the front.

Eyes front.

By the Right (or left) backward Dress.

When every recruit individually has practised and is perfect in his dressing up, both by right and left forward, he must be taught to dress back by the right and left in the same manner.

The instructor will then cause two or three recruits to dress up and back together, taking care that the touch is always preserved, and afterwards the whole squad together.

No rank, or body, ought ever to be dressed, without the person on its flank appointed to dress it, determining, or at least supposing a line, on which the rank, or body, is to be formed, and for that purpose taking as his object the distant flank man, or a point beyond such flank, or a man thrown out on purpose: dressing must then be made gradually, and progressively, from the fixed point, towards the flank one; and each man successively, but quickly, must be brought up into the true line, so as to become a new point, from whence the person directing proceeds in the correction of the others; and he himself, when so directing, must take care that his person, or his eyes at least, be in the true line which he is then giving.

S. 18. *File Marching.*

To the — face.

The recruits must first *face,* and then be instructed to cover each other exactly in file, so that the head of the man immediately before may conceal the heads of all the others in his front. The strictest observance of all the rules for marching is particularly necessary in marching by files, which is first to be taught at the *slow time,* and afterwards in *quick time.*

March.

On the word *March,* the whole are immediately to step off together, gaining at the very first step 30 inches, and so continuing each step without increasing the distance betwixt each recruit, every man locking or placing his advanced foot on the ground, before the spot from whence his preceding man had taken up his. No looking down, nor leaning backward, is to be suffered, on any pretence whatever The leader is to be directed to march straight forward on some distant objects given him for that purpose, and the recruits made to cover one another during the march, with the most scrupulous exactness :—great attention must be paid to prevent them from opening out and losing their compact formation.

S. 19. *Wheeling of a single Rank, in Slow Time, from the Halt.*

Right Wheel. At the word, *Right Wheel,* the man on the right of the rank faces to the right; on the word *March,* they step off together, the whole turning their eyes to the left (the wheeling or outward flank), except the man on the left of the rank, who looks inwards, and, during the wheel, becomes a kind of base line for the others to conform to, and maintain the uniformity of front. The outward wheeling man steps the usual pace of 30 inches, the whole observe the same time, but each man shortening his step in proportion as he is nearer to the standing flank on which the wheel is made. During the wheel, the whole remain closed to the standing flank; that is, they touch, without incommoding their neighbour; they must not stoop forward, but remain upright; opening out from the standing flank is to be avoided; closing in upon it, during the wheel, is to be resisted. On the word, *Halt, Dress,* each man halts immediately, without pressing forward. The dressing being completed, the squad receives the command *Eyes front.*

March.

Halt, Dress.

Eyes front.

When the recruits are able to perform the wheel with accuracy in the *slow time,* they must be practised in *quick time.*

Nothing will tend sooner to enable the recruit to acquire the proper length of step, according to his distance from the pivot, than continuing the wheel without halting for several revolutions

volutions of the circle, and also giving the word *Halt, Dress,* at instants not expected, and when only a 6th, 8th, or any smaller proportion of the circle is completed.

S. 20. *Wheeling backwards, a single Rank.*

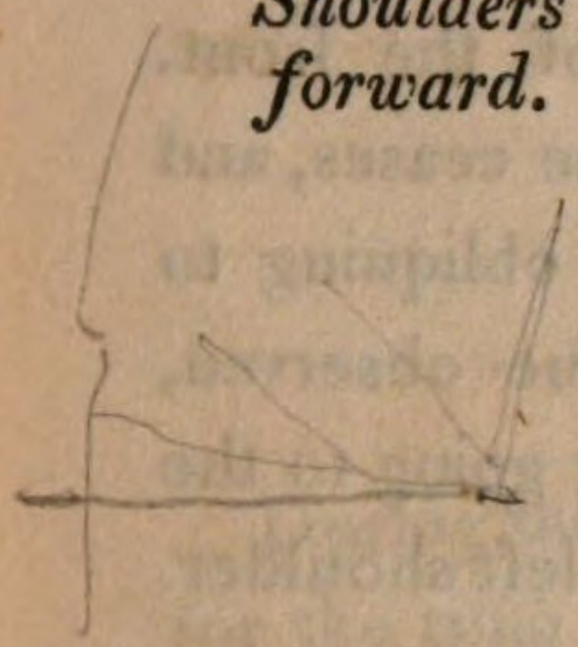
On the Right, backwards Wheel. Quick March. — At the words *On the Right, backwards Wheel,* the man on the right of the rank faces to his left. At the word *Quick March,* the whole step backward in quick time, dressing by the outward wheeling man; those nearest the pivot man making their steps extremely small, and those towards the wheeling man increasing them as they are placed nearer to him. The recruit in this wheel must not bend forward, nor be suffered to look down; but, by casting his eyes to the wheeling flank, preserve the dressing of the rank. *Halt.* On the word *Halt,* the whole remain perfectly steady, still looking to the wheeling flank till they receive the word *Dress.* *Dress.*

The recruits should be first practised to wheel backwards at the slow step; and at all times it will be necessary to prevent them from hurrying the pace; an error soldiers are very liable to fall into, particularly in wheeling backwards.

S. 21. *Changing the Direction by the Wheel of a single Rank on a moveable Pivot.*

When the rank is marching to the front, and is ordered to change its direction to either flank,

Right (or Left) Shoulders forward.



flank, it receives the word *Right (or Left) Shoulders forward;* upon which the outward file of the named flank continues to step out at the full pace, and the wheel is performed (according to the principle explained in Section 20) upon the inner file of the other flank, which brings the shoulder gradually round,—and gaining ground sufficient to circle round the wheeling point (where such is given), marks time, until it receives the word *Forward:* but the wheel on the moveable pivot is always made at the same time at which the body may be moving. The commander gives the word *Forward,* when he sees that the rank has gained the front on which he intends it to move in a perpendicular direction.

Forward.

S. 22. *Oblique Marching in Front.*

Right oblique.

When the squad is marching in front, and receives the word *To the right oblique;* each man, the first time he raises the right foot, will, instead of throwing it straight forward, carry it in the diagonal direction, as has been already explained in Sect. 14, taking care not to alter the position of his body, shoulders, or head. The greatest attention is to be paid to the shoulders of every man in the squad, that they remain parallel to the line on which they first were placed, and that the right shoulders do not fall to the rear, which they are very apt to do

do in obliquing to the right, and which immediately changes the direction of the front.

Forward. On the word *Forward,* the incline ceases, and the whole march forward. In obliquing to the left, the same rules are to be observed, with the difference of the left leg going to the left, and attention to keep up the left shoulder.

The same instructions that are given for slow time serve also for quick time.

In obliquing to the right, the touch must be preserved to the left, and *vice versâ,* excepting in the obliquing of a battalion, when the touch must always be to the centre.

S. 23. *Diagonal March.*

Right (or left) half face.

March.

Halt, Front.

Right (or left) half turn.

Front turn.

This march will be commenced from the halt, by giving the command *Right (or left) half face,* as described in Sect. 4, and on the word *March,* the men move on the diagonal lines upon which they are individually placed in echellon. Upon the command, *Halt, Front,* the original front is resumed. When the squad is marching to the front and it is desired to take an oblique direction, the word *Right (or left) half turn* is given, and the men move as above prescribed,—and when it is intended to move to the original front without halting, the word *Front turn* is given, when each man will turn his body

body to the front and move forwards without checking the pace.

When the movement is performed to the left, the reverse of the foregoing instructions will take place.

During the diagonal march the leading flank will be the pivot for the time being; for instance, when a squad or company is moving by the right half turn, the right-hand man must pay particular attention to the length of pace, and to move perpendicular to the line he took up when he made his half turn, as the accuracy of his movement may assist very much in preserving the division in its proper position. The other files must be careful that their right arms do not get beyond the centre of the men's backs who precede them in echellon; and if they keep this position, their right feet will just clear the left of the preceding file.

WITH ARMS.

S. 24. *Position of the Soldier.*

WHEN the firelock is shouldered, the person of the soldier remains in the position described under the head of *Close Order*, except that the wrist of the left hand is turned a little out, the better to embrace the butt. The firelock is placed in the hand, with the two first joints of the fingers grasping the inside of the butt, the thumb alone to appear in front. The piece must be carried at the full length of the arm, the butt a little forward, the fore part nearly even with that of the thigh; the hind part of it lightly touching the thigh, when stationary, without being in the least degree affected by it when in motion. The firelock will rest upon the hollow of the shoulder, and be held firm and steady.

S. 25. *Different Motions of the Firelock.*

The following motions of the firelock will be taught and practised as here set down, until each recruit is perfect in them; they being necessary for the ease of the soldier in the course of exercise.

As mentioned in the Manual Exercise.
- Supporting arms.
- Sloping arms.
- Carrying arms.
- Ordering arms.
- Standing at ease.
- Attention.
- Shouldering from the order.

The

The recruit must be accustomed to *carry* his arms for a considerable time together; it is most essential he should do so, and not be allowed to *support* or *slope* them so often as is practised, under the idea that long *carrying* them is a position of too much constraint.

A company or battalion is never to come to the HALT, or FORM IN LINE, or to DRESS, (which are situations where the greatest accuracy of front is required,) but with *carried* arms. When troops are in motion, arms may be sloped by word of command; and it must here be observed, that when this is the case, the touch *to* the firelock arm must be kept by the elbow. It is to be understood, as a general rule, that in the double march, as the men make the first step, they slope arms, without any separate word of command; on being halted, arms are instantly carried in the same manner.

S. 26. *Attention in forming the Squad.*

When the SQUAD or division (consisting of from six to eight files) *falls in,* each man, with carried arms, will take his place in his rank, beginning from the flank to which he is ordered to form; he will dress himself in line by the rule already given, assume the ordered position of a soldier, and stand perfectly steady. Attention must be paid that the files are correctly closed; that the men in the rear rank cover well, looking their file leaders in the middle of the neck; that the rear rank has its proper distance of one pace (30 inches) from the front rank, and that both ranks are equally well dressed.

S. 27. *Open Order.*

Rear Rank, take Open Order.

March.

The recruits being formed in two ranks at close order, on the word *Rear Rank, take Open Order*, the flank men on the right and left of the rear rank step briskly back one pace, face to their right, and stand covered, to mark the ground on which the rear rank is to halt, and dress at open order; every other individual remains ready to move. On the word *March*, the dressers front, and the rear rank steps back one pace, dressing by the right.

S. 28. *Close Order.*

Rear Rank, take Close Order. March.

On the word *Rear Rank, take Close Order*, the whole remain perfectly steady; at the word *March*, the rank closes within one pace.

S. 29. *Manual Exercise.*

According to Regulation.

S. 30 *Platoon Exercise.*

According to Regulation.

S. 31. *Firings.*

When the recruits have acquired the management of their arms, and are perfect in the motions of the manual and platoon exercises, they will be instructed at closed ranks in firing—

Direct

Direct to their front and both ranks kneeling.
By files.

S. 32. *Marching to the Front and Rear.*

Caution.
March.

The squad, or division, is to be particularly well dressed; files correct; arms carried; the rear rank covering exactly, and each individual to have his just attitude and position before the squad is ordered to move. The march will be made by the right or left flank, and a proper trained man will therefore conduct it. The word *Squad,* or *Division,* to be given as a caution; upon which the rear rank will on all occasions lock up; and at the word *March,* each man steps forward *a full pace.* The recruit must not turn his head or eyes to the flank by which he is marching, as a turning of the shoulders would undoubtedly follow. His elbows must be kept steady, his proper touch maintained, and his whole movement, both as to cadence and length of pace, must be regulated in conformity with that of the man next to him, towards his pivot flank; and without reference to the man upon his reverse flank, whose business again it is to conform to him. On the word *Halt,* the rear rank will make a short pace, so as to resume its distance of one pace from the front rank.

Turning

Halt, front, March. — Turning to the right or left, or about, in march, is not to be at first practised; but the squad is to *Halt, front*, by command, and then *March.*

On many occasions, where a body, great or small, after a movement to the rear or in file, is immediately to resume its proper front, instead of the words to halt, and face about, the words *halt, front,* with a slight pause between them, will be given, when it is instantly to face to its proper front in line. It is after fronting, that the dressing, if necessary, is ordered to take place.

To march straight forward is of the utmost consequence, *and he who commands at the drill will take the greatest pains to make his squad perfect in this essential object*;—for this purpose he will often place himself behind the flank file by which the squad is to move in marching, and take a point, or object, exactly in front of that file, and another in its rear; he will then command *March,* and, remaining in his place, he will direct the advance of the squad, by keeping the flank file always in a line with these objects. Great care must be taken to prevent the leaning back of the soldier, and the bringing forward, or falling back of a shoulder, as they are faults which, if not instantly rectified, will create confusion in a line, where *one man,* by bringing forward a shoulder, may change the direction of the march, and oblige the wing of a battalion to run, in order to keep dressed.

In short, it is impossible to labour too much at making the soldier move straight forward, keeping always the same front as when he commenced his march. This is effected by moving solely from the haunches, keeping the body steady, the shoulders

shoulders square, and the head to the front; and it will be attained without difficulty, by a strict attention to the rules given for marching, and a careful observance of an equal length of step, and an equal cadence, or time of march. In all of which he must be guided by the correct touch to the pivot flank.

The recruit must be practised in changing the pace, without halting, from *slow to quick and double,* and from *quick to slow time;* as well as from *quick to double,* and from *double to quick time:* but never from *double to slow time,* without a previous halt.

Right Turn.
Left Turn.

Turning on the march, in order to continue it, is necessary when companies, or their divisions, are moving in file, and that, without halting, it is eligible to make them move on in front; or when moving in front, it is proper without halting to make them move on in file.

Right About, turn.
Left About, turn.
Forward.

This movement is applicable to companies, whereby the front is changed on the march without halting. On the word *Turn,* each individual soldier, without changing step, or cadence, comes to the right or left about on his own ground, and in his own person performing the movement in the time prescribed for three distinct paces, then marking time till he receives the word *Forward,* when he resumes the full pace to the front.

Strong taps of the drum, regulated by the plummet, will be given immediately *before the word March,* to imprint the required

required measure on the mind of the recruit; but the words *left, right,* are never to be used.

S. 33. *Open and Close Order, on the March.*

Rear Rank, take Open Order. — The squad, when moving to the front in slow time, receives the word *Rear Rank, take Open Order;* on which the front rank continues its march, without altering the pace, and the rear rank marks the time, one pace, and steps off at the second step.

Rear Rank, take Close Order. — On the word *Rear Rank, take Close Order,* the rear rank steps nimbly up to close order, and instantly resumes the pace at which the front rank has continued to march.

S. 34. *March in File to a Flank.*

The accuracy of the march in file is so essential in all countermarches, file movements, and all deployments from close column, that the recruit cannot be too much exercised in it.

To the —face, March. — After *facing,* and at the word *March,* the whole squad steps off at the same instant, each replacing, or rather overstepping, the foot of the man before him; that is, the right foot of the second man comes within the left foot of the first, and thus of every one, more or less overlapping that of his preceding man. The front rank will march straight along the given line: each soldier of that rank must look along the necks of those before him, and never

never to right or left, otherwise a waving of the march will take place, and, of course, the loss and extension of the line and distance, whenever the body returns to its proper front. The men of the rear rank must regulate themselves by their leaders of the front rank, and always dress in their file. Although file marching is in general made in quick time, yet it must also be practised and made in slow time. The same position of feet, as above, takes place in all marching in front, where the rear rank is closed, and locked up.

The Instructor must take care that every man takes at once his full length of pace at the word *March*.

S. 35. *Wheeling in File.*

Squad.

Right wheel.

Left wheel.

The squad, when marching in file, must be accustomed to wheel its head to either flank; each file following successively, without losing or increasing distance. On this occasion, each file makes its separate wheel on a pivot moveable in a very small degree, but without altering its time of march. The front rank men, whether they are pivot men or not, must keep up to their distance, and the wheeling men must take a very extended step, and lose no time in moving on.

The head of a company marching in file, must change direction in the same manner on the moveable pivot, by gradually

gaining the new from the old direction, and thereby avoiding the sudden stop that otherwise would take place.

S. 36. *Wheeling forward from the Halt.*

Right Wheel.
Quick March.
Halt.

The directions already given for the wheeling of a single rank (vide Sect. 19) are to be strictly attended to in this wheel of the squad. On the word *Right* (*or left*) *Wheel*, the rear rank, if at one pace distance, locks up. At the word *Quick March*, the whole step together in the quick time, and the rear rank, during the wheel, inclines so as to cover the proper front rank men. At the word *Halt*, the whole remain perfectly steady.

S. 37. *Wheeling backward.*

The squad must be practised in wheeling backward in quick time. In this wheel, the ranks may preserve the distance of one pace from each other. Great attention should be paid, to prevent the recruits from fixing their eyes on the ground. (Vide Sect. 20.)

S. 38. *Wheeling on a halted and moveable Pivot.*

The directions for wheeling on a *halted*, and on a *moveable* pivot, have already been given, in Sects. 19 and 21. The squad should now be practised in both, until the recruits are thoroughly confirmed in those movements.

S. 39. Stepping out,—Stepping short,—Marking Time, —Changing Feet,—The Side Step,—Stepping back, —The Oblique Step,—The Diagonal March.

The squad must likewise be practised in *stepping out, stepping short, marking time, changing feet, the side step, stepping back, the oblique step,* and *the diagonal march,* the instructions for which have been fully detailed in the foregoing sections.

N.B. In closing by the side step, the touch will be kept to the closing flank.

It cannot be too strongly inculcated, that every just movement and manœuvre depends upon the correct *equality* of *march,* established and practised by all the troops of the same army. When this is not attended to, disunion and confusion must follow, on the junction of several battalions, although, when taken separately, each may be well trained. It is in the original instruction of the recruit, and squad, that this great point is to be attained. The *time* and *length* of step are prescribed: the TIME is infallibly ascertained by the frequent corrections of the *plummet,* which, when so applied, will soon give to each man the habitual measure so much desired; and the LENGTH of step is acquired by repeated practice and the constant use of the pace stick. When a squad marches by files, by threes, or by fours, a man should be laced upon the flank of the leading files, to whose step the pace stick can be conveniently applied to correct the length of step of the whole.

In closing the elementary part of the soldier's instruction, it cannot be too strongly stated, that where the task of the

drill serjeant ends, there the task of the company's officers and non-commissioned officers commences. The recruit has indeed been taught the rudiments of his profession in the drill squad, but it is only in the ranks of his company that the lessons he has received can be so applied and rigidly enforced, as to ensure that the acquired positions and movements of the soldier shall become the natural habit of the man. Under the eye of thoroughly-instructed superiors, who will give their scrupulous attention to the object here insisted on, the transition, from the recruit to the perfect soldier, will not be very tedious, when it will be awkward for a man so trained to do wrong; and his drill may then be said to be over for life. In order, however, to arrive at this great end of all military training, no slovenly habits must be suffered to creep in at private parades. The serjeant in inspecting his section, and the corporal in marching his relief, must exact as much attention and precision from those under him, as the drill serjeant invariably requires from his squad. By practice, what was at first constrained, will become natural and easy. The soldier thus trained, whether under the eye of the reviewing general or the fire of an enemy, will perform his part with facility and correctness.

END OF PART I.

PART II.

PART II.

OF THE COMPANY.

S. 1. *Formation of the Company.*

THE Recruit being thoroughly grounded in all the preceding parts of the drill, is now to be instructed in the movements of the company, as a more immediate preparation for his joining the battalion; for this purpose from 10 to 20 files are to be assembled, formed, and told off, in the following manner, as a company in the battalion.

The company FALLS IN at close order, with shouldered arms; the files lightly touching, but without crowding; each man will then occupy a space of about 21 inches. The commander of the company takes post on the right of the front rank covered by a serjeant in the rear rank. The other serjeants will form a third, or supernumerary rank, three paces from the rear rank.

When a company is thus singly formed with its officers, the captain is on the right, and the other officers in the rear, as also the drummer or pioneer in a third rank, at three paces distance. In this formation companies are to assemble on their private parades, being sized from flanks to centre.

The

The company will be told off in sub-divisions, and four sections. If four officers are present, the captain, when the company is in column of sections, takes the leading section, the next in seniority the third section, the third in rank the fourth section, and the junior officer the second. The covering serjeant will cover the second file from the pivot of the leading section. When there are but three officers, the covering serjeant will take the second section from the head of the column. The company will also be told off by threes from the right, numbered 1, 2, 3.

Should there be a blank file in telling off the company in line, it will invariably be the fourth file from the left.

When thus formed, the company will be practised in

Opening, and Closing of } Ranks. (Sect. 27 and 28, Part I.)

Dressing { to the front, to the rear, in an oblique direction, } by the right and left;

and be exercised in the several motions of the firelock.

Close order is the chief and primary order in which the battalion and its parts at all times assemble and form. *Open order* is only regarded as an exception from it, and occasionally used in situations of parade and show. In close order, the rear rank is closed up to within one pace, the length of which is to be taken from the heels of one rank to the heels of the other rank. In open order, they are two paces distant from each other; when for inspection, three paces.

In order to distinguish the words of command given by the instructor of the drill (who represents the commander of the battalion) from those given bv the commander of the company,

or

or its divisions, the commands of the former are in CAPITAL letters, those of the latter in *Italic*.

S. 2. *Marching to the Front.*

BY THE RIGHT (OR LEFT), MARCH, *or*, QUICK MARCH.

1. In the drill of the company, the person instructing must always consider it as a company in battalion, and regulate all its move, ments upon that principle; he will therefore, before he puts it in motion to front or rear- indicate which flank is to direct, by giving the word BY THE RIGHT, LEFT, OR CENTRE, MARCH, on which eyes will be directed full to the front, and the touch preserved to the named flank, or to the centre, as required. Should the right be the directing flank, the commander of the company himself will fix on objects to march upon in a line truly perpendicular to the front of the company; and when the left flank is ordered to direct, he and his covering serjeant will shift by the rear to the left of the front rank, and take such objects to march upon. The conductor of the company, before the word MARCH is given, will remark some distinct object on the ground, in his own front, and perpendicular to the directing flank: he will then observe some nearer and intermediate point in the same line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, *&c.*: he will move upon them with accuracy, and as he approaches the

the nearest of those points, he must, from time to time, choose fresh ones in the original direction, which he will by this means preserve, never having fewer than two such points to move upon.

2. As the MARCH of every body, except in the case of inclining, is made on lines perpendicular to its front, each individual composing that body must remain perfectly square to the given line; otherwise he will naturally and insensibly move in a direction perpendicular to his own person, and thereby open out, or close in, according to the manner in which he is turned from the true point of his march. If the distortion of a single man operates in this manner, and all turnings of the head do so distort him, it may be easily imagined what that of several will occasion, each of whom is marching on a different front, and whose lines of direction are crossing each other.

The company, during its march in line, will occasionally be ordered to

Step out	vide Sect.	8.	PART I.
Mark Time.....	———	10.	
Step short	———	9.	
Open and close ranks .	———	33.	
Oblique	———	22.	
Diagonal March.....	———	23.	

S. 3. *The Side Step.*

The *side* or *closing step* must also be frequently practised; it is very necessary and useful on many occasions, when halted, and when a very small distance is to be moved to either flank.

TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT, CLOSE.

When the whole company is to close to a flank, if supposed to be a division of a column, its commander remains in his place upon the flank and closes with his company; but if the company is to be considered as the division of a line, and no stated number of paces is mentioned, its commander will in that case step nimbly forward on the caution TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT), CLOSE, and place himself three paces in front of that flank which is supposed the inner one, or that which is nearest to the centre of the line, in order that he may be prepared to halt his company at the proper time, as well as to take a general superintendence of its movement.

QUICK MARCH.

At the word QUICK MARCH, the men step off together.

HALT.

On the word HALT being given, the officer instantly resumes his place in the line by the rear.

S. 4. *The Back Step.*

STEP BACK —MARCH.

The company must be accustomed from the halt, at the word STEP BACK—MARCH, to step back any ordered number of paces.

S. 5. *To form Four Deep.*

FORM FOUR DEEP. MARCH.

1. The company will be told off from the right by alternate files right and left; and when it is intended to form four deep, preserving the same front, the word FORM FOUR DEEP will be given, upon which the rear rank will step back one pace, and on the word MARCH, the left files will double behind the right files, by taking one pace to the rear with the left feet, and one pace to the right with the right feet, which forms four deep, leaving the intervals which the left files had quitted.

REAR, FORM FOUR DEEP. MARCH.

2. *When four deep is to be formed to the rear.* On the same caution the rear rank will step back as before, and on the word MARCH, the whole go to the right about, and the left files will then double as before, in the *proper* rear of the right files.

RIGHT, FORM FOUR DEEP. MARCH.

3. *When ground is to be taken to the right in the formation of four deep.* On the caution the rear rank steps back as before, and on the word MARCH, the whole face to the right, and the left files, at the same instant, form on the right of the right files, taking one pace to the right with the right feet, and one pace to the front with the left feet.

4. *When ground is to be taken to the left.* The rear rank steps back as before, and on the

LEFT, FORM FOUR DEEP. MARCH. — the word MARCH, the whole face to the left, and the left files, at the same instant, form on the left of the right files, by taking one pace to the left with the left feet, and one pace to the right with the right feet.

In all these formations two deep is re-formed from each of them by the word *Front*, upon which the files move up to their respective intervals into line, the rear rank immediately closing on the front rank: the word *Halt* will precede the word *Front* if the company has been in movement.

In moving to a flank, file marching may be adopted, if necessary, by the files leading out in their proper order upon the word FORM TWO DEEP; and, at the word RE-FORM FOUR DEEP, resuming their former places.

S. 6. *File Marching.*

LEFT FACE. — In marching by files, the commander of the company will lead on the inward flank of the front rank, his covering serjeant leading the front rank; therefore when the movement is by the left; on the word TO THE LEFT FACE, he will instantly shift to the left flank of the company by the front, and his covering serjeant by the rear; at the word QUICK MARCH, the whole step off together (vide Sect. 18, Part I.); and on the word *Halt, Front*, the leader and his serjeant will return to their posts on the right by the rear.

QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Front.*

The company will also be taught to—*advance in double files from the centre*, receiving from the instructor of the drill the command

command by SUB-DIVISIONS INWARDS FACE, upon which the two centre files disengage by the side step, bringing the shoulders forward at the words QUICK MARCH, and lead straight to the front, the front and rear rank men in line.

The officer and his covering serjeant will lead, in their relative situations as above prescribed, the left or right centre file of the pivot sub-division.

On the command FRONT FORM COMPANY, the leading files mark time and close in, their rear rank men falling to the rear; the remainder turn their bodies a whole face outwards, and wheel inwards, looking to the outward flank, and feeling to the centre.

As soon as the quarter circle is completed, the word *Forward* is given, if the march is to be continued.

If the company from double files is to be formed to a flank (suppose the right), the instructor gives the caution TO THE RIGHT, FORM COMPANY, when the commander of the company will give the command, *Right Sub-division, Halt, Front.* The remainder of the company march on in file, and form on the left of the halted sub-division in succession, halting as they come into line.

When the advance in double files from the centre is made on the march, the command is *Sub-divisions inwards turn, Right and Left wheel*, and the movement proceeds as above directed.

S. 7. *Wheeling from a Halt.*

RIGHT WHEEL, QUICK MARCH.

In wheeling either forward or backward from a halt, the commander of the company, on the word RIGHT or LEFT WHEEL, moves out, and places himself one pace in front of the centre of his company: during the wheel, he turns towards his men, and inclines towards that flank which has been named as the directing, or pivot one, giving the word *Halt, Dress,* when his wheeling man has just completed the required degree of wheel: he then squares his company, but without moving what was the standing flank, and takes his post on the directing flank.

Halt, Dress

S. 8. *Wheeling forward by Sub-divisions from Line.*

BY SUB-DIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL.

1. On the caution by SUB-DIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL, the commander of the company places himself one pace in front of the centre of the right sub-division, at the same time the men on the right of the front rank of each sub-division face to the right.

QUICK MARCH.

At the word QUICK MARCH, each sub-division steps off in quick time, observing the directions given in Sect. 19 and 36, Part I. The commander of the company turning towards the men of the leading sub-division, and inclining to its left (the proper pivot flank), gives

Halt, Dress.

gives the word *Halt, Dress,* for both sub-divisions, as his wheeling man is taking the last step that finishes the wheel square; and instantly posts himself on the left, the pivot flank. The covering serjeant shifting by the rear to the proper pivot flank, assumes his place in column, one pace in rear of the second file from the pivot, the senior subaltern taking post on the pivot flank of the second sub-division; the commander of the company always leading the first.

2. The company marching to the front may be wheeled into open column of sub-divisions on the moveable pivot, to either flank *without* halting; the instructor giving the word FORWARD, when the sub-divisions have wheeled square into column.

The *proper* pivot flank in column is that which, when wheeled up to, preserves the divisions of the line in the natural order, and to their proper front: the other is the *reverse* flank.

In column, divisions cover and dress to the proper pivot flank: to the left when the right is in front; and to the right when the left is in front.

S. 9. *Wheeling backwards by Sub-divisions from Line.*

The company will also break into open column of sub-divisions by wheeling backwards. —When the right is intended to be in front: at

CAUTION.

at the caution BY SUB-DIVISIONS ON THE LEFT, BACKWARD WHEEL, the commander of the company moves out briskly and places himself one pace in front of the centre of the right sub-division. The man on the left of the front rank of each sub-division at the same time faces to the right.

QUICK MARCH

On the word QUICK MARCH, each sub-division wheels backward, as directed in Sections 20 and 37, Part I. During the wheel, the commander of the company turns towards his men, inclining at the same time to the left, or pivot flank, and on completing the wheel gives the word *Halt, Dress,* to both divisions: he and his covering serjeant then place themselves in their proper stations, as directed in the last Section.

Halt, Dress.

S. 10. *Marching on an Alignement, in Open Column of Sub-divisions.*

The company having wheeled backwards, by sub-divisions from line, (as directed in the foregoing Section,) and a distant marked object in the prolongation of the two pivot flanks being taken; the commander of the company, who is now on the pivot flank of the leading sub-division, immediately fixes on his intermediate points to march on. (Vide

S. 2.

MARCH.

S. 2, Part II.) On the word MARCH, given by the instructor of the drill, both divisions step off at the same instant; the leader of the first division marching with the utmost steadiness and equality of pace on the points he has taken; and the commander of the second division preserving the leader of the first in the exact line with the distant object; at the same time he keeps the distance necessary for forming from the preceding division, which distance is to be taken from the front rank.—These objects must occupy the whole attention of the leaders of the two divisions.

S. 11. *Wheeling into Line from Open Column of Sub-divisions.*

HALT.

1. The company being in open column of sub-divisions, marching on the alignement, receives the word HALT from the instructor of the drill; both divisions instantly halt, and the instructor sees that the leaders of the divisions are correct on the line in which they have moved; he then gives the word (supposing the right of the company to be in front) by sub-divisions LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE; on which the commander of the company goes to the centre of his sub-division, the two pivot men face to their left exactly square

LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.

square with the alignement, the rear rank men covering off, and a serjeant runs out and places himself in a line with them, so as to mark the precise point at which the right flank of the leading sub-division is to halt, when it shall have completed its wheel. At the word QUICK MARCH, the whole wheel up in quick time; during the wheel, the commander of the company, turning towards his men, inclines to the wheeling flank, and gives the word *Halt, Dress,* at the moment the wheel of the division is completed: the commander of the company, if necessary, corrects the internal dressing of the company on the serjeant and pivot men: this dressing must be quickly made, and, when done, the commander of the company gives the word *Eyes front,* and takes post in line, as directed in Sect. 1, Part II.

QUICK MARCH

Halt, Dress.

Eyes front.

2. The company may be wheeled into line on the march on the moveable pivot, receiving from the instructor the command SHOULDERS FORWARD, then FORWARD, or HALT, DRESS, when the wheel is complete.

In all wheels of the divisions of a column that are to be made on a halted pivot in order to form line, the flank men of the front rank on the hand wheeled to is such pivot.

All wheelings by sub-divisions, or sections, from line into column, or from column into line, are performed on the word given by the commander of a battalion, when the whole of a battalion is at the same instant so to wheel; or on the word

given by the commander of the company, when companies singly, or successively, so wheel; they are not to be repeated by the leaders of its divisions.

When the company is in open column of sub-divisions, it must be occasionally practised to wheel into line upon the reverse flank of the column; and in shewing a front line also to that reverse flank by wheeling backwards on the regular pivots. On the caution to wheel into line by companies, pivot men face and raise their right arms from the elbow horizontally. On the word *Eyes front*, the hand resumes its usual position.

S. 12. *In Open Column of Sub-divisions entering into a new Direction on a moveable Pivot.*

Right Shoulders forward.

Forward.

The commander of the leading sub-division, when it arrives at the new direction, will give the word *Right* (or left) *Shoulders forward* (Vide Sect. 21, Part I.), and when his sub-division has wheeled square to that direction, he will give the word *Forward.* The leader of the second sub-division, when he arrives at the ground where the first began to change its direction, will give the same words, following the exact track, and always preserving his distance from the division in his front.

1. If the proper pivot flank is to be the wheeling one, each commander of a division gives his word *Shoulders forward,* as he successively arrives at such a distance from the point on which he has moved, as that, at the completion of the wheel, his division may receive the word *Forward* when perpendicular

to

to the new line, but with the given point, of course, behind the proper pivot; and that he also in his own person be on the new direction, prepared to give his word *Forward*, and to proceed.

2. The sub-divisions must take care that they continue their march correctly upon the point where the leading one wheeled, and that they do not shift to either flank, which, without much attention, they are apt to do.

S. 13. *Countermarching.*

The company, when it is to countermarch, must always be considered as a division of a battalion in column; the instructor of the drill will therefore, previous to his giving the caution to countermarch, signify whether the right or left is supposed to be in front, that the commander of the company, and his covering serjeant, may be placed on the pivot flank before such caution is given, as it is an invariable rule in the countermarch of the divisions of a column by files, that the facings be made from the flank, then the pivot one, to the one which is to become such.

Countermarch by Files.

RIGHT (OR LEFT) FACE.

QUICK MARCH.

1. On the word, RIGHT, or left, FACE, the company faces, the commander of it immediately takes one pace outwards, and faces inwards ready to halt his company; and his covering serjeant faces to the right about, and covers. At the word QUICK MARCH, the whole, except the commander and his covering serjeant, step off together, and the leading file wheeling short round the front rank, proceeds,

Halt, Front, Dress.

proceeds, followed by the company in file, till it has reached the covering serjeant, who has remained immoveable; when the commander instantly gives the words *Halt, Front, Dress*, squares, and closes his company on his serjeant, and then replaces him.

Countermarch by Ranks.

RIGHT AND LEFT FACE.

2. On the word FACE, whether the right or left is in front, the front rank faces to the right, the rear rank to the left; commanders place themselves on the outward flank of their serjeants facing inwards, and the covering serjeants go to the right about.

RIGHT COUNTER-MARCH. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Front, Dress.*

The whole step off together, the two ranks severally wheeling in single file, till the pivot man of the front rank comes close to the covering serjeant; they then receive the word *Halt, Front, Dress*, from the officer who replaces the serjeant.

All countermarches by files necessarily tend to an extension of the files; unity of step is therefore absolutely indispensable, and the greatest care must be taken that the wheel of each file be made close, quick, and at an increased length of step of the wheeling man, so as not to retard or lengthen out the march of the whole.

Companies, or their divisions, when brought up in file to a new line, are not to stand in that position till the men cover each other minutely; but the instant the leading man is at his point, they will receive the word *Halt, Front,* and in that situation close in and dress correctly.

S. 14.

S. 14. *Wheeling on the Centre of the Company.*

The company must be accustomed to wheel upon its centre, half backward, half forward, and to be pliable into every shape which circumstances can require of it; but always in order, and by a decided command.

The words of Command are,

COMPANY, ON THE CENTRE	RIGHT, LEFT, RIGHT ABOUT, LEFT ABOUT,	WHEEL.

When the wheel is to the right, or right about, the right half company wheels backward, and the left forward. In this case the right-hand man of the left sub-division is the pivot man; he faces to his right, or right about, and the covering serjeant springs out and alignes himself with him, but to the flank which is to become the pivot. The reverse will take place, when the wheel is to be made to the left, or to the left about The left-hand man of the right sub-division is then the pivot man, who will face to his left, or left about; the covering serjeant alignes himself with him, as in the wheel to the right. On the word MARCH, the whole move off together in quick time, regulating by the two flank men, who, during the wheel, preserve themselves in a line with the centre of the company; as soon as the required degree of wheel is performed, the commander of the company gives the word *Halt,*

Halt, Dress. | *Halt, Dress,* and instantly squares it from that flank, on which he himself is to take post.

S. 15. *Diagonal March.*

The instructor of the drill will have the diagonal march frequently practised, in company, and in sub-divisions; (vide *S.* 22 and 23, Part I.) He will see that the rear rank locks well up, and covers exactly; that the exact distances are preserved between the files; and that the pivots, or outward files, march in the direct line to which they have faced, the others conforming to them.

(*Plate* 1.)

S. 16. *Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column halted.*

Increasing.

Fig. 1.

FORM COMPANY.

Left Sub-division, Left Half Face; Quick March.

Halt, Front, Dress up.

The company standing in open column of sub-divisions (suppose the right in front) receives from the instructor of the drill a caution to FORM COMPANY; upon which the covering serjeants will run out to mark the pivot flank. The commander of the company turning round instantly orders, *Left Sub-division, Left Half Face; Quick March;* and the leading (or pivot) file will march straight on the covering serjeant. When the left sub-division has obliqued so as to gain the line of the right sub-division, the commander gives the word *Halt, Front, Dress up;* and takes post on the left, the pivot flank of the company.

Diminishing.

Diminishing.

FORM SUB-DIVISIONS.

Fig. 2.

Left Sub-division, Right about three-quarters Face, Quick March.

Halt, Front. Dress.

On the cautionary command from the instructor of the drill to FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, the senior subaltern instantly falls back to mark the point where the left flank of the sub-division is to rest. The commander of the company advancing one step orders, *Left Sub-division, Right about three-quarters Face, Quick March;* and the leading file of the left sub-division marches in the diagonal direction, until the pivot file reaches the officer who has taken up its distance and covers; and who, when it shall reach him, gives the words *Halt, Front, Dress.*

The commander remains on the left flank of the right sub-division, and the next officer on that of the left.

In increasing and diminishing the front of an open column halted upon the usual caution, the rear rank man of the pivot file of the reverse sub-division falls back and covers the third file of his sub-division, in order to leave room for the flank of the other sub-division, resuming his place as soon as the flanks are clear.

It is to be observed as a general rule in diminishing the front of a column by the doubling of sub-divisions or sections, whether the column be halted or in motion, that the sub-division or section on the *reverse* flank is the one behind which the other sub-divisions or sections double. Thus, when the right is in front, the doubling will be in the rear of the right sub-division; and *vice versâ* when the left is in front. And in increasing the front of a column, the rear sub-divisions, or sections, oblique to the hand the pivot flank is

on;

on; so that, when the right is in front, the obliquing will be to the left, and the reverse when the left is in front.

(*Plate* 1.)

S. 17. *Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column on the March.*

Increasing.

FORM COMPANY. *Left Sub-division, Left half turn, Double. Front turn. Quick.*

The company marching at quick time in open column of sub-divisions (suppose right in front), receives from the instructor of the drill the cautionary command, FORM COMPANY, the commander of the company instantly turning round, gives the words *Left Sub-division, left half turn, Double,* and it instantly moves off at the *Double March;* and as soon as its inward flank is open, it receives the word *Front turn,* and when in line with the reverse sub-division, *Quick,* the commander taking post on the pivot flank, towards which he has been moving.

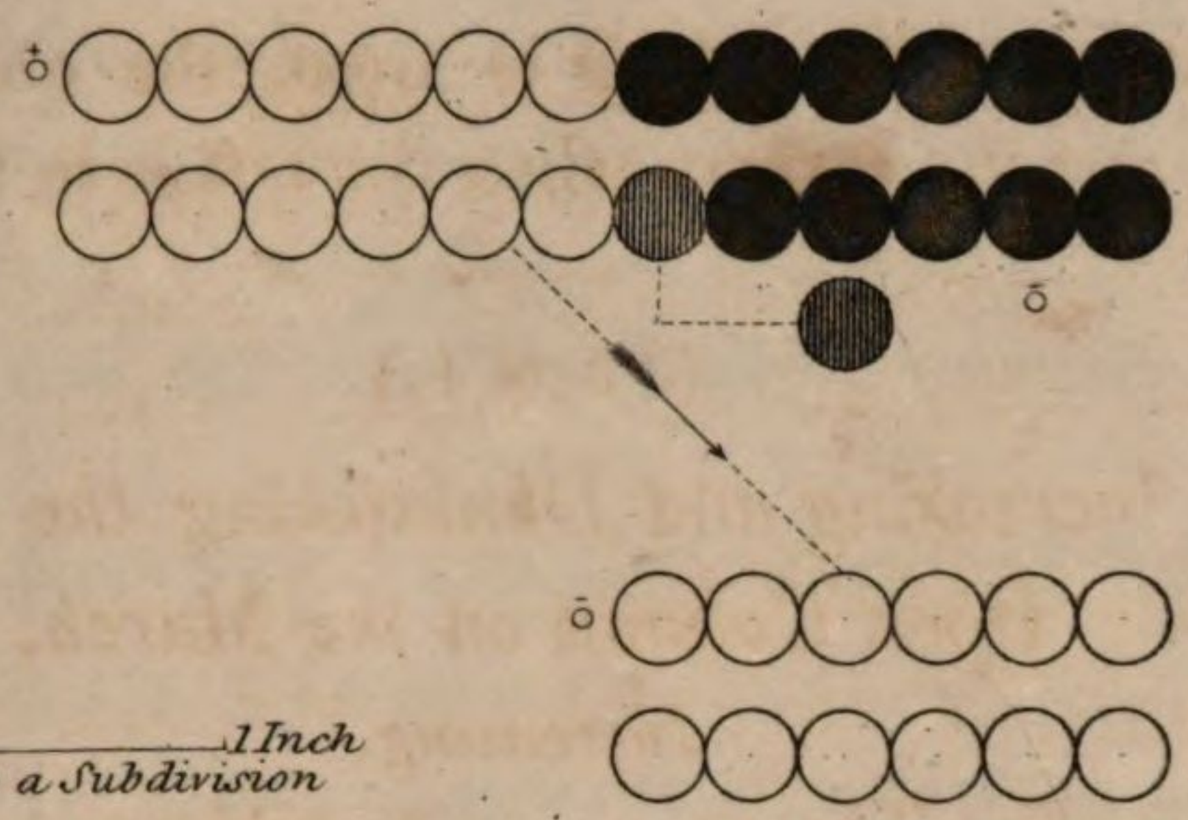
Diminishing.

FORM SUB-DIVISIONS. *Left Sub-division, mark time; Right half turn.*

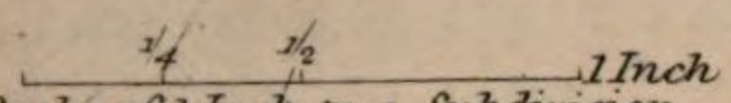
When the instructor of the drill gives the caution to FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, the commander of the company, advancing one step, immediately orders, *Left Sub-division, mark time; right half turn;* and when it has doubled properly behind the right one, the senior subaltern gives the word, *Front turn,* placing himself on its pivot flank.

The same directions that apply to increasing or diminishing by sub-divisions, apply equally by sections. If

Column of Companies (right in front) forming Column of Subdivisions from the Halt.



ȯ Captain
ȯ Lieutenant



Scale of 1 Inch to a Subdivision

Fig. 1.

A Column of Subdivisions (right in front) forming Company from the halt.

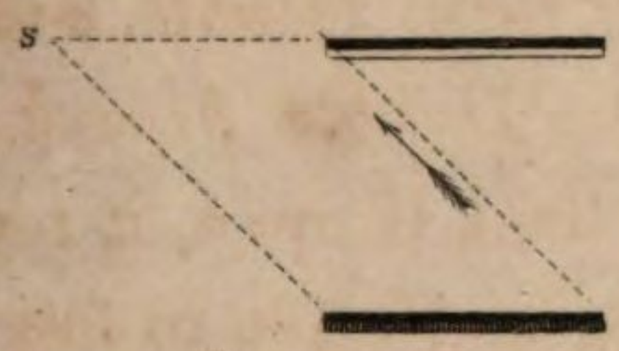
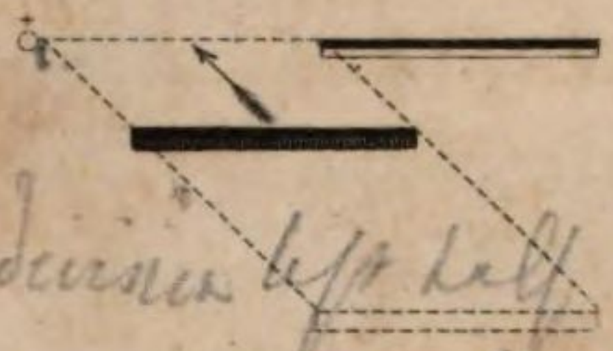


Fig. 3.

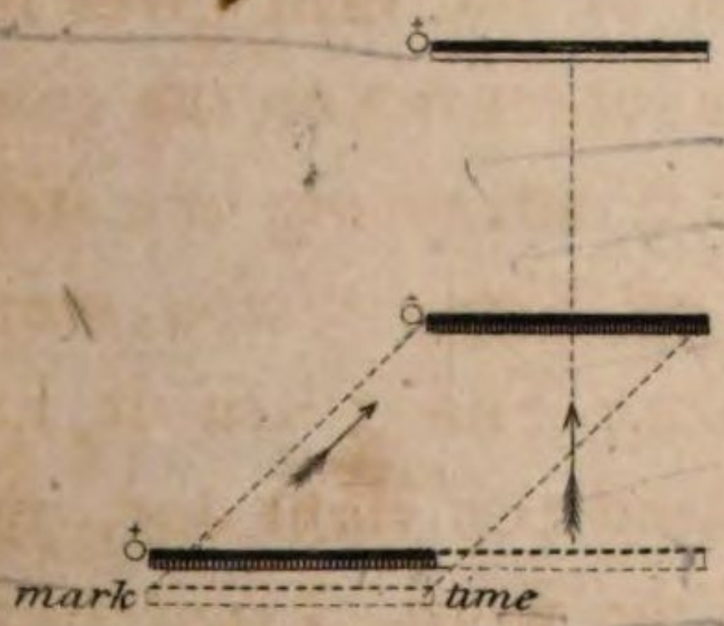
A Column of Subdivisions (right in front) forming Company on the March.

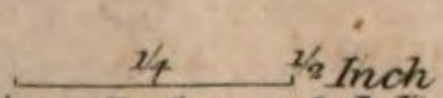


Left Subdivision left half Turn
dialle

Fig. 4.

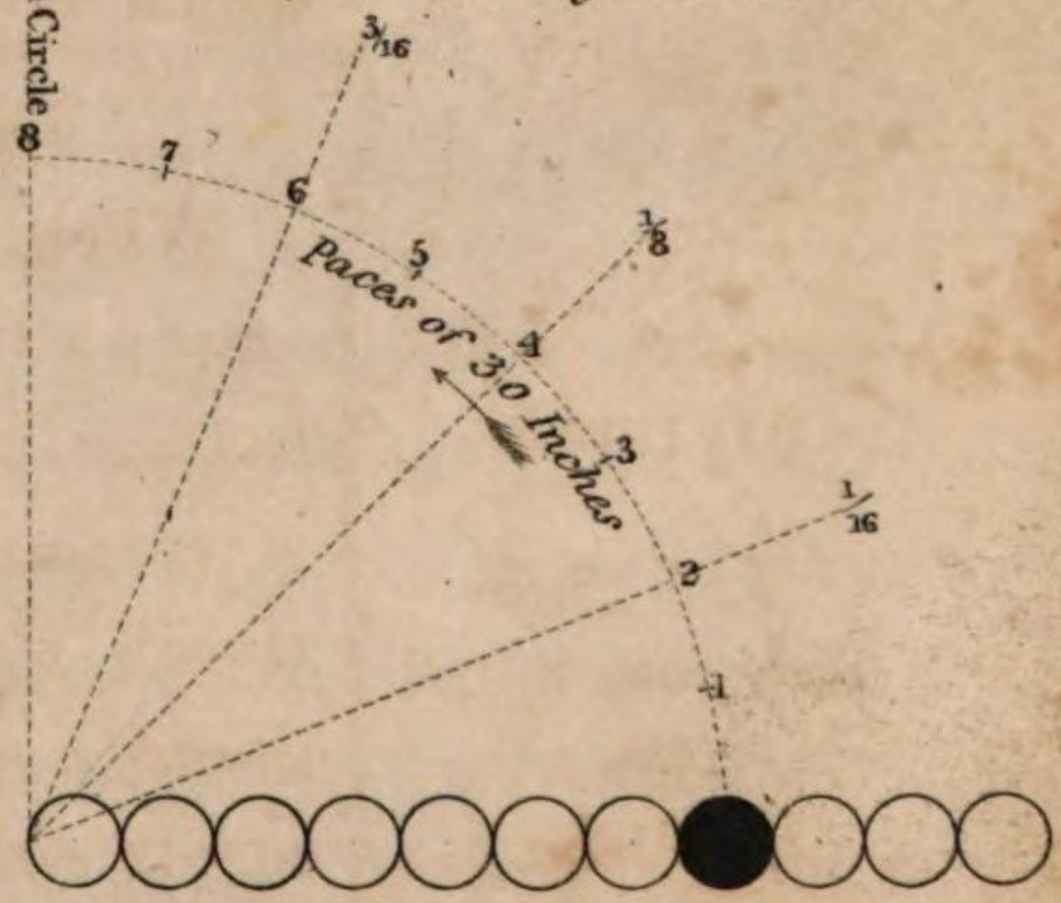
Column of Companies (right in front) forming Column of Subdivisions on the March.





Scale of 1/2 an Inch to a Subdivision.

Wheel on the Eighth File.



Capt. J.S. Doyle del.

Engraved on Steel for the Adjutant General. 1833.

If the column is moving in slow time, when its front is to be increased, the division moving up will do so in quick time; but when the column is marching in quick time, the rear sub-division will in that case move up in double time as directed.

S. 18. *The Company in Open Column of Sub-divisions to pass a short Defilé, by breaking off Files.*

BREAK OFF 3 FILES.

Three files, right turn, left wheel.

The company is supposed in open column of sub-divisions, with the right in front; when the leading division is arrived within a few paces of the defilé, it receives from the instructor of the drill an order to break off a certain number of files (suppose three). The commander of the leading division instantly gives the words, *Three files on the left, right turn, left wheel;* the named files immediately turn to the right, and wheeling to the left follow in file in rear of the left flank of the sub-division. When the second sub-division comes to the spot where the first division contracted its front, it will receive the same words of command from its own leader, and will proceed in like manner.

Two files, right turn.

Should it be required to diminish the front of the column one or two files more, the commander of the leading division will, as before, order the desired number of files to *turn;* on which those already in the rear will incline to the right, so as to cover the files now ordered to break off, and which turn to the right and wheel to the left in the manner already prescribed. In

In this movement, the files in the rear of the sub-divisions must lock well up, so as not to impede the march of the succeeding division. The covering serjeant will cover his officer until all the files are again brought up.

Three files to the front.

As the defilé widens (or the instructor of the drill shall direct), the commander of the leading sub-division will order files to move up to the front, by giving the word, *One, two, or three files to the front;* on which the named files turn to their front (the left), and lengthening their pace, march up, file by file, to the front of their sub-division, and immediately resume the march. Those files which are to continue in the rear will oblique to the left, lengthening also their step, till they cover, and are closed up to the right flank of their sub-division.

It is to be observed that in passing a defilé, the rule is that the files break off from the pivot flank; but interruptions may in some cases present themselves, requiring that files be broken off from the reverse flank. The same instructions apply in both cases.

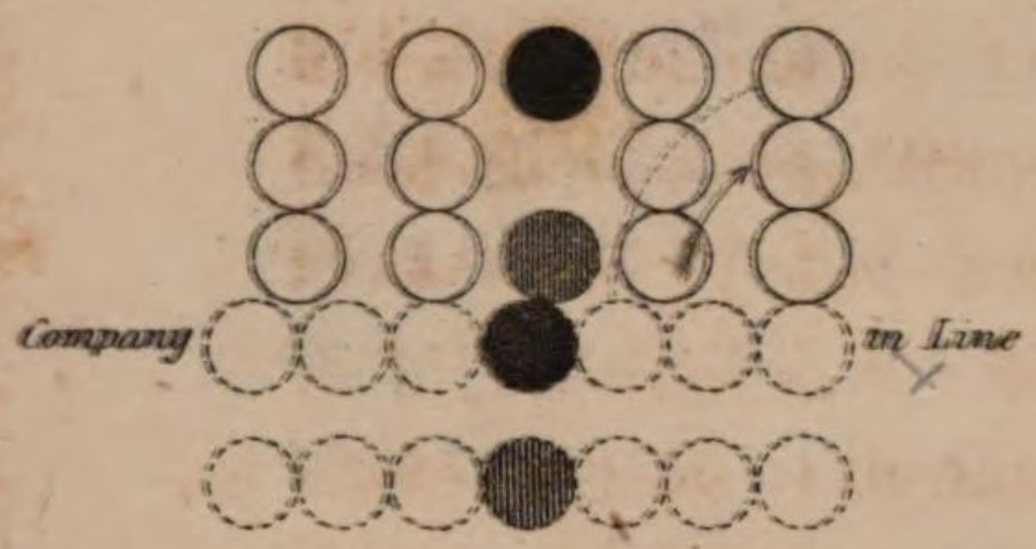
S. 19. *The Company Halted or on the March moves to a Flank, in Column of Sections, or of Sections of Threes.*

SECTIONS OR THREES, RIGHT OR LEFT. SHOULDERS FORWARD— *if halted,* QUICK MARCH, FORWARD.

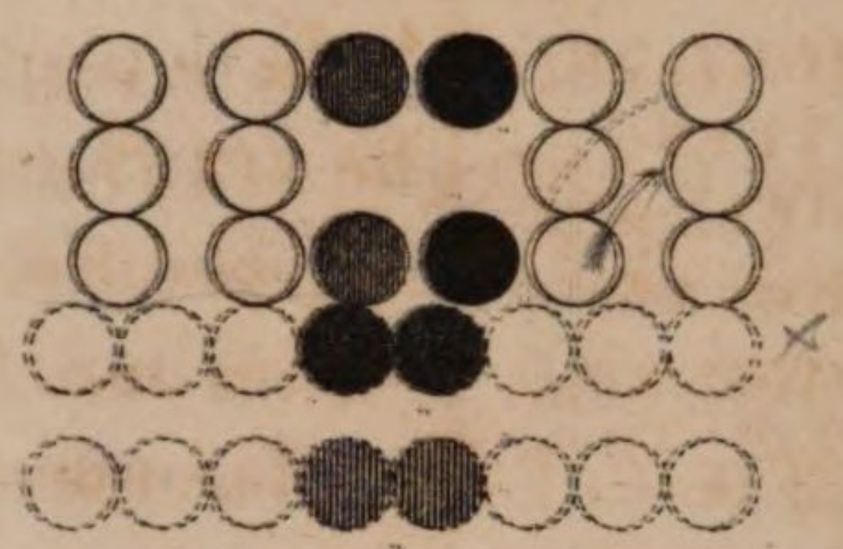
The company from line will be practised in forming sections and sections of threes, both when halted and in motion, by the command, SECTIONS, OR THREES, RIGHT OR LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD—QUICK MARCH, FORWARD; and the only exception

STATIONS OF THE ODD AND BLANK FILES WHEN WHEELED TO A FLANK BY SECTIONS OF THREES

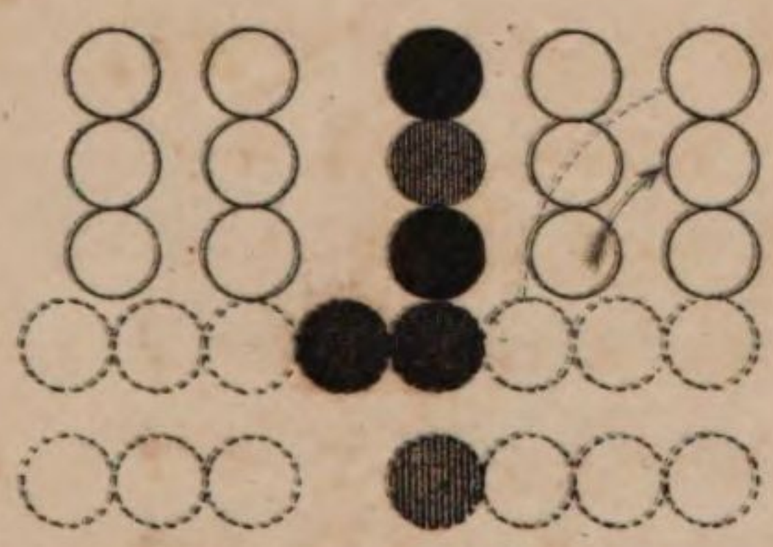
One odd file



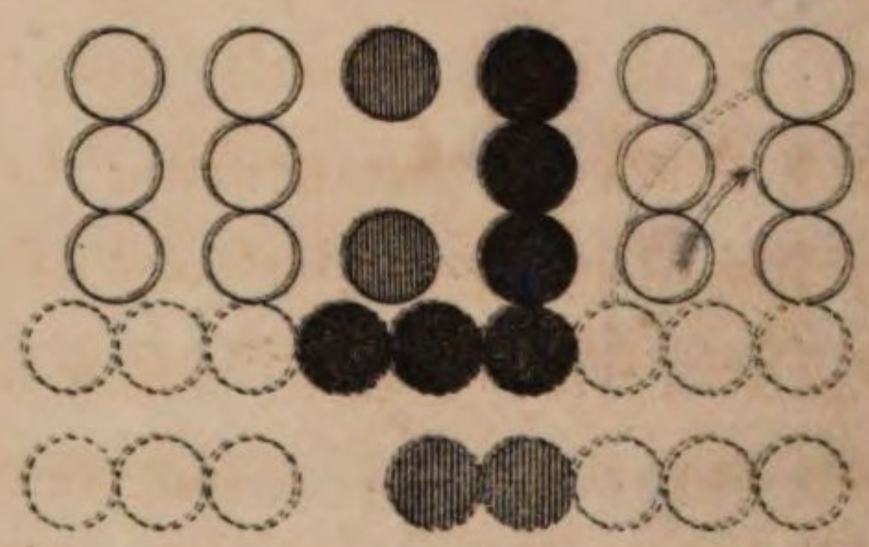
Two odd files



One odd file
and
A blank file



Two odd files
and
A blank file



Front Rank

Rear Rank

SECTIONS OR THREES, ON THE RIGHT OR LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

tion to this rule will be, when pivots are required to be accurately dressed, or when the alignement of the company is to be preserved: in this case the command will be, SECTIONS, OR THREES, ON THE RIGHT OR LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL, QUICK MARCH, *Halt, Dress.*

RIGHT OR LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD—FORWARD, *or Halt, Dress.*

In re-forming company, the command will be RIGHT OR LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD—FORWARD, if the march is to be continued; otherwise, *Halt, Dress.*

RIGHT OR LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE, QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

When pivots are required to be accurately dressed, or when the alignement is to be preserved, the command will be, RIGHT OR LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE, QUICK MARCH, *Halt, Dress.*

The word *Forward,* or *Halt,* must be given just as the outward men of threes are completing their third pace.

Should the telling off by threes leave either one or two files over, they will be placed on the right of the left section of threes, which is always to be complete. If there is one file over—on the word, THREES, SHOULDERS FORWARD, the front rank man wheels up, and places himself in rear of the pivot flank of the section in front of him; his rear rank man placing himself in the rear of its reverse flank, both men locking up; but if the odd file is a blank one, the reverse flank of the preceding section must necessarily remain uncovered. If there are two files over,—they wheel as ordered, and form a section of themselves, covering the outward flanks of the section preceding them; but if one of these two files is a blank file, the three men will form a single rank, the two front rank men covering the flanks of the preceding section, and the rear rank man stepping up between them. In

In forming threes from line to the right or to the left by the shoulders forward, the leading section must frequently be practised to wheel upon the centre man of the three, as they will often be required to do so, in disengaging to the rear, when formed as a division of a line.

The company at any time may form THREES to a flank, after the telling off has been deranged, if the men are practised to do so rapidly in succession. The first three is formed at once; the fourth man in the front rank then sees that he is the pivot for the next three, and turns or faces into the new direction; the seventh file then follow, and so on to the reverse flank of the company: when on the march, the company may mark time until the threes are formed, when they receive the word FORWARD.

In changing the direction of a column of threes, the command will be the same as in file marching, *right wheel—left wheel.*

Should it be required to form company upon the leading three, the commander will order FRONT FORM COMPANY, upon which the leading three will mark time, the remainder will make a half turn to the proper hand, and moving up to their proper places in line will mark time, until the word FORWARD or HALT is given.

If from sections of threes it be required to form sub-divisions or sections, the commander will order RIGHT (or left) TURN, RIGHT (or left) WHEEL, and when in file, FRONT FORM SUB-DIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS), upon which the leading file of sub-divisions (or sections) will mark time, the remainder turn their bodies a whole face to the proper hand, and wheel in sub-divisions or sections to the right or left as may be required. During these formations the company leader will move by the front to his proper station.

The

The company marching to a flank in threes will be practised to turn to the right and left, and to the right about, wheeling forward, afterwards, rear rank in front: the company may also be inverted by wheeling the threes forward on their reverse flank, as the inversion can at any moment be corrected.

S. 20. *Forming Company, Sub-divisions, Sections, or Sections of Threes, from File Marching.*

FRONT FORM COMPANY, SUB-DIVISIONS, OR SECTIONS.

At this word of command, the leading file marks time, the remainder turn their bodies a whole face to the left, and wheel to the right, looking to the outward flank and feeling inwards (that is to say) if right in front, turn to the left, and if left in front, turn to the right,—the officer, if not already in his place, passing along the front to it during the wheel.

As soon as the quarter circle is complete, the word FORWARD is given, if the march is to be continued.

The company marching in file (suppose from the right) has only to halt and front to be formed to the left flank.

ON THE LEADING FILE TO THE RIGHT FORM COMPANY.

At this word of command, the front rank man of the leading file will turn to the right, take one pace to the front, and halt, the rear rank moving round and covering; the remainder of the company form on the left of the right file, by files in succession.

At

ON THE LEADING FILE TO THE RIGHT ABOUT, FORM COMPANY.

At this word the leading file wheels to the right about, taking one pace to the front after wheeling; the remainder of the company march on in file, wheeling round the halted file, and forming on its left by files in succession, each file, as it comes into the line, taking up its dressing from the standing flank.

S. 21. *To form to either Flank, from Open Column of Sub-divisions.*

HALT, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE, QUICK MARCH.

The company marching in open column of sub-divisions, to form to its left, receives the words, HALT, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE, QUICK MARCH, &c., and proceeds as has already been shewn in S. 11, Part II.

RIGHT FORWARD FORM COMPANY.

To form the company to its right flank, the instructor of the drill gives the cautionary word of command, TO THE RIGHT FORM COMPANY; on which the commanders of the several divisions shift to the right flank, and the commander of the leading sub-division instantly gives the word to his division, *Left Shoulders forward.* When it has wheeled square, he orders, *Forward;* and having gained three paces, he gives the word *Halt, dress,* and dresses it on the intended line of formation. The second sub-division must gradually incline to the left by the oblique step, in order to be able to march clear of the first, and when it is arrived at the left flank of the first, its commander, falling to the rear, gives the word, *Left Shoulders forward,—forward;* then *Halt, dress up;* on which

Left Shoulders forward,— forward. Halt, dress.

Left Shoulders forward. Halt, Dress.

which the division moves up into the line with the one formed; and the commander of the company dresses it from the outward flank of the first formed sub-division, and resumes his proper place.

S. 22. *The Company moving to the Front, to gain Ground to a Flank, by a March in Echellon, by Sections.*

SECTIONS, RIGHT. FORWARD.

The company, marching to the front, receives the word SECTIONS RIGHT; the right-hand men of the front rank of each section turning in a small degree to their right, mark the time two paces, during which the sections are wheeling on their pivot men; at the third pace, and at the word *Forward*, the whole move on direct to the front that each section has now acquired: and the company continues its march in echellon.

FORM COMPANY. FORWARD.

On the word FORM COMPANY, the pivot men mark the time as before, turning back in a small degree to the left, the original front, and the sections instantly wheel backward into line; on the word FORWARD, the whole advance in line.

S. 23. *To form the Rallying Square.*

FORM THE RALLYING SQUARE.

The instructor of the drill having caused the company to disperse to a certain distance, will give the word FORM THE RALLYING SQUARE, at the same time placing himself facing the supposed enemy; the men

men hasten to the person so posted, fixing bayonets and ordering their arms as they reach him. The two first who join him form on his right and left, facing outwards. The three next place themselves in front of those posted, and three others to the rear facing to the rear, thus forming a square of three. The instructor will cause the next four men to take post at the several angles; and others as they come up will complete the different faces between these angles, which will form a square of five.

2. A square thus composed of twenty-four men (besides the person who is to rally) and formed two deep, may be augmented to a square of *seven*, three deep, by four more men taking post at the angles, and others coming up to complete the faces as before; the square will then consist of forty-eight men, and may be augmented in the same manner to a square of nine, four deep, by the angles being occupied by four more men, and the faces filled up as before; and the square will then be composed of eighty men.

THE SQUARE WILL MOVE TO THE FRONT, REAR, RIGHT, OR LEFT.

INWARDS FACE. QUICK MARCH.

3. *When the square is to march.*—In order to move with the necessary regularity previously to putting the square in motion, the instructor will cause the faces to be dressed; and after the caution, he will give the words INWARDS FACE, and it will face in the named direction, and step off accordingly at the word QUICK MARCH. 4. *To*

HALT. PREPARE TO RESIST CAVALRY. READY.

4. *To resist cavalry.*—Upon the word HALT, the square will halt and face outwards, and when it is to PREPARE TO RESIST CAVALRY;—upon the word READY, the front rank only (if the square is two or three deep) will kneel; if four deep, the two front ranks will kneel. If ordered to fire, the standing ranks only will commence an independent fire, bringing the firelock gradually up to the present.

Reduce the Square. *Quick March.*

When the square is to be reduced, two non-commissioned officers will mark the alignement facing the supposed enemy. On the word *Quick March*, the men open out, and fall in, in their proper places.

In this manner small dispersed parties, from eight to eighty men, may be formed to resist an attack of cavalry in an open country, where, from whatever cause, soldiers may have separated from the column of march.

When a company, or other small body in close files, requires to form to resist cavalry, it may be wheeled forward into column of sections, and closed to the front. When halted, the two rear sections face to the right about, and the two outward files of the second and third sections face to their right and left, so as to present a front in all directions. The men on the angles also face to their right and left.

In pursuance of the foregoing instructions, and on the principles they contain, every company of a battalion must be frequently

quently exercised by its own officers, each superintending a rank, or an allotted part of the whole movement. On a space of 70 or 80 yards square, every movement and formation may be practised that is necessary to qualify it for the operations of the battalion.

The company must be frequently exercised on rough and broken, as well as on smooth and level ground, and as often with the rear rank in front, as otherwise.

Great pains should be taken to accustom the men to remedy quickly, of their own accord, any derangement that may take place in the telling off of companies. For example, the officer will order the pivot files of sections to fall out, when the files next to them in their respective sections will become, as a matter of course, *without re-telling off*, the new pivots of the sections. Soldiers trained in this way are not liable to fall into confusion, whatever casualties may occur on service; and it is especially desirable that companies should be so exercised as to insure on all occasions, and under all circumstances, the ready wheel of sections, upon which all prompt formations against cavalry so very much depend.

Officers must be habituated to give their words of command with energy and precision. *Every officer*, on first joining a regiment, must be thoroughly drilled and exercised until he shall have a perfect knowledge of all the detail of drill required from a soldier. He cannot be considered capable of instructing the men under his command, nor be permitted to take the command of a company in the battalion, until he is master of all these points.

Squads of officers must be formed, and exercised by a field officer. They must be marched in all directions; and in proportion to the number of files in a division, they must learn accurately

accurately to judge the distances necessary for each, and to extend that knowledge to the front of greater bodies. They must acquire the habit of readily ascertaining, by the eye, perpendiculars of march, and the squareness of the wheel.

An officer ought to know the post which he should occupy in all changes of situation,—the commands which he should give,—and the general intention of a required movement. He should be master of the principles on which each formation is founded, and aware of the faults that may be committed, in order to avoid them himself, and to instruct others. These principles are in themselves so simple, that moderate reflection, habit, and attention, will soon shew them to the eye, and fix them in the mind; and individuals, from time to time, when qualified, must be ordered to exercise the battalion, or its parts.

Officers must bear in mind, that the instruction laid down in the preceding sections cannot be completely established without joining theory to practice; and no officer can be deemed duly instructed, until he is capable of commanding and explaining the several parts of which the system is composed.

It is incumbent, therefore, on commanding officers of regiments, before any officer under their orders is dismissed drill, to take steps to ascertain, by due examination, that they fully comprehend the principles and spirit of all they have been taught.

The complete instruction of an officer enlarges with his situation, and at last takes in the whole circle of military science. From the variety of knowledge required of him, his exertion must be unremitting, to qualify himself for the progressive situations at which he may arrive.

END OF PART II.

accurately to judge the distances necessary for each, and to extend that knowledge to the front of greater bodies. They must acquire the habit of readily ascertaining, by the eye, perpendiculars of march, and the squareness of the wheel.

An officer ought to know the post which he should occupy in all changes of situation,—the commands which he should give,—and the general intention of a required movement. He should be master of the principles on which each formation is founded, and always of the rules that may be combined. In order to avoid them himself, and to instruct others. These principles are in themselves so simple, that moderate reflection, habit, and attention, will soon show them to the eye, and fix them in the mind; and individuals, from time to time, when qualified, must be ordered to exercise the battalion, or its parts.

Officers must bear in mind, that the instruction laid down in the preceding sections cannot be completely established without joining theory to practice, and no officer can be deemed duly instructed, unless he is capable of commanding and explaining the several parts of which the system is composed.

It is incumbent, therefore, on commanding officers of regiments, before any officer under their orders is dismissed drill, to take steps to ascertain, by due examination, that they fully comprehend the principles and spirit of all they have been taught.

The complete instruction of an officer embraces with his situation, and at last takes in the whole circle of military science. From the variety of knowledge required of him, his exertion must be unremitting, to qualify himself for the progressive situations at which he may arrive.

END OF PART II.

PART III.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

FOR THE MOVEMENTS OF A BATTALION.

S. 1. *Commands.*

1. ALL words of command must be given short, quick, and loud, so as to be heard and understood from right to left of a battalion in line; or from front to rear of a battalion in column. And, indeed, every officer must be accustomed to give his words of command, even to the smallest bodies, in the full extent of his voice, and in a sharp tone, in order to be heard by the leaders of other corps who are dependent on his motions. The confidence and prompt obedience of the soldier can only be in proportion to the firm, decided, and proper manner in which every officer gives his orders.

2. The field officers and adjutant of the battalion are at all times mounted, in order to give ground in movements, to correct mistakes, to circulate orders, to dress pivots, when they ought to cover in column in a straight line, and to take care, when the column halts, that they are speedily adjusted before

wheeling

wheeling up into line. No dismounted officer can possibly perform the duties required of those who fill such situations.

S. 2. *Degrees of March.*

General Intention.

1. All military movements are intended to be made with quickness consistent with order, regularity, and without hurry or fatigue to the troops.

Slow March.

2. The slow step is particularly applicable to purposes of parade, and occasionally to the march of extended lines.

Quick March.

3. The *Quick March* is the usual pace to be applied to all general movements of battalions, or greater bodies, in column or line.

Double March.

4. The *Double March* is only to be applied to the movements of the divisions of a battalion; that is, to the interior movements of the divisions of a battalion when forming on any of its fixed parts. It cannot be applied to the movements of greater bodies, without exhausting the men, except upon peculiar occasions for a short distance; as in a charge, or where a post or position is to be seized, or the wheel of a column to be performed. In echellon movements the *Double March* may be safely applied to sub-divisions or sections, when used in rapid formations from line to square, and from square to line, or for quickly throwing back or forward a flank; but

not

not to the march of companies or strong divisions in echellon changes of front or position. The double march must never be applied to file marching except in the formation of square on the two centre sub-divisions.

Oblique March.

5. The instruction for the oblique step is still necessary, in the drill of the recruit, for the obvious purpose of giving him the essential habit of moving obliquely without affecting the square position of his body to the front; and this is highly useful to prevent crowding, or opening out, and to preserve correctness in line marching.

S. 3. Marching in Line.

1. The march in line, either to front or rear, is the most important and most difficult of all movements, and requires every exertion of commanding officers and every attention of officers and men for its true attainment. The essential points to be observed, are, the perpendicular direction of the march to the front of the battalion as then standing;—the perfect squareness of shoulders and body of each individual;—the light touch of the files to the directing point;—and the accurate equality of cadence and step given by advanced serjeants.

Directing Serjeants.

2. Every individual should therefore be well prepared for this movement. But to ensure its correct execution, three directing serjeants must be formed in

in the centre of the battalion; upon whose exact cadence, step, squareness of body, and precision of movement, dependence can be placed. They will be posted as follows: one, between the colours in the front rank, covered by another in the rear rank, and again covered by a third in the supernumerary rank.

3. At all times when the battalion is formed in line, and directed to advance, the front directing serjeant, of the three who lead the line, takes six paces to his front and halts; the two other serjeants who were covering him pass through the interval, and move upon each side of him; an officer or serjeant from the rear replaces the leading serjeant, in the front rank, and is again covered by the serjeant-major six or eight paces in rear of the line. These three points being corrected by the adjutant, or a mounted officer, a fourth point in prolongation is easily obtained. If a distinct and visible object should present itself in the true line, the mounted officer will order the directing serjeant to march upon it. If this be not the case, the directing serjeant, (after being assured by the mounted officer that he himself is perfectly and squarely placed,) will, by casting his eyes down the centre of his body, from the junction of his heels, take up and prolong a line perpendicular to himself and to the battalion; for this purpose he will observe and take up any accidental small point on the ground within 100 or 150 paces. Intermediate ones cannot be wanting, and their renewal is easy, as he successively approaches them in his march.

4. These

4. These preparatory arrangements being made, the mounted officer will give the word "*Steady*," as a signal that the line of direction is determined.

5. When the battalion advances, the serjeant-major will remain steady in the rear of the line, for 20 or 30 paces, to ascertain, under the directions of the mounted officer, the squareness and correctness of the line of march. If no waving or crowding in the line appear, the direction is certainly true, and the serjeant-major will then follow in the rear, covering as before.

6. The mounted officer will occasionally superintend the whole, but so long as these three points cover directly on the distant visible object, or on the intermediate ones, taken up successively by the directing serjeant in his own person, the correct squareness of the battalion may be depended upon.

To pass obstacles when marching in line.

7. The march in line is generally adopted where the country is open, but in certain cases, where partial obstacles may offer, they can be avoided, by filing to the right or left, and then right or left wheel to follow the formed flank of the line. The formation in this manner will increase as the obstacle increases; but as it diminishes the files will successively form up, until the whole are again in line. Where the obstacles are of small extent, but frequently occurring, this mode is the most ready that can be applied in either advancing or retiring. Where they are of greater extent an entire column formation should be adopted.

8. In

Retiring. 8. In marching to the *rear*, the battalion must cover its proper extent of ground. The rear rank men must avoid closing their files more than usual, otherwise the front men, who are in general larger, will be crowded in their ranks: music, drums, supernumerary officers, &c., will take care to march with exactness, not to interrupt, but rather to assist the battalion. The battalion is not to *face about*, till every thing is prepared for its instant *march*, therefore it never unnecessarily stands faced to the rear.

Flank companies. 9. When the flank companies of a battalion are wheeled backward, and faced outward, in order to cover its flank, such companies, if during the retreat they march in file, will take particular care to move in the same direction as the battalion, and not impede its progress. When the battalion fronts, those companies will face outward, and always recollecting that their immediate business is to cover the flanks, they will regulate their position and movements by those of the battalion. When marching, they move perpendicular to the line of the battalion. When fronted, they make an angle with it of about 45, according to the apparent circumstances that threaten.

S. 4. *Wheeling.*

1. The manner of performing the wheels of a division is sufficiently explained in the first and second Parts, (S. 21, Part I. and S. 7, Part II.) It is shewn that they are made on halted and moveable pivots; and it may

may only be necessary to add an explanation of the circumstances under which each description of wheel is respectively adopted.

On a halted pivot.

2. Wheels are made on a halted pivot from line into column, and from column into line.

On a moveable pivot

3. The principle of the moveable pivot (Vide S. 21, Part I.) must always be applied to the wheel of divisions marching in column. And in column of route and manœuvre, when at less than full distance, the new direction should be taken at an angle, so obtuse with the former line of march as not to require more than a wheel of one-eighth (for half distance), and one-sixteenth (for quarter distance) of the circle; otherwise, the arc of the circle to be wheeled would so much exceed the distance between divisions, that crowding must be the consequence. If the change of direction in such columns is to be made at an angle more acute than the above proportions, or at a right angle with the line of march, it must be performed gradually, (unless performed by battalions at once, vide S. 10, No. 5, Part III.)—the word "*Forward*" being always given when the wheel of the above-named extent has been completed; and then the wheel to be repeated, if necessary, when a few paces more advanced. And if the leaders of each division follow with scrupulous attention, the changes of direction of the division in their front—giving the word "*Right (or left) Shoulders forward*" at the same spot, and then "*Forward*" at the moment when the division

is

is square with the one preceding, the distances, and the whole regularity of the march, will be preserved. It may be observed, however, that a column of very small divisions may follow and conform to the windings and turnings of the head, without repeating the word, *Shoulders forward*, which should be given by the head division upon all occasions.

4. When divisions at full distance make successive wheels of the quarter circle into a new alignement, the leading division will receive the word *Forward*, the very moment the quarter circle is completed; by which time the succeeding division (having received the word *Shoulders forward* on reaching the wheeling point) will have wheeled so many paces as the arc of the quarter circle exceeds the radius (or distances between divisions), being in the proportion of 11 to 7: then the pivot file of the succeeding division, moving round the point, will occupy the identical spot from which the pivot of the preceding division had moved *forward*: thus the wheeling angle is in succession left clear, and division after division leads out in the new direction at regular distances.

Wheel of divisions may be made forward or backward.

5. Wheels of divisions may be made either forward or backward. In progressive movement they are made forward, but particular occasions require that they should be made BACKWARD, on the pivot flank. In this manner the line may wheel into open column of companies, sub-divisions, or sections, and be prolonged when necessary to either flank, the pivots being

being thus preserved. The wheel backwards is also advantageously used in marching off parades, where guards are of different strengths, and is often essentially necessary in narrow grounds. By this means, although divisions should be unequal, either in the same battalion, or in a line, yet all their pivot flanks will, after the wheel, remain truly dressed; of course, the distances will be just, the line of marching accurately preserved, and each division, by afterwards wheeling up, will exactly occupy the identical ground it quitted. The backwards wheel, however, need not be practised where the ground is uneven, and the divisions stronger than 15 or 16 files: where this is the case, the command will be FORM OPEN COLUMN RIGHT (or left) IN FRONT; upon which the pivot men face as required, and the divisions are FACED TO THE RIGHT ABOUT—RIGHT (or left) WHEEL; and are *halted* and *fronted* by the leaders of each when the wheel is performed.

How performed.

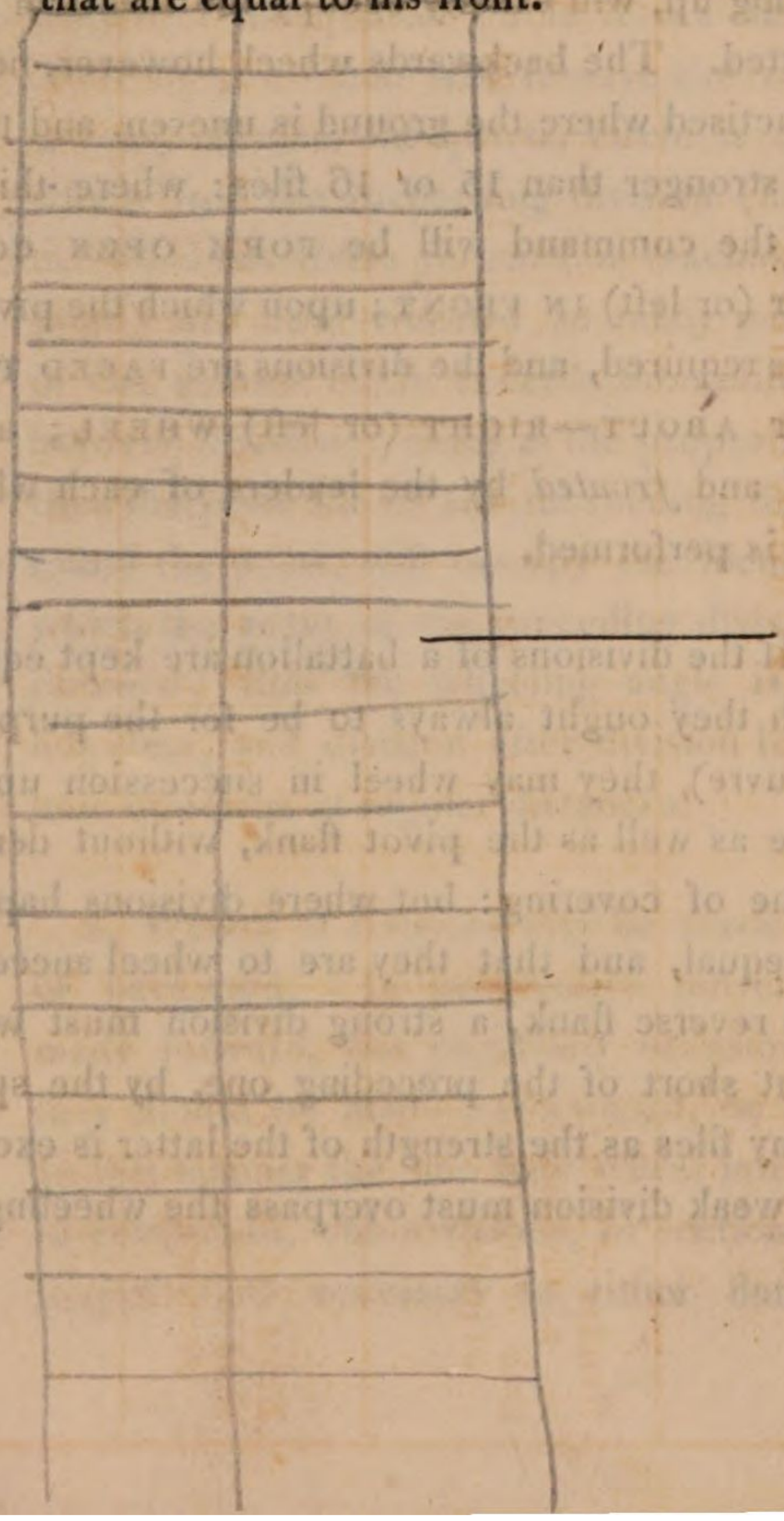
6. If the divisions of a battalion are kept equalized (which they ought always to be for the purposes of manœuvre), they may wheel in succession upon the reverse as well as the pivot flank, without deranging the line of covering: but where divisions happen to be unequal, and that they are to wheel successively on the reverse flank, a strong division must wheel at a point short of the preceding one, by the space or as many files as the strength of the latter is exceeded, and a weak division must overpass the wheeling point

of

of its preceding stronger one, by the space of as many files as it is deficient.

Necessary recollections.

7. It appears that the number of paces of 30 inches, comprised in the front of any division or body, is nearly 3-4ths of the number of files of which it is composed; and that the number of files being once ascertained in each division, the officer commanding it must on all occasions recollect the number of paces that are equal to his front.



TABLE

TABLE OF THE NUMBER OF PACES CORRESPONDING TO A GIVEN NUMBER OF FILES.

Number of Files in a division, each occupying 21 inches.	5	10	12	14	15	16	18	20	30	40	50	100
Front of divisions in paces of 30 inches.	Paces In. 3 15	7	8 12	9 24	10 15	11 6	12 18	14	21	28	35	70

70

8. The field-officers and adjutants must always recollect the number of paces the front of the battalion and its divisions occupy, in order to take up ground exactly in all formations.

S. 5. *Movements.*

1. Every movement must be divided into its distinct parts, and each part executed by its cautionary and executive words of command.

2. The exercise of small bodies, when within the command of one voice, appears more showy from the effect produced by keeping such bodies constantly in motion, and by changing from one manœuvre to another while on the march. But such movements, and the formations made from them, must be on accidental points, unless mounted officers are very alert; and however brilliant and effective in battalion practice, they can only be considered as occasional exceptions, not applicable to large bodies, where hurry must be avoided, and where concert and relative position are indispensable. It is at the same time most essential that Commanding Officers should not linger between their movements; to avoid which the caution for the succeeding movement may be given previous to the halt, which will afford the field officers and adjutants time to direct the points for formation. In moving to form upon any part of a battalion or brigade, the part

or

or parts to be formed upon may alone be halted—the other divisions continuing the march.

3. All field movements and firings are to be performed with fixed bayonets, except when troops are acting as light infantry.

S. 6. *The Alignement.*

1. To march in an ALIGNEMENT is to make troops march in any straight line which joins two given points, —or to form upon any such given line.

2. In formations of defence the lines occupied may be curved, and following the advantages of the ground, but in those of attack, the lines must be straight, otherwise the troops in advancing must inevitably fall into confusion.

3. When troops are to form in a straight line, two necessary points in it must always be previously ascertained. One the point of APPUI at which one flank of the body, whether small or great, is to be placed, and the other the distant point of formation or dressing on which the front of the body is directed.

4. When battalions, or divisions of a battalion, come up successively into line, the outward flank of the last formed and halted body is always considered as the point of APPUI or support of the succeeding one. The look and alignement of the soldier in

forming is always towards the point of appui, and the correction of dressing is always from that point towards the opposite hand. This great principle is to be observed, from the smallest body to the most considerable corps.

Attention required from the leading officer.

5. The officer who commands the division which leads a column in any given alignement must move upon an object without regarding his division, so that his shoulder shall just graze the head of any mounted officer's horse posted at an intermediate point, (or the shoulder of any man on foot placed for the same purpose,) and which he must invariably preserve in a straight line with the distant points. All the following officers must maintain their exact distance from the company preceding, covering the pivots in their own persons. Should any of the companies neglect their covering, those that succeed them must rectify the fault and exactly touch whatever intermediate points may be placed to mark an alignement.

6. In whatever manner the leading division of a battalion arrives in a straight alignement in which it is to form, a mounted officer gives the point where it enters; and when arrived on the ground, and halted previous to formation, a field officer corrects, if necessary, from that division, the pivot files on the fixed distant points before the line is formed.

S. 7. *Points of Formation.*

1. When a single battalion takes up a new position, it may not seem material whether a flank is accurately placed upon a given point, or whether a line is exactly formed in any certain direction. But when it forms a part of a more considerable body, all its positions are relative to other battalions; and if the formations on flank points are not accurate and just, false directions and distances will be given to a whole line. It is apparent, therefore, that every single battalion should be accustomed to make its changes of position and formations on its own fixed flank-points; and commanding officers should always hold this object in view, and instruct their adjutants and others accordingly.

Relative connexions of battalion points with general formations.

2. The line on which troops move, or are successively to form, may be taken up to any extent by the prolongation of an original short base, given in the direction which the commander of a line will point out, according to his own views. This given base will serve to correct the position of the different persons who successively, as their separate corps or divisions require it, prolong the alignement from the several points already established. In general, therefore, the point where a formation, or entry, into an alignement is to be made, being marked by a fixed person, the commander will place a second thirty or

forty paces without the first, exactly in the direction which he determines to give to his new alignement. These two persons will mark a base, which, by adjutants or others successively aligning themselves on the two first placed points and on each other, may be prolonged to any required length, at the same time that the commander fixes for himself a distant point upon which to correct them, and which whether in battalion or brigade is indispensable.

Prolongers of alignements.

3. When the persons who prolong a line are on horseback, the head of the horse of each standing perpendicular to, and facing that line, is the object; and when they dismount, (which should always be done when the steadiness of the horse cannot be depended upon,) they should cover, holding the horse by the outer hand, and the inner shoulder which is in a line with the horse will be grazed in passing by the flanks of a column in march. All other men, who may be posted on foot at points for a column to march upon, will be placed in a similar manner. Although the leader of the first division of a column will march on the persons placed in the line, yet if the direction happens to be on some remarkable object, it should be fixed upon as the general point of correction. When columns move in prolongation to the front, two points will be given in front of the pivot flank of the leading division; and when they move by the flank march of divisions, two points will also be given for the flank march of the regulating division.

4. Where

Battalion points.

4. Where two points are to be given in a certain direction, towards an outer flank, the inner one should be first determined, and the outer one is immediately and easily taken over the inner point, and the flank one of correction. When formations are on a central division, points of correction will be taken on both flanks.

Covering serjeants.

5. A serjeant will be placed, upon *all occasions* of formation of lines, in front of each flank file of the company named as the base, facing to the point of appui: and a covering serjeant will run out from each company as it arrives within twenty paces of the point of formation, and will cover at the distance of the division in the line established by the serjeants in front of the base, who will remain steady until the third company from them receives the words *Eyes front*, when they will pass to the rear. The covering serjeant of the next company will also remain steady until the third company from him receives the words *Eyes front*, and so on until the line is formed. In this manner each covering serjeant will have two points to cover upon; and each division will always have two points upon which it will be brought parallel to the general line, and independent of the divisions already formed; and if the points are well taken up, and the divisions properly conducted, little dressing will be necessary.

Points to be always kept clear.

6. It is most essential that these serjeants, who are so many intermediate points, connecting the flank of appui

appui with the outer flank point of the battalion, should be always kept clear for the view of division officers. Divisions must therefore "*dress up*" to them *upon all occasions.* (Vide *Deployments and Echellon Movements*, S. 36, 40, and 41, Part III.)

Base points.

7. Whenever a company is named as the base of a formation, two serjeants belonging to it will immediately spring out and give the base for the covering points. When formations are made upon the centre, the intermediate points of each wing will cover the central base; and upon change of front on the colours, one of the supernumerary serjeants of the centre will place himself in the new front before the colours, and the covering serjeants of the two centre companies will change places and cover him, the coverers of each wing aligning on them as before.

Covering serjeants in change of position by the open column.

8. When a line changes its front in any direction, by means of the open column, a covering serjeant from each division will always run out twenty paces before the division reaches the new alignement to mark its distance; and he will cover at the proper pivot flank upon the point of formation.

9. When formations to line or changes of position are made by sub-divisions or sections, the covering serjeants of companies are sufficient to take up points.

Corrections upon flank pivots.

10. The covering of serjeants, whether in line or column, will always be corrected by the field officers

from

from the flanks, or from the base of formation, upon the flank point of the battalion.

Duties of mounted officers.

11. It is the particular duty of the field officers to establish the points necessary for the movements and formations of the battalion, assisted, in the exercise of it, by the adjutant, who will mark the distant point of his battalion.

12. All mounted officers, whether staff or regimental, ought to have a good seat and a good hand on horseback. Their horses should be well managed, so as to be thrown into a full canter at once, to take up ground, either for the depth of a corps in column, or for its extent in line: and every officer should accurately possess himself of the rate at which his horse may canter, so as to calculate how many strokes of a full canter bear a proportion to the space occupied by files of infantry at 21 inches from each other. The rate at which horses canter is so variable, as to render it impossible to establish any accurate table of calculation on this head; and therefore it must rest with each individual officer to ascertain the paces of his horse, and thus to take up distances with precision.

S. 8. *Dressing.*

1. When the leaders of companies dress their divisions, the duty must be performed without noise or bawling to the men, which has an unsteady and unmilitary appearance. If it be necessary to call any particular men to dress up or back, the caution must be given

given in such a low tone as to be heard only by the company.

General attentions of dressing in all formations.

2. The officer in dressing is placed on that flank of his division, to which the men's eyes are turned on the word *dress,* and from the second file from the flank of the company towards which his wheeling flank moves from column, or his inward flank from echellon; he makes his corrections on his intermediate point.

Closing to correct distances.

3. When distances have been lost, and that it is necessary to close by the side step to regain them, such closing will always be made, either to, or from the centre, which is the point of *appui:* the dressing will therefore be made from centre to flanks; and officers commanding companies of the right wing will place themselves, to give the word and time, in front of their left flanks, and those of the left wing in front of the right flanks. When officers change from one flank to the other in order to close, they will pass by the front, and repass by the rear of their companies. On all other occasions, when it is necessary to change their flanks in line, they will pass and repass by the rear.

Dressing a battalion after an advance in line.

4. In dressing a battalion after a halt, the commander will order POINTS TO THE FRONT, upon which the regimental colour, the captain of the right centre company, and the officer on the left of the line, will step forward any given number of paces, facing to the left,

left, and will be immediately aligned by a field officer from the left. On the word STEADY, the captains of the other companies will move briskly to the fron and cover to the left, on the points which have been prepared. The commander then gives the word BATTALION, RIGHT FORWARD DRESS, QUICK MARCH, when the officers of companies, *Halt Dress*, their respective companies, resuming their proper places on the word STEADY from the commanding officer. In brigade, officers, in taking up a line of dressing, face towards the battalion of formation.

S. 9. *Open Column.*

Formation of column.

1. Columns are formed from line for the convenience of movement, and for the purpose of again extending into line. Every column of march or manœuvre must be formed by a regular succession of the divisions from right to left of the line, or of such of its parts as compose the column; for whatever is the relative position of a body in line, such ought it to be in column; and where several connected columns are formed, the same flanks of each should be in front; but whether the right or left, will depend on circumstances.

Column of march and manœuvre.

2. Columns of march or manœuvre will generally be composed of companies, sub-divisions, or sections. An open column occupies the same extent of ground as when in line, minus the front of its leading division; and its chief objects are facility of movement, the quick formation of the line to the flank, and the change

change of situation in the shortest lines from one position to another. It is named the column of march or ROUTE, when applied to common marches, where the attention of men and officers is less scrupulously demanded—and the column of MANŒUVRE, when being within reach of the enemy, or at exercise, the greatest exactness is required to ensure its speedy formation at any instant into line, during its movement from one position to another.

Central movements in double columns.

4. Double columns are formed upon the centre of battalions, brigades, or lines, for the special purposes of attack, and, in certain cases, for the passage of defilés when presented in front of a centre. (Vide S. 18, Part III.)—All such advances from the centre should be in double column, formed on the two centre sub-divisions of a battalion, or the two centre divisions of a brigade. It is obvious, that, for the purposes of attack, a force can, by means of this formation, be more readily and sooner brought to bear upon a given object, than by advance of column from a flank. In the latter movement the divisions have the diameter, in the former only the radius, of the circle to traverse: it follows, therefore, that the same force is formed from the centre in one-half the time that it can be done from a flank. But, in battalion movements, the consideration of these advantages must not prevent the equal practice of advances in column from a flank; for when the central movement is applied to a brigade, the formation from the centre for the whole becomes totally a flank movement for the battalions on the

the flanks. Thus battalions should equally practise flank movements in column to the front or rear, in order to perform with readiness the part that may be required of them in the central movements of larger bodies.

Application of columns from a flank.

5. Columns formed, on a flank, are equally applicable, with central columns, to purposes of attack, and the employment of the one in preference to the other must necessarily depend on ground and circumstances, and can only be determined by the commander on the spot: but for the passage of defilés, the movement in single column from a flank is preferable to that in double column from the centre, particularly where the defilé happens so to present itself in front, as to be unfavourable to a direct debouché from the centre. Where this is the case, a battalion, or brigade, may be conducted to it with much greater facility in single column from a flank; and the front of the column, in the latter movement, can always be diminished to the smallest degree of reduction, according to the width of the defilé; whereas objections may be offered to the general application of a debouché in double column from the centre *for the passage of defilés*, inasmuch as it is not susceptible of a similar reduction of front without being liable to the confusion which may arise in narrow and difficult passes, from the probable mixture of files, if diminished to less than double sections: but where the debouché can be made in a direct line from the centre, and where the defilé affords room for the double column formation, these objections do not exist.

exist. It may be laid down as a principle, therefore, that the passage of a defilé should generally be effected by the march of a single column from a flank; and that the body which is opposite to the defilé is the first to cross in advancing, and the last to move in retreating.

Changes of position, or the front of lines, by the open column.

6. Changes in the position, or the front of lines, may be made by means of the open column, where the difficulty of the ground does not favour a movement in echellon; or where the necessity for the latter march is not called for by the immediate presence of an enemy: such changes of position are effected to the front or rear of a flank division, or upon the centre division of a battalion formed in line, by all the remaining divisions facing and disengaging their heads towards the points of formation, and filing to their respective distances in open column, as taken up by covering serjeants: or divisions may move by SECTIONS OF THREES, SHOULDERS FORWARD, and proceed as above directed.

7. All changes of position, by means of the open column, will be effected by the formation of a column right or left in front, on the named division. If on a flank division, the caution will specify whether the other flank is to be thrown back or forward: if on a central division, the caution will in like manner specify which wing is to be thrown forward.

8. An open column may effect a change of position

tion upon its front, rear, or any central division, by the named division, wheeling up according to the front to which it is intended to change; and the other divisions facing, and filing into the new alignement.

Changes of position in column to the front, on the fixed or moveable pivots.

9. In changes of position, by means of the open column from a flank to the front, the whole line, except the leading division, will previously wheel backwards or forwards by divisions into column: if the wheel is made backward, the flank division may stand fast until the column has marched up to it; and it then proceeds by command of its own leader; and the succeeding divisions will follow in column. But changes from line to the front, in open column, may be made, by the flank division moving at the same time that the remaining divisions are thrown into column by the inclination of the outer shoulders, and following the advanced division on the moveable pivot, by which considerable time will be saved. Vide S. 18, Part III.

Posting of officers.

10. In column of manœuvre, the ordinary post of a commanding officer of a battalion is near the pivot flank of the leading division; that of the other field officers to be respectively near the flanks of the centre and rear on the reverse flank.

In column of companies.

11. Each division of which a column is composed is conducted by a leader, placed on the pivot flank of the front rank, which is his general post: in a column of

of companies such leader is the captain or commander of the company. The lieutenant is to cover the second file from the reverse flank; the second and third subalterns in rear of the second and third sections; and the covering serjeant is to cover the second file from the pivot flank. Commanding officers will however use their discretion in directing the captains to fall to the rear, their places being taken by their senior subalterns; for in all field movements the superintendence of the captain will be found most useful, and it is only in the rear of his company that he can observe its movements and correct mistakes.

In column of sub-divisions.

12. In a column of sub-divisions the captain leads the head sub-division of his company, and his lieutenant the second. The second subaltern is to cover the second file from the reverse flank of the rear sub-division, and if there is a third subaltern, he will cover the second file from the reverse flank of the front sub-division.

In column of sections and threes.

13. In a column of sections, the captain leads the head section of his company; his lieutenant the third one; the second subaltern the fourth one; and when the establishment admits of a third subaltern, he will command the second section. In sections of *threes*, the captain is placed on the inner flank of the leading section—his covering serjeant leads the centre file—and the other officers and serjeants are formed in the rear, or reverse flank, in the same order as when in line.

14. When

14. When any considerable continuation of the march is the object, and pivot officers are permitted to be in rear of their divisions, their flank posts must be occupied by non-commissioned officers, who remain answerable under their direction for the preservation of the proper distances.

Music, drummers, &c.

15. In open column, music, drummers, &c., of battalions, wheel with and remain closed up to the rear of their respective divisions. In column at half or quarter distance, they may occasionally, if there is space, move on the reverse flank. Instead of being kept collected, they may in column of march be sent to their respective companies to remain in the rear of each; but they are on no occasion to lengthen out, or interfere with the movements in column, or to increase the intervals between battalions in column.

Marching in column.

16. It has been already observed, that all marches of battalions are made in column of companies, of sub-divisions, of sections, or of sections of threes: but it must be borne in mind, that the front of the column should never be reduced unnecessarily.

Application of the four-deep formation.

17. The formation of four deep, though deemed inapplicable to battalion drill with reference to service, may, nevertheless, in certain cases, be applied with advantage, in situations for example, where its single rank formation affords room for moving without restraint, as in marching to the ground of exercise, or upon

upon any occasion with unfixed bayonets, and arms trailed.

Countermarch by divisions.

18. The countermarch by divisions successively from the rear to the front, changes the leading flank of the battalion column, but allows it to continue its former direction of march, and is a previous manœuvre often necessary to enable a battalion to take up a relative position, or to form in a mass of columns. Battalions must know how to perform the countermarch, but otherwise, both in exercise and in the real practice of troops in the field, they should be so prepared as to render it immaterial which rank is in front, and whether the right or left flank leads the column.

Colours.

19. All countermarches necessarily change the pivot flanks of columns. The colours cover the third, fourth, and fifth files from the pivot, and must move up steadily and together, when the line is to be formed, or any other formation made by word of command (given in a low tone of voice) from the officer who carries the king's colour.

Formation of line from open column.

20. When the column of companies halts to form, pivot flanks are in an instant corrected from the leading division by field officers of battalions. On the caution, officers move to the centre of their companies one pace from the front rank; their covering serjeants place themselves on the right of each if the wheel is to be to the left; or behind the second file from the

the pivot if the wheel is to be to the right, and a serjeant of the leading company of the battalion runs up and places himself in the new alignement to mark where the wheeling flank of that company is to rest. Pivot men of the front rank face square into the new direction, and the rear rank locks up to the front rank. The whole wheel up and halt. Officers dress their companies, and then, passing by the rear of their companies, if not already on the proper flank, replace their serjeants, who are now in the front rank. If any farther dressing is necessary, it must be ordered and made by a mounted field officer.

21. In general the whole of a battalion will be halted on its ground, stand in column, and have its pivots adjusted, before it wheels up and forms: but if necessary, and where parts of it arrive n the line in file, they may form successively as they come up. If part of a battalion should therefore be ordered to wheel into line, while the other divisions are not yet in it, the pivot men of those divisions (and not the officers) must cover on the formed part of the line before they wheel up. And when several battalion columns changing position enter separately, and are to form in the same line, each may be successively wheeled up, if so ordered or intended, when its adjoining one has three or four of its divisions standing in column on the line.

Disengaging heads of companies or divisions.

22. In many cases, as already explained, independent of the passage of lines, formation of close columns, &c.

&c., the companies or divisions of a battalion in line are ordered to face, and to lead out to the front or rear, into column. An explanatory caution being given, the companies face to the point directed, and at the same instant the three leading files of each disengage by the side step, from the flank of the preceding company, bringing the shoulder forward. In this situation each leader is enabled, at the word QUICK MARCH, to move independently, without check, preserving his distance from whatever is the proper front of the column. In disengaging to the rear by threes from line, the leading three of the company next to the one of formation must wheel upon its centre file.

Column of march or route.

23. The rear divisions of a battalion, or more considerable column, either of march or manœuvre, will constantly follow every turning which the head may make; each successively changing its direction at the same point with the leading division; and, although in route marching the files of a division may be permitted to loosen, and move with freedom, yet the pivot files must carefully preserve their place and distances *at all times*, under the constant superintendence of an officer of each division: in long marches officers and pivot files may be frequently relieved in these essential attentions. Preparatory to any relaxation in route marching, the words MARCH AT EASE should be given, when the soldiers may be allowed to open their files, carry their arms as they please, and

converse

converse. The officers may march likewise at ease, and, with the exception of the officer charged with the superintendence of the pivot files, they will be found most useful in rear of their companies. At the word ATTENTION, files are closed, the step taken up, silence preserved, and arms sloped. In this restored order all alterations of front, formations, &c., should be executed. When it is probable that a column of march may be required to form to a flank, it will move at open distance, and when ordered to HALT, and FORM in line, the pivot men of companies must remain steady where they are found at the word HALT; and the companies or divisions will wheel up into line, such as the ground will admit of. When the march is again to be resumed, the line breaks into column, and the rear divisions at their ordered distances will continue to follow the exact path traced out by the leading flank: the following divisions of a column must never deviate from this rule, or endeavour of themselves to get into a straight line, when the general direction is a winding one, until an express order is given for that purpose; which can hardly ever be the case until the head of the column is halted, with a determination to form the line in a straight direction. When the necessity of forming to a flank is not likely to occur, the column of march will be at quarter distance. (Vide S. 10, No. 3, Part III.) But the above attentions from the pivot files and division officers are still essential. In route marching nothing is so important as the careful preservation of distances, and the avoiding of the slightest check; for

a check that is scarcely perceptible at the head of column will cause a most serious interruption in the rear. The utmost attention, therefore, of every officer will be directed to these points; and to the passage of obstacles of every description with the largest possible front; and to the prevention of all unnecessary defiling, as it tends not only to lengthen out the column, but to interrupt its progress and to harass the troops. For further instructions on this important head, and which are intended to apply to the smallest as well as to the largest bodies, vide S. 5 of Part IV.

Diminishing or increasing the front of a column.

24. In movement this operation is either done by each company successively, when it arrives at the point where the leading one of the column performed it, or else by the whole companies of the battalion, at the same moment, by command of the commanding officer. In the latter case, at the instant the battalion should begin to reduce or increase its front, the commander gives the general caution and command to that effect: if by companies successively, the commander of the battalion gives the caution to the leading division only, or if an obstacle presents itself unexpectedly, the commander of the leading division will proceed to diminish the front, without waiting for the direction of the commanding officer. The leaders of companies give their words of execution, on reaching the obstacle, to the pivot sub-divisions or sections to double in rear of the reverse sub-divisions, which never alter the pace at which the column was marching, but proceed as if they were totally unconnected

nected with the operation that the others are performing.

Obstacles in march of columns

25. Should the march of a column, whether in a straight alignement or otherwise, be at any time interrupted by pools of water, or any other obstacle which is impassable, the march will be continued direct to that obstacle, which will be passed by diverging on all occasions, when practicable, to the reverse flank so as to remain behind the line of pivots, and the alignement will again on the other side be taken up by the pivots, at a point prepared by a mounted officer. Allowance will be made, when the line is to form, for the breadth of such obstacle, by doubling as many divisions as will fill up the vacancy which has been so occasioned. Small interruptions must never, if possible, cause the pivots to deviate from the straight line, when the intention of forming upon it is perfectly understood.

S. 10. *Column at Quarter Distance, and Close Column.*

Formation.

1. The column at quarter distance is formed either by closing from open distance, when it is intended to march upon the same alignement on which the open column had been formed, or by the march of companies or divisions to a flank, from line, when it is intended to form in rear of the right or left division of a battalion. This column is to be conducted upon an

an alignement, and upon all changes of direction, according to the principles which guide the movement of the open column. When close columns are formed, the companies or divisions must be at *one* pace distance, measuring from the heels of the rear rank to the heels of the front rank; and these distances must always be taken up by the covering serjeants, who will for that purpose run out twenty paces before the leading flank of divisions shall reach the alignement: if the distance is to be taken up from the rear, he will cover the formed flank, and then go to the right about.

Distance of divisions in close columns.

2. The column at quarter distance is equally applicable to most of the changes of position, and formations of open column, except the formation of line to a flank, or in changes of position where line is to be formed to a new front; and in all route marches, and marches of manœuvre to any considerable extent, the quarter distance should be adopted.

Advantages of quarter distance.

3. Quarter distance unites the convenience of moving upon a space three-fourths less than the extent occupied by the march of an open column, with the capability of moving and forming in any manner (as detailed in the column evolutions) that may be required to resist attack: and the compact formation at quarter distance has, moreover, the advantage of averting the evils which attend the loss of distance in open column, from the irregularity of ground or other causes; for, even if intervals are lost on the

march at quarter distance, the unity and strength of the column are not impaired, unless that loss exceeds the extent of the front of the division, which can rarely happen without marked and culpable inattention of the company or division leaders.

Applicable to all close column movements

4. The column at quarter distance also partakes of all the properties, and is capable of all the formations and deployments, applied to close column; but the latter will in general be found to be best adapted to the wheel of columns for change of front (which are performed in more compact order at close distance) for the assembly in mass of a number of troops in a small space, or to limit the space occupied by the march of a column, and for compactness in deployments. The wheel of a column at quarter distance may however be performed, as hereafter explained, under every circumstance, if deemed necessary.

Wheel of quarter distance or close column.

5. Much advantage attends the wheel of a column at quarter or close distance: it prepares a column for deployment on a change of front to a flank, (Vide S. 33, Part III.); forms contiguous columns into a column in mass facing to a flank, and a mass into contiguous columns, (Vide S. 4, Part IV.); and changes the front of a close column by the wheel, and countermarch of sub-divisions round the centre, (Vide S. 34, Part III.); so that a battalion column that is to take its place in a mass of contiguous columns, may thus change its front on its own ground, to correspond with the head

head of the line of columns. Battalions must, therefore, be well practised in these wheels; and in order to perform them, without crowding at the inner flank, the officer or inward file, whether officer or man, must be the pivot upon which the wheel is made, and thus the whole column wheels as a division under the direction of the commanding officer. The leading division acts as a moving base for the rear companies to follow: its length of step is regulated according to the depth of the column, and when at quarter distance must be very short, to enable the rear to circle simultaneously round at the usual pace. During the wheel a field officer will superintend the diagonal line of covering of the leading flanks of divisions, so that the column may at any moment, during the wheel, be halted and deployed, or turned to the front by the word FORWARD, as circumstances may require.

Officers the pivots.

Rear divisions half face to the reverse flank.

6. In order also to avoid crowding in the wheel of close column, it is necessary that, upon the wheel being ordered, all the rear divisions make a half face to the wheeling flank, each file, on the word *March*, and during the wheel, taking care to cover the one in front; by which the component parts of the column will be rendered flexible, and freedom will be given to the files to move in the course of their respective circles, without pressing inwards upon each other and upon the inward flank.

7. In the same manner the rear divisions will make

a

Special attentions to the wheel of a battalion at quarter distance.

a half face, to the wheeling flank, when the wheel is made at quarter distance. But in order to preserve the quarter distance accurately, the leading division will advance six paces on the word *quick* or *double* march, and will wheel round the pivot file at a shortened pace, while each succeeding division will advance in circling round to quarter distance, which will leave room for the rear divisions to circle into their relative positions at that distance. Thus in all such wheels at quarter distance, the battalion must gain six paces to its front. (Vide S. 33, No. 3, Part III.) In wheeling on the moveable pivot, the rear divisions make a *half turn* towards the shoulder brought forward, and the front division wheels and advances at a shortened pace in the new direction, the rear divisions circling round. (Vide S. 33, No. 4, Part III.)

Posting of officers.

8. In column at quarter distance, officers are posted as laid down in the open column formation. (Vide S. 9, Part III.) But in close column the supernumeraries will form on the reverse flanks of companies; and when the column marches to a flank, they will face and move with their companies: when the close column is to countermarch, they will remain on the reverse flank, and face with their companies; but instead of countermarching with them, they will countermarch on their own ground. When officers change their flanks in column, halted, they will pass by the front of their divisions, their covering serjeants by the rear.

9. The

Deployment.

9. The column (close or at quarter distance) will always form in the alignement of its front division, by the deployment or flank march in file or by sections of threes, by which it successively uncovers and extends its divisions into line; by their *Front*, turn, if in file, or, if in threes, by the shoulders forward, towards the division on which the formation is made. (S. 36, Part III.) The supernumeraries will move with the deployment, and halt with their respective companies.

Upon a Rear Division.

10. When a column deploys on a rear division, the named division, when uncovered, will move up to the front, which its covering serjeants will mark: the points therefore necessary, for the formation of the battalion, will be taken in prolongation of these points, (Vide S. 7, No. 9, Part III.); and the divisions which successively move up, must *Halt, front*, until their front is clear.

Attention to the deployment.

11. The flank march will be made parallel to the general line. The field officers of the battalion will superintend its execution, and whenever a division is uncovered and fronted, the covering serjeant will run out to mark the distance for the front of his division in the line, each leader bringing up and halting his division in the line, and dressing from the flank of appui on the serjeant and battalion point. If the company is brought up at the *double march*, it will be halted two full paces in rear of the line, in order that it may neither press upon nor overshoot the points; and the officer, without unnecessary

cessary pause, will give the word *Dress up* from the flank or appui.

12. The close column and deployment in file is the simplest and most natural mode of deploying into line, and is the least subject to derangement from casualties or any other cause. In this, as in every other kind of formation in line, regularity and expedition must be combined. The heads of divisions, filing to right or left, must step freely out. The apprehension of the files separating must not lead to the error of checking the head. The division commander must be well acquainted with the distance required for his division, and not judge of it by the space which it occupies in march. The men must be accustomed, as soon as they have faced towards the alignement, to touch lightly, without crowding or pushing. If a column, right in front, is forced by circumstances of ground to deploy to the right, this is performed in the same manner as when a column left in front deploys: the inverted order of divisions in line, resulting from it, must never be taken into consideration. The same case occurs when a column left in front deploys to the left.

S. 11. *Echellon.*

Utility in changes of position.

1. The echellon position and movements are not only necessary and applicable to the immediate attacks and retreat of great bodies, but also to the oblique or direct changes of situation, which a battalion, or a more considerable corps already formed in line

line, may be obliged to make to the front or rear, or on a particular fixed division of the line.

How formed.

2. The oblique changes are produced by the whee (less than the quarter circle) of divisions, which places them in the echellon situation. The direct changes are produced by the perpendicular and successive march of divisions from line to front or rear.

3. The march in line or in the direct echellon, produces new parallel positions to front or rear. The march in echellon, when formed by the wheel of the divisions from the line, produces new oblique positions to front or rear, according to the degree of wheel given to the echellon. The march in open column produces new prolonged positions to either flank.

Formed by the wheel of companies.

4. The echellon of march in oblique changes of position, will be composed of companies or subdivisions; and will generally be formed from line by the wheel of each on its own flank, to the hand to which it is to move. Such wheel will seldom exceed the eighth of the circle, but can never amount to the quarter circle, otherwise the corps would stand in open column.

Properties of the direct echellon.

5. A direct echellon is formed for the purpose of advancing or refusing a flank; and the distances between its divisions will be guided by circumstances. A line parallel to that from which it moved, can only be resumed by the successive formation of its divisions upon one of its halted parts; and an oblique

lique line cannot be accurately formed by the wheel of divisions from a direct echellon otherwise than by taking up distances of the preceding divisions from the leading flank of the echellon and a point placed beyond it, as laid down in S. 44, Part III.

Of the wheeled echellon.

6. The wheeled echellon possesses the double property of gaining ground to a flank in an oblique direction, and at the same time of affording a ready and immediate formation of an accurate line in an advanced position, parallel to that which it quitted, by the wheel backwards of divisions on its echellon flanks.

Distinctions between open column and echellon.

7. All the divisions of an open column march upon one and the same perpendicular, and are therefore easily conducted. All the divisions of a wheeled echellon move on different perpendiculars, each on its own, but all of them parallel to the directing one and removed from each other a space equal to what the divisions cut within each other.—In open column the perpendicular distance from division to division is equal to the front of the following one. In echellon the smaller the wheel is, the smaller is the perpendicular distance from division to division; but in all situations of the wheeled echellon, the oblique distance from flank to flank is equal to the front of the preceding division.—In open column the proper pivot flank is the directing one, and the wheels are made on it into column backward and into line forward. In echellon the inner flank (or that which first joins its preceding

preceding division when the line is to be formed forward) is the directing one, and in oblique echellon the wheels are made on it, into echellon forward, and into line backward.—In open column each division preserves a distance from flank to flank equal to its own front. In echellon each preserves a distance from flank to flank equal to the front of its preceding division; and it may at any time be converted into the open column, by wheeling up its divisions till they stand perpendicular to the line which passes through all its directing flanks. An open column may in the same manner be converted into the echellon column, by wheeling back its divisions, each a named number of paces, and on either flank, according to circumstances.

Method of formation.

8. The wheel from line into open column is easily ascertained by the perpendicular halt of each division on that line: but the parallelism of the wheels into echellon is more difficult to be determined; for being confined to no certain portion of the circle, it cannot well be announced or executed as a direction, and therefore *a given number of paces to be wheeled by bodies of equal strength*, and which serve as so many parallel bases of formation, may be the best general order that can be given.

9. Should the companies of a battalion or more considerable body be all of equal strength, and should the outward man of each take the same number of paces on the circumference of the circle, they would,

after the wheel, stand parallel among themselves; but, if those companies be unequal, they would then not be parallel to each other, and consequently not in a proper relative situation. Though such equality may be found in a single battalion, it will seldom exist in a line of battalions, and a different calculation and direction for each battalion, in proportion to its strength, would be necessary in every general change of position. This difficulty may be obviated by adopting a *practical rule* for the battalion and line, on all occasions of wheeling by companies into echellon in order to change position, and of whatever strength the companies may be; *viz., That each covering serjeant, as the case requires, having previously placed himself before or behind a given file (the 8th) from the standing flank, shall take the named number of paces from the centre of that file on the arc of the circle, and thereby become a direction for the company to wheel up to, and halt,* as in S. 37, Part III.—As eight paces from the eighth file complete the quarter circle, so four paces give the *one-eighth*, and two paces the *one-sixteenth* of the circle, all which are wheels often made from open column, or from line, to change to a position perpendicular, or oblique, to the one quitted; and these degrees, with the aids given by advancing or keeping back a shoulder as may be necessary, during the movement, will effect a formation in any new direction with precision. All changes of front, by the echellon march, are performed by the *forming* divisions wheeling half the angle wheeled by the division *to be formed upon.*

10. The

General attentions of directing files.

10. The flank directing files of echellons, whether they are formed by the perpendicular march of divisions successively from line to the front, or by the wheel of divisions from line to the flank, should form, and preserve a diagonal line with respect to the front of divisions. In the first case, the distance from flank to flank depends on the interval at which the divisions are ordered to march off:—in the second case, such distance is always the same and equal to the front of the division which has wheeled forward, and which, by wheeling back, would exactly fill it up. Whenever, therefore, the directing flanks of an echellon are all in the same line, and each distant from its preceding one a space equal to the front of the preceding division, such echellon is in a situation, by wheeling back, to form in line to the flank, or to take a position to the front, as in S. 43, Part III. In all changes of position by echellon, whether direct or oblique, the leaders of companies will invariably be on that flank towards which the change of position is to be made. But in taking ground to a flank, on the march, in echellon of sub-divisions or sections, companies' leaders remain in their proper places when in line.

Passing obstacles.

11. In the echellon march, such division or divisions, as may meet with obstacles, will file round them without deranging the adjoining divisions, which preserve the necessary vacant spaces and distances till the broken divisions can again take their places.

12. When

Changes to the rear in echellon.

12. When a change of position or march to the rear is to be made in echellon, the battalion or line will in general *face* about, wheel into echellon, and then proceed: or it may be ordered first to *wheel* back into echellon, then face about, and proceed as above.

Directing points.

13. But the march in echellon (more particularly that to a flank) can never be performed well unless the officer of the leading echellon shall have correct points to move upon. In the direct march the relative distance of divisions is easily preserved—but in the diagonal movement the utmost care and exactness are necessary.

Attention of Companies' Leaders.

14. During the march the same great regulating principles that direct the open column direct the echellon; viz., the preservation of distance from the preceding leading flank, and the diagonal lining or covering of all those flanks, at the same time that the perpendiculars of march are preserved by each division. Could the march in echellon be always executed with the greatest accuracy, each flank leader covering a certain file of his preceding division, at a certain distance, would ensure exactness: but this alone is not to be trusted to, and is rather to be considered as an aid than as an invariable rule; for the unsteady or open march of one or more divisions, if productive of a waving or shifting of the following ones, would in a sensible manner influence the whole. If the leaders of the two head divisions do preserve an equal and

Superintendence of Commanding Officers.

steady pace under the direction of the commanding officer, who keeps close on the flank of the first one, and gives such directions to the second as are necessary for preserving the parallelism of the march, those two will serve as a base line on which all the others should cover. In this, as in every other case, the perfect perpendicular march of the first leader, in consequence of his body being truly placed, and his attention solely given to this object, is what will much determine the precision and justness of the whole.

Change of position.

15. Each change of position, of the battalion or line, may be considered as a general wheel of the whole made on a *point*, either *in*, *before*, or *behind*, the old line. The battalion or line therefore breaks to which ever hand, and to whicheve division, it manœuvres to, or is led by:—when to a flank, generally to that which is nearest to, and is first to enter any part of the new position. When a central division determines its movement, it breaks to right or left inwards, and faces such division, which makes its change of situation on its own ground. When this *point* is *in* the old line, it must necessarily be within the battalion when single, or within a certain named battalion of a line: such battalion therefore will have to perform the change on a *fixed* point within itself; viz., on such division, flank or central, as is already rested on that point, by making its other divisions, either by *flank* or *diagonal* marching, enter into the line: but all the other battalions will have the double operation of moving up to the new

new line, and then forming upon it. When this *point* is *before* or *behind* the old line, every battalion, whether single or connected, will have this double operation to perform.

Advantages of echellon in changes of position.

16. The echellon changes of position are the safest that can be employed in the presence of and near to an enemy; they are almost equal in security to the march of the line in front, or to an uniform wheel in the line, which is not to be attempted; they can be used in the most critical situations, where the filings and movements of the open column could not be risked; they are more particularly employed when the enemy's flank is to be taken by throwing the body forward, or when one's own is to be covered by throwing it backward. They have the advantage of preserving a general front during the march, and of affording a sufficient freedom of movement, which in such situation is indispensable; they effect a change of position on any division of the line, either on a fixed or moving point; and at any instant the movement can be stopped, the line formed, and a sudden attack repulsed.

17. Upon the principle of mathematical precision laid down in No. 9 of this section, all echellon formations should, *strictly speaking*, be made, by the previous wheel of divisions into echellon, upon a halted pivot, in order that the leading flanks may stand precisely perpendicular to the direction in which they are to form. *This is the general rule*:—But as

expedition is the first object, when it is easily attainable without risking confusion, in battalion practice, when not liable to be attacked during the formation, the bringing forward of the shoulders may be adopted on special occasions, the commanding officer taking care to give the word *Forward*, at the very moment when the leading flanks are in a perpendicular direction to the point of appui in the new line.

Degrees of march.

18. The march in echellon will be, generally, in quick time, unless the commander may see occasion, according to circumstances, to move in slow time. But as changes of position in echellon are always supposed to be near an enemy, where the utmost regularity and constant readiness to form line must be preserved—it would not be prudent to attempt greater celerity than quick time.

Double march.

19. Rapid formations to line, however, from column or square upon any fixed part of a battalion, when made by the echellon movements of sub-divisions or sections, may be performed at the double march: or, in echellon changes of position, when two or three divisions remain to be formed on the flank, they may complete the formation at the double march.

20. In all echellon formations it is important that commanding officers should accustom the divisions in echellon to wheel back into line during the formation, when a part of the new line is formed, to ascertain

ascertain that the divisions have maintained their relative positions, and that they are prepared to shew a front at any moment, if attacked during the movement. Thus, with one wing formed in the new line the other wing by wheeling back should present another line at an angle (according to the degree of wheel) with it.

21. Battalions will be practised in forming line, by echellon, to either flank; for although, generally, when practicable, it may be expedient to avoid the inversion of the companies of a battalion, cases do occur in the field when a formation to the reverse flank is the only one which the ground and circumstances will sanction. When this inversion takes place, companies will consider their proper situation in line or column to be that which they then occupy, and will be prepared to act accordingly; the senior subalterns of companies in the rear telling off from right to left after every such inversion. It should be a matter of indifference to a well drilled corps, whether the grenadiers are on the right or left of the line.

S. 12. *Squares.*

1. Squares are formed either from line (Vide S. 21 and 22, Part III.), or from column at full, half, or quarter distance (Vide S. 29, Part III.)

2. The

Hollow square, four deep.

2. The hollow square, four deep, is sufficiently solid to oppose an attack of cavalry: it possesses, at the same time, the advantage of rendering the fire of all the men available to the resistance of the enemy.

Solid squares.

3. The solid square should seldom be adopted, because a proportion of the men cannot give their fire: Close columns should, in all cases when practicable and time will admit, open therefore to quarter distance, and form square as laid down in S. 21, No. 1, Part III. But as every position in which a battalion may be placed should be susceptible of ready resistance against cavalry, the close column can always assume an efficient posture of defence, by the six centre companies wheeling outwards by threes, and closing to the front, and the two rear companies facing to the right about, the officers and serjeants taking post in the centre. The wing of a battalion, consisting of four or five companies, can in like manner form the solid square from a close column of sub-divisions.

Squares two deep.

4. When cavalry is not to be resisted; and when the object is only to protect baggage or treasure requiring a greater internal space, it will be sufficient to form the square two deep to the rear, (Vide S. 22, Part III.)

Echellon of squares.

5. The formation of battalion squares, either from line or column, is to be completed as expeditiously as possible and, if time and circumstances permit, the

the squares may afterwards be placed in *direct* echellon for mutual defence.

S. 13. *Firings.*

1. In all movements, firing should commence after a formation, whether by companies from the flanks or centre—by wings—or by battalions; but this will depend much upon circumstances, and the discretion of commanding officers. After a march to the front, the firing of a battalion should generally commence from the centre, and not from the flanks: in successive formations, it may begin from the division on which the change of position is made.

Time of firing by divisions, &c.

2. In firing by companies from right to left—from left to right—from flanks to centre, and from centre to flanks, the leaders of each will fall to the rear; and will be careful to observe the following directions. To give the word *make ready* when the previous division *fires;* to see that their companies bring up their pieces regularly to the *present,* and to preserve the pause of slow time, viz., the seventy-fifth part of a minute, between the words "*Ready*"—"*Present,*"—the men firing when they have covered their objects.

By wings.

3. In firing by wings, one wing will receive the words *make ready* the instant the other has completed its loading;—the commanding officer of the battalion will fire one wing, the second in command the other.

4. File

File firing.

4. File or independent firing from the right or left of wings, or from the right or left of companies or sub-divisions, should be most frequently practised, as being the most essential and usual mode of firing upon actual service. It should be practised in the formations to line, after an advance from the flanks or from the centre of battalions, (Vide S. 18, Part III.) The divisions upon which the formation to line is made upon such occasions, will commence the fire, while the remaining divisions are in movement; and the latter will take it up, successively, as they are formed in line.

File firing during formations.

5. It is most essential that battalions should be well practised in formations while divisions already formed are firing,—for precise dressing will then be difficult; and officers commanding divisions must therefore give their utmost attention to the true parallel direction of their divisions upon the line; the outer section of each division will always reserve its fire until the officer of the next division shall give the word *Eyes front* to his men after quickly dressing them.

Attentions in file firing

6. Great care must be taken in file firing, that it is not hurried; and that the men *present* deliberately, bringing up the firelock gradually and looking at their object before they fire,—otherwise it will lose all its effect against an enemy. The value of a soldier's ammunition, and a jealousy of its expenditure without effect, must be carefully inculcated; for in proportion as a cool

cool and well-directed fire serves to distract and throw an enemy into disorder, so is a wild, confused, and hurried fire (which is always without effect), calculated to give him confidence and a contempt for his opponent:—it is impossible, therefore, to labour too much at giving to soldiers the habit of steady, cool, and effective firing. They should bear in mind that nothing makes so strong an impression on an enemy as the thinning of his ranks by a well-directed fire; and that nothing tends more to animate and encourage troops, than the diminished fire from ranks so thinned; affording also the most favourable opportunity for a successful charge. Commanding officers must direct their special attention to the detailed instructions on this important subject, annexed to the Manual and Platoon Exercise.

No hurry in file firing

7. According to these principles, file firing must be conducted slowly and deliberately. Each file must bring up the piece to the present at the same time, but the rear rank man must not fire until the front rank man has fired; and the front rank man must always reserve his fire until the file he follows has fired: If this is carefully attended to, no hurry, and consequent loss of fire and intermission of firing, can ensue.

Firing in square.

8. In firing in square the two front ranks are to come to the kneeling position (on preparing to receive cavalry) without cocking; because, when they are not required to fire, which can seldom be the case

from

from each of the four faces at the same time, there is an awkwardness in half-cocking while in that constrained position. Each face will therefore fire when required, and will cock as usual at the previous word "*Ready*." The standing ranks in square will fire independently from the right of faces, as already explained in No. 4.

Street firing.

9. A column at open, half, or quarter distance, formed in a street or in narrow ground where deployment is impracticable, may be required to fire previous to charging forward, or by successive divisions in retiring. It will be performed in the following manner: If advancing, the two front companies only will fire in succession; the leading company firing and loading kneeling, the second company closing to the front and firing standing. When the enemy's fire has been overcome, or at any favourable moment that may present itself, the column will charge briskly forward, and make good the ground it is contending for. In retiring, the leading division will give its fire, slope arms, face outwards by sub-divisions, file to the rear, re-form company, load, and remain halted, until its front is again clear, or the whole column is put in motion. The moment the front of the second company is clear it will give its fire, face outwards by sub-divisions, and file to the rear as above directed; and so on by companies in succession: the companies thus follow each other in succession; and when the front of the column occupies the whole

breadth

breadth of the street, the outward files of companies will double in the rear, to give the companies, which have fired, room to pass. It must never be forgotten, in entering towns or villages occupied by the enemy, that the first thing to be done, on gaining a footing in the place, is *to clear the houses on both flanks*, and the column should on no account proceed through the streets, without previously occupying the houses on either hand; the troops employed for that purpose breaking through partition walls, or pushing on from house to house, so as to accompany the march of the main body and protect its flanks.

Concluding observations.

The foregoing general principles, without pretending to provide for every case that may occur in the varied operations of regiments in the field, are, nevertheless, believed to contain sufficient rules, for insuring that uniformity of battalion exercise, which is so indispensable in every army, and for the preservation of which, in a service of detachment, so much depends on the careful and rigid adherence of commanding officers, to a well-defined and simple code of tactics, which, while it embraces all that is essentially useful upon service, leaves no latitude for the discretionary introduction of parade movements, which only tend to divert the mind from its proper object, and to prevent the attainment of perfection in those movements and formations by the uniform and correct performance of which the efficiency of an army can alone be estimated. All complex and intricate

manœuvres,

manœuvres, which are never employed before the enemy, should be banished even from the field of exercise. They extend without necessity or use the sphere of elementary tactics, lead to erroneous views, and enchain the attention to subjects, the studious cultivation of which is of no real utility towards the attainment of military ends. The movements applicable to war are few and simple, and in the following evolutions care has been taken to retain only such as are practically useful. A readiness in reforming expeditiously, correctly, and without confusion, in every situation, are among the best proofs of a well drilled regiment; and great pains should be taken, in the instruction of the serjeants, in taking up their covering and distances, either by sound of bugle, or the command COVERERS to the FRONT, and in accustoming the men to form line, upon them, from a state of dispersion. On service, this species of training will be found most useful, as lines are subject to be thrown into disorder, in many cases in the field, such as in a charge on difficult and broken ground; after which, the line must necessarily be formed before any ulterior movement can take place.

FORMATION OF THE BATTALION.

Formation of the battalion. When the companies join, and the battalion is formed, there is to be no interval between any of them, grenadier, light company, or other; but every part of the front of the battalion should be equally strong.

Each company which makes a part of the same line, and is to act in it, must be formed and arranged in the same manner.

Position of the companies in battalion. The companies will draw up as follows from right to left, viz.—grenadiers on the right, light company on the left, the other companies 1. 2. 3. &c. from right to left.

Divisions. The battalion will be told off as follows, viz., into right and left wings. By companies divided into right and left sub-divisions, into four sections numbered 1. 2. 3. 4. and into sections of threes.

Companies equalized. The companies may be equalized in point of numbers when the battalion is formed for field movement; but it is also desirable that they should be accustomed to exercise in companies of unequal strength, as must often be the case on service.

Formation of the battalion at close order Ranks are at the distance of one pace.

All the field officers and the adjutant are mounted.

The commanding officer is the only officer advanced in front, for the general purpose of exercise when the battalion

battalion is single; but in the march in line, and in the firings, he is in the rear of the colours.

The lieutenant-colonel is behind the colours, twelve paces from the supernumerary rank.

The first major is six paces in the rear of the second battalion company from the right flank: the second major at the same distance in the rear of the second battalion company from the left flank: the adjutant at the same distance in rear of the colours.

One officer is on the right of the front rank of each company, and one on the left of the battalion; all these are covered in the rear rank by their respective serjeants; and the remaining officers and serjeants are in a third rank behind their companies.

The colours are placed between the two centre companies, both in the front rank, and each covered by a non-commissioned officer, or steady man in the rear rank. One serjeant is in the front rank betwixt the colours; he is covered by a second serjeant in the rear rank, and by a third in the supernumerary rank. The sole business of these three serjeants is when the battalion moves in line, to advance and direct the march as hereafter mentioned. The place of the first of those serjeants, when they do move out, is preserved by a named officer or serjeant, who moves up from the supernumerary rank for that purpose.

Use of the third or supernumerary rank.

The supernumerary rank is at three paces' distance when in line: when in column, it is at the distance of one pace. The essential use of the supernumerary rank is, to keep the others closed up to the front during the attack, and to prevent any break beginning in

in the rear: on this important service, too many officers and non-commissioned officers cannot be employed.

The pioneers are assembled behind the centre of the grenadier company, formed two deep, and nine paces from the supernumerary rank.

The drummers, fifers, and buglers of the battalion are assembled in two divisions, nine paces behind the supernumerary rank of the first and last battalion companies.

The musicians are nine paces from the supernumerary rank in rear of the centre of the battalion, formed two deep, and at loose files, only occupying no more space than is necessary.

The staff, consisting of the paymaster, surgeon, assistant-surgeon, and quarter-master, are three paces behind the music.

Officers. In general, officers remain posted with their proper companies; but commanding officers will occasionally make such changes as they may find necessary.

Replacing serjeants. Whenever the officers move out of the front rank, in parade, marching in column, wheeling into line, or otherwise, their places are taken by their serjeant coverers, or senior subalterns, as may be ordered, and preserved until the officers again resume them.

When

When the Battalion takes Open Order.

Rear Ranks take Open Order.

At the word *Order*, officers recover swords, and move at once close in front of the files opposite which they are to stand,—that is, the captain in front of the second file from the right of the company, the senior subaltern in front of the second file from the left, and the third subaltern in front of the centre file—if there is a fourth officer the distance between the flanks will be divided. The serjeant coverers move up to the front rank to preserve the intervals left by the officers. The flank men on the right of the rear rank of each company step briskly back one pace, to mark the ground upon which the rank is to halt; they face to the right, and cover as pivots, corrected by the serjeant-major on the right.

March.

At this word, the rear rank steps back one pace, dressing by the right: the officers of companies march three paces direct to the front, glance their eyes to the right, correct their dressing, and port their swords at the word *Steady* from the major, who dresses them. The officers with the colours march forward three lengthened paces, and dress in the line of officers.

Steady.

The music, drummers, and pioneers remain as posted at close order. The first major places

places himself on the right of the line of officers: the second major on their left: the adjutant on the left of the front rank: The staff, viz., the paymaster, surgeon, assistant-surgeon, and quarter-master, place themselves on the right of the front rank of the grenadiers, at one pace distance. The colonel and lieutenant-colonel advance ten and six paces before the colours.

The whole thus arrive at their several posts, and the battalion remains formed in this parade order, to receive a superior officer. When the battalion is reviewed singly, the division of drummers will be moved up and formed two deep on each flank of the line: the pioneers will be formed two deep on the right of the drummers of the right, and the staff will form on the right of the whole.

When the Battalion resumes Close Order.

Rear Rank take Close Order.

The officers recover swords, and, with the colours and staff, face to the right.

The drummers and pioneers (if on the flanks) face to the centre.

The serjeants (if in the front rank) face to the right.

March.

The rear rank closes within one pace.

The serjeants, drummers, pioneers, &c. &c., resume their places, each as in the original formation of the battalion in close order.

The officers move through and into their respective intervals, and each individual arrives, and places himself properly at his post in close order.

Colours. When the battalion wheels by companies or subdivisions to either flank into column; both colours and the directing serjeants always wheel to the proper front, and place themselves behind the third, fourth, and fifth file from the new pivot.

EVOLUTIONS OF THE BATTALION.

The rules laid down and explained in Part II. for the formation of columns from line, and line from columns,—for marching in alignement,—wheeling upon fixed and moveable pivots,—diminishing and increasing the front of columns,—and countermarching the divisions of a column, apply equally, in all the detail of instruction, to the company in battalion: Commanding officers will, therefore, conduct their battalion drill, upon all those points, with reference to the said rules, and to the instructions contained in the general principles; as it is not intended to frame any specific sections in the following manœuvres, to explain those formations as applied to battalion movements.

MOVEMENTS OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE.

S. 14. *When the Battalion, halted, and correctly dressed, is to advance in Line.*

THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE.

1. On the CAUTION, the rear rank will lock up, the centre serjeants will advance and take their direction, corrected by the commanding, or a mounted, officer, as pointed out in the General Principles, S. 3, Part III.

MARCH, OR QUICK MARCH.

The line of direction being thus ascertained, at the word MARCH, or QUICK MARCH, the whole battalion instantly step off, the eyes directed full to the front, the files of each wing preserving a light touch inwards; should the touch be lost, it must be taken up gradually and not suddenly, and shoulders, as well as heads, must be kept square to the front.

HALT

When the line halts, the directing serjeants will resume their place in the battalion, and be in readiness to move out again, if required to advance after firing, or dressing.

2. *When the battalion is to retire*, it must be previously dressed, with the same precision as when it was to advance; and the direction of the march must be ascertained with the same accuracy. At the word THE BATTALION WILL RETIRE, the directing serjeants face about, and the same arrangements are made, as already directed for the advance in S. 3, Part III.

3. While advancing in line, the battalion may form to either flank by the divisions wheeling to the right (or left) on the moveable pivot, and forming on the flank company (which will be halted in the direction of the new front) by the echellon march of divisions.

S. 15. *When a Battalion advancing in Line is to Charge.*

PREPARE TO CHARGE.

Upon the caution PREPARE TO CHARGE, the front rank will bring their arms to the long trail, and the rear rank to the slope, without permitting the motion to alter the square position of the body, or the regularity of the step.

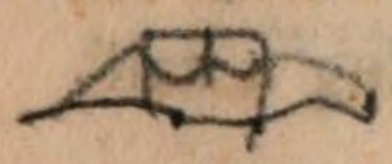
CHARGE.

And upon the word CHARGE, which ought soon to follow the caution, the front rank only will come to the charge, the rear rank continuing at the slope, the whole battalion stepping off at the same moment at the double march.

When the battalion HALTS, both ranks will come to the shoulder, and the whole, if ordered, will dress by the centre.

S. 16. *When the Battalion moving in Line passes a Wood, or other Impediment, to Front or Rear, by the Flank March of Companies in File.*

FROM THE RIGHT OR LEFT OF COMPANIES, PASS BY FILES TO THE FRONT. RIGHT TURN, LEFT WHEEL.



1. *If to pass a wood, or other embarrassed ground to the front.*—When it is found necessary to break the battalion, the commander will give the caution FROM THE RIGHT (or LEFT) OF COMPANIES, PASS BY FILES TO THE FRONT, followed by the words COMPANIES RIGHT (or LEFT) TURN, LEFT WHEEL, the companies passing on as fast as the difficulty of the ground will allow them, their leaders endeavouring to preserve a relative distance from the left as being the head of the column, or from the other flank if particularly so ordered. Each officer on arriving at the further edge of the wood will *halt* his company, and remain till the others are come up, and till the whole are ordered to march out and form in battalion; which will generally be done by standing in open column the left in front, dressing pivot flanks, and wheeling up into line. Or, if the companies form separately on the edge of the wood, they will march out and join in the battalion.

FROM THE PROPER RIGHT OR LEFT OF COMPANIES, PASS BY FILES

2. *If to pass to the rear.*—When the battalion retiring in line, arrives at the point where it must break, it is ordered FROM THE PROPER RIGHT (or LEFT) OF COMPANIES PASS BY FILES TO THE REAR. The commanding officer

TO THE REAR. (LEFT OR RIGHT) TURN, RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL.

HALT, FRONT

officer then gives his word LEFT (or RIGHT) TURN, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL, and proceeds as above directed; the heads of companies are regulated from the left; and after quitting the wood, at an ordered distance they HALT, FRONT into column the right in front, and WHEEL to the left into line. The line then again retreats if necessary.

Companies may also pass to the front or rear by sections of threes, when thought expedient.

In these movements to the front or rear, the companies will be practised to FRONT FORM COMPANY, on the march, by the leading file, or three, moving on, and the others making a half-turn and running up to their places.

PASS BY FILES TO THE REAR. RIGHT FACE, RIGHT WHEEL, QUICK MARCH.

HALT, FRONT.

3. *If a battalion in first line passes through a second which advances and relieves it.*—The relieving battalion marches up, and when within twelve paces of the front line, the battalion to be relieved receives the word from the commanding officer, PASS BY FILES TO THE REAR, RIGHT FACE, RIGHT WHEEL, QUICK MARCH; the companies proceed to the rear through the second line, which, whenever the head of a division presents itself, throws back as many files as are necessary to give it passage, and again immediately moves up; the retiring divisions, which are regulated by their left, at any ordered distance HALT, FRONT into column the right in front, and wheel up to the left into line.

4. *When*

PASS BY FILES TO THE REAR. LEFT TURN, RIGHT WHEEL.

4. *When the second line does not advance to relieve the first,* the battalion forming the first line retires, and when within twelve paces of the second line passes through it as above directed.

It is a general rule that the line advancing to relieve is never broken. The line to be relieved in all cases filing through it.

S. 17. *When the Battalion advances or retires by half Battalions, and fires.*

THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE BY WINGS.

LEFT WING, HALT. MARCH, OR QUICKMARCH.

RIGHT WING, HALT. READY, PRESENT, LOAD. MARCH, OR QUICK MARCH.

LEFT WING——HALT. READY, &c.

1. *If the battalion is in march, and advancing.*—On the caution the left wing HALTS by command of the junior major, and the right one continues to move on 15 paces, at which instant the word MARCH being given to the left wing, the right at the same time is ordered by the senior major to HALT, to fire and load, and the left marches past them, till the right wing being loaded and shouldered, receives the word MARCH, the other wing HALTS, fires, &c., and thus they alternately proceed.

THE BATTALION WILL RETIRE BY WINGS.

RIGHT WING, HALT, FRONT.
LEFT WING, HALT, FRONT.

2. *If the battalion is in march, and retiring.*—The right wing is ordered to HALT, FRONT, and when the left one has gained 15 paces

RIGHT WING, { READY. PRESENT. LOAD, ABOUT FACE. MARCH, OR QUICK MARCH.

LEFT WING, HALT, FRONT.

LEFT WING, { READY. PRESENT. LOAD, &c.

paces, and receives the wor HALT, FRONT, the right wing is instantly ordered to FIRE, to LOAD, to FACE about, and march 15 paces beyond the left, where it receives the word HALT, FRONT, on which the left wing receives that of PRESENT, and in the same manner alternately proceeds, every due despatch being made in reloading.

There must be a commander for each half battalion.

One colour, before which a directing serjeant advances six paces, remains on the inward flank of each half battalion, towards which the men continue to touch; the officers of the right wing to be on the inward flank of their companies.

The make ready, present, of the advanced wing, is instantly to succeed the march of the other advanced wing, or the halt front of the retiring wing.

S. 18. *A Battalion formed in Line may have to move to attack, or to pass a Bridge, or short Defilé, to the Front, from either Flank, or from the Centre.*

RIGHT (OR LEFT) DIVISION TO THE FRONT.

1. *If from a flank, by companies, or sub-divisions.*—The caution will specify from which flank the advance is to be made; and upon the word QUICK MARCH, (after the annexed command) the flank company,

REMAINING DIVISIONS, RIGHT (OR LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD. QUICK MARCH. FORWARD.

pany, or sub-division, moves on in the line proposed at the step short pace, receiving the word forward, when the second division commences its second wheel. The others advance in corresponding divisions at the same time to the right or left, according to the flank in advance; the commander giving the word, FORWARD, when the divisions shall have wheeled square into column, during which time the leaders will change to the left flanks, if the movement is from the right; and while thus wheeling into column, the division (*a*) will be gaining sufficient ground to the front to enable the others to follow by command of their leaders *Right (or left) shoulders forward*, in regular succession, without loss of time or ground.

Right (or left) Shoulders forward. Forward.

If the movement be made to pass a bridge or defilé, the front of the column will correspond with the breadth of the bridge or defilé.

FORM LINE ON THE FIRST DIVISION. REMAINING DIVISIONS RIGHT (OR LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD. FORWARD.

Halt, Dress up.

2. *When the column arrives near the point where the line is to be re-formed.*—The caution is given, followed by the command, REMAINING DIVISIONS RIGHT (or left) SHOULDERS FORWARD, then FORWARD; upon which the leading division which has continued to march on steadily will receive the word *Halt, Dress up*, from its leader, and give the base of the formation—the other companies

Right (or left) Shoulders forward.
Forward.
Halt, Dress up.

companies are brought successively into line, by the annexed command from their respective leaders.

When the line is formed from the halt, the echellon formation will be conducted as laid down in S. 43, Part III., or the column may close (a c) and deploy.

(Plate 3.)

TWO CENTRE SUB-DIVISIONS TO THE FRONT. REMAINING SUB-DIVISIONS RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD. QUICK MARCH. FORWARD.

Shoulders forward.
Forward.

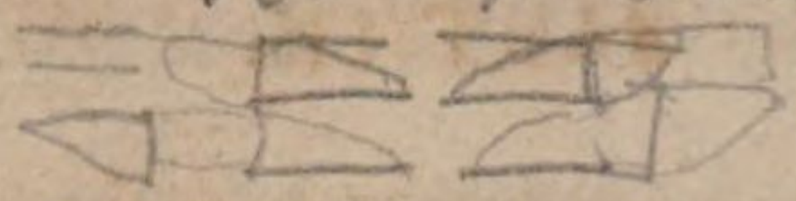
3. *If the advance is from the centre.*—Upon the caution, the colours, &c., will fall back to the rear of the centre, the Captains of the right wing shifting to the right of their left sub-division, which they lead; and upon the word QUICK MARCH the whole will be thrown at once into movement, the commander giving the word, FORWARD, when the divisions have wheeled square into column; during which time the leaders of the left wing divisions will shift their flanks, and each sub-division will have an officer at the outer flank (s s). The sub-divisions of the right and left wings will thus form into column respectively, on the centre sub-divisions (a a); each wing being conducted in the same manner, and upon the same principles, as described in the formation to the flank. During the advance, the interval between the centre sub-divisions will be closed to the directing flank.

The

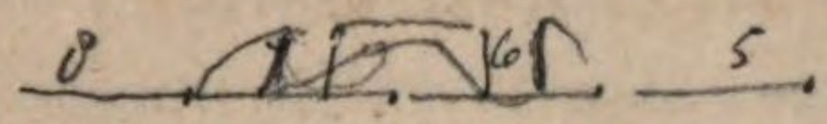
Form line on 2 Centre Subdivisions remainder R & left shoulders forward

No. 3.

Facing Page 138.

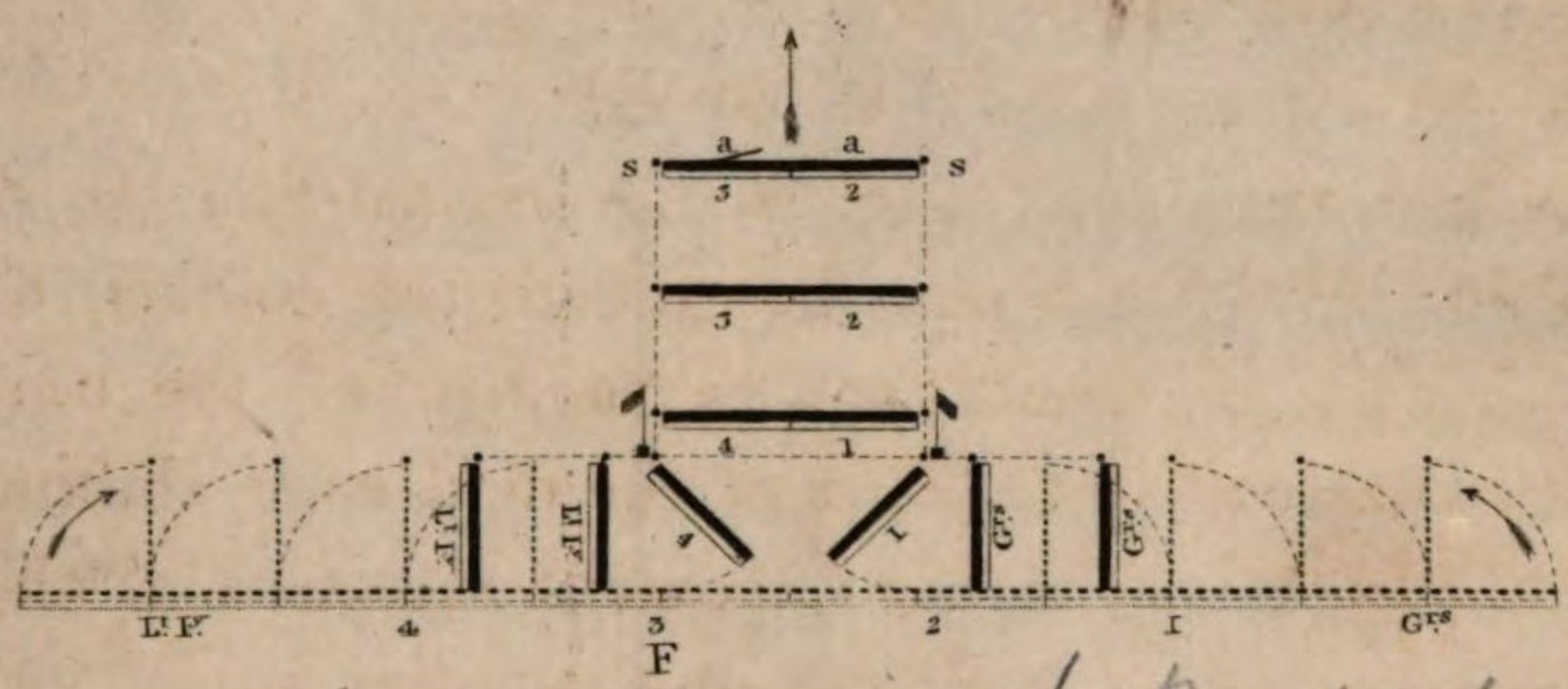


Advance in double Column of Subdivisions from the Centre



Front

The line may also be reformed by deployment at close or greater distance



Captains of right Wing shift to Right of Left Subdivision which they lead, the senior subaltern taking Right Subdivision — the Captains & subalterns of Left Wing doing the Reverse

Leaders of Divisions and Intermediate Covering Serjeants.

Original formation.

Intermediate.

Final.

Points of March or Formation.

Direction of Movements.

A. *Adjutant.*

H. *Field Officer dressing the Points.*

F. *Field Officer giving a point.*

Scale of ½ an inch to a Company.

On account of the adverse of 2 Centre Subdivisions there must be a becoming Between the others which must be filled up in the March by inclining to the left which is always the directing flank — unless ordered to contrary —

A double Column of Subdivisions, forming line to the right.

The left is always to be considered the governing flank by which the column is to march, unless ordered to the contrary.

Double columns, unless ordered to the contrary, will be formed at the distance of the divisions of which each column is composed: And they may be formed from the halt in line upon any two centre divisions, like any other columns, as in S. 30, No. 1, Part III.

FORM LINE ON TWO CENTRE SUB-DIVISIONS; REMAINING SUB-DIVISIONS RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD. FORWARD.

4. *When the double column arrives near the point where the line is to be formed*—it will proceed as directed in No. 2, the centre sub-division opening out by the side step, at the caution to admit the colours. In all these formations the column may be closed to close or quarter distance, and the line formed by deployment.

(*Plate* 4.)

FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT. RIGHT WING, LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD. *Halt, Dress.*

Left Shoulder forward. Forward. Halt, Dress up.

5. *If, after having gained the desired point to the front, it be required to form line to the right from the double column.*—The right wing sub-divisions are formed up into line by the word LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD, and are halted and dressed in line (c b) by their respective officers; the left wing sub-divisions (dc) at the same time advance and form line (cd) on the right wing, being conducted by their respective leaders, who change their flank, and bring the *left shoulder forward* into line, dressing upon the covering serjeants and battalion points.

In

In the same manner line may be formed to the left, or the double column may be previously halted, the divisions of one wing to WHEEL INTO LINE, the other wing to advance, and form upon it in successive divisions.

The double column may, if required, change its front to the rear, by the wheel and countermarch of its wings, by sub-divisions round the centre, as described hereafter for a single column, (Vide S. 34, Part III.) But it must be here remarked that changes of front to the rear are rarely required on service, and when such necessity actually does occur, the simplest and readiest mode of fronting to the rear, is *by facing to the right about*.

In all cases of moving off from line in column by the *Shoulders forward*, whether from a flank or from the centre, the leading division will step short until the company next to it commences its second wheel, when, on the word *Forward* from its own leader, it will step off at the usual length of pace: if this is not attended to, loss of distance between the first and second division will be the consequence.

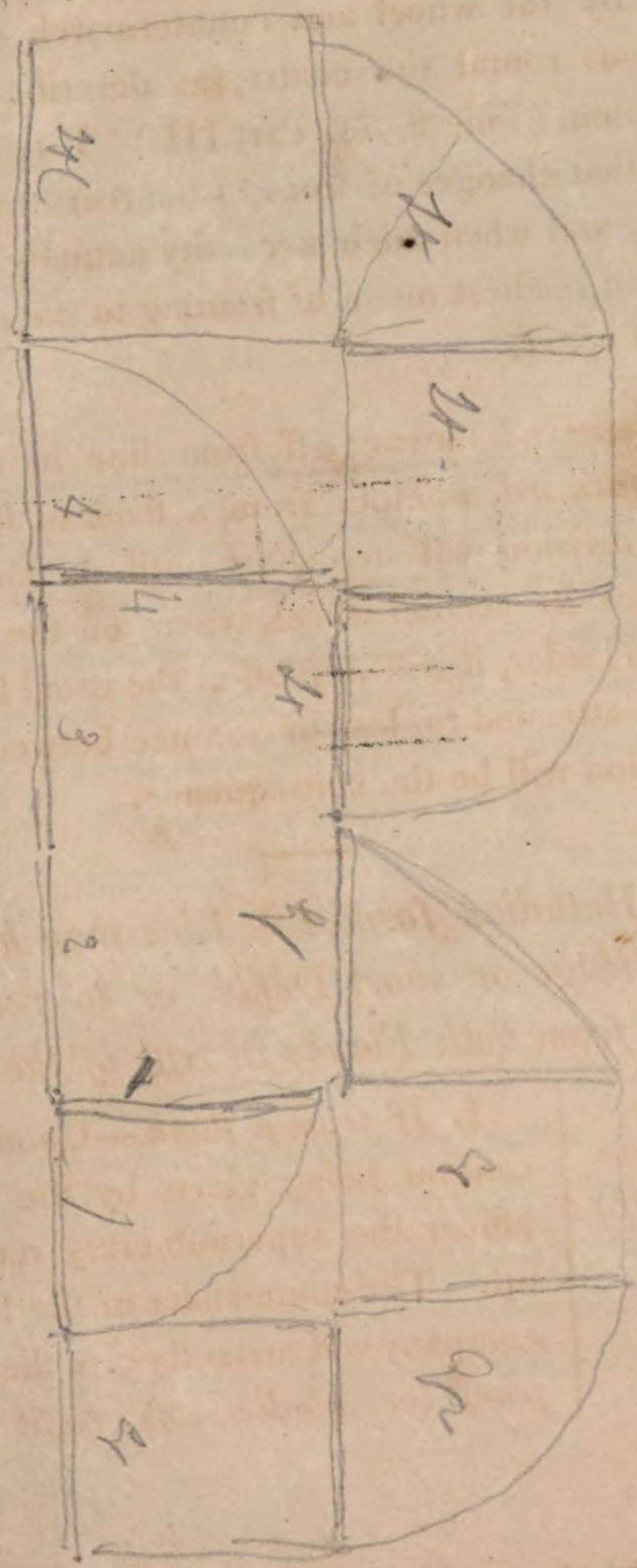
S. 19. *A Battalion formed in Line may have to retire over a Bridge or short Defilé, or to retreat from a Flank or from both Flanks in rear of the Centre.*

RETIRE BY COMPANIES (OR SUB-DIVISIONS) FROM THE LEFT (OR RIGHT) IN REAR OF

1. *If from a flank.*—Upon the annexed caution being given by the commanding officer the supernumerary rank will close up. The commander of the left (or right) company will instantly give the words *Company (or sub-division) right about face, quick*

1 Sum Co

Retire from Left in

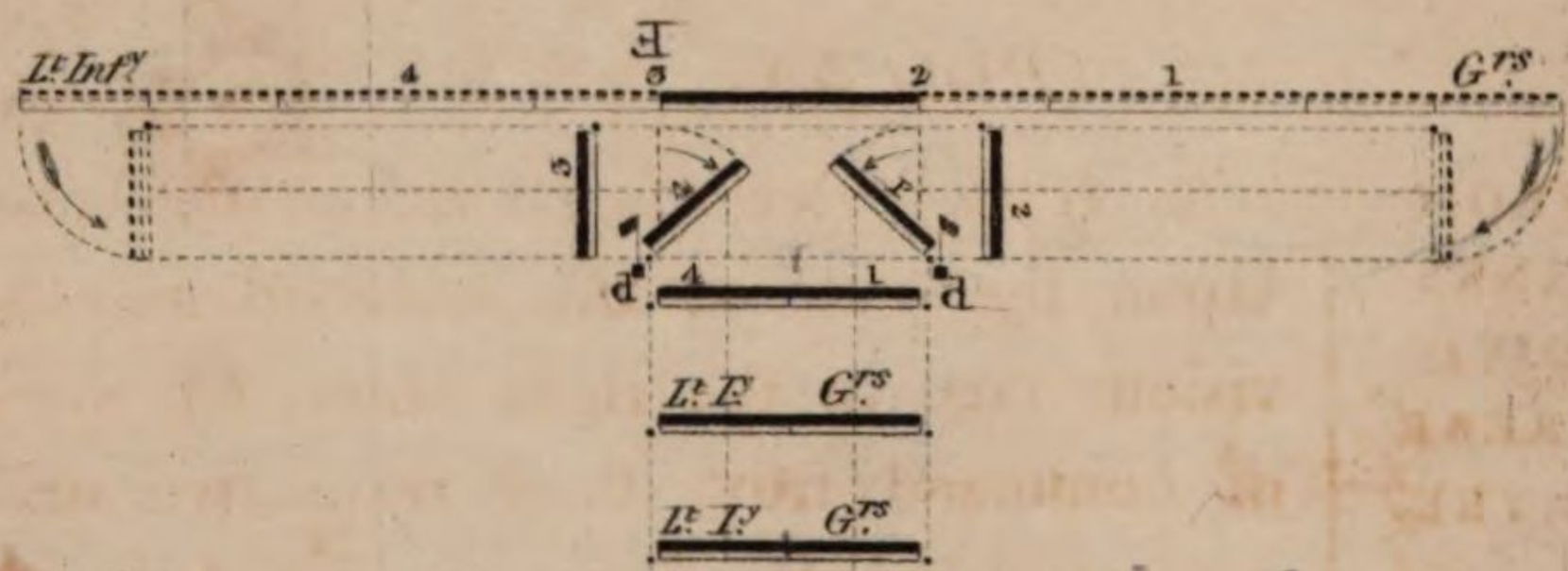


Pen Sprec

2 Left in 2 Centre Comprises

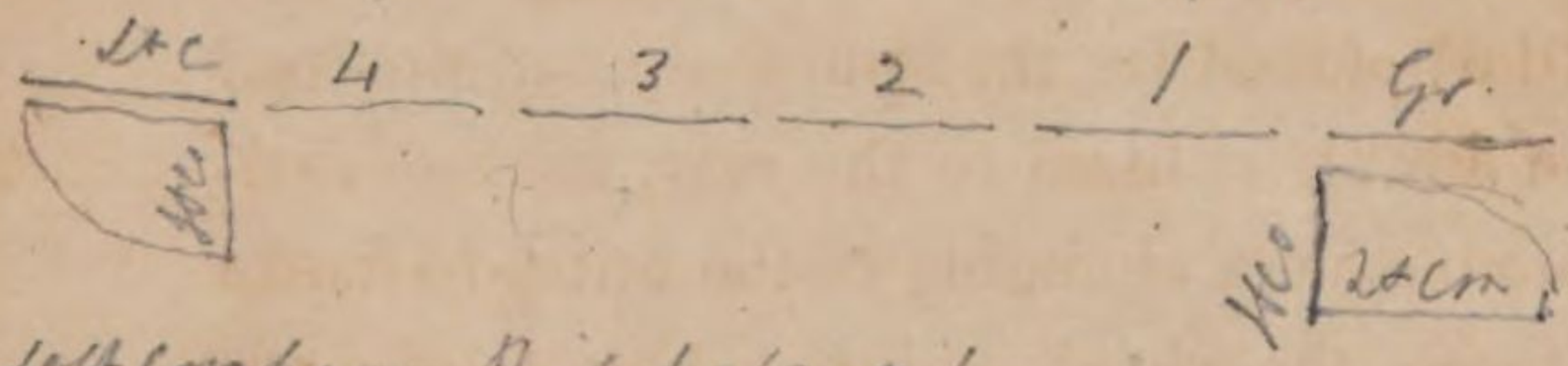
Retiring in double Column of Subdivisions,

from both flanks, in rear of the Centre.



Front Flank - on the 2 centre subdivisions from line - Remainder Right & left Shoulders - double -

Retire by companies from the left in Rear of the Right



left company Right turn fac - Quick march 3 paces Right Shoulders forward forward Left Shoulders forward forward

THE RIGHT (OR LEFT).

Company or Sub-division Right about Face, Quick March.
Right (or left) Shoulders forward, Forward.

Right (or left) Shoulders forward— Forward.

quick march, and at the third pace, when clear of the line, *Right (or left) shoulders forward,* and on completing the wheel of the quarter circle he will give the word *Forward,* placing himself on the inward flank. The division proceeds along the rear of the line, until it reaches the inward flank of the right (or left) division, where it again wheels on a point placed for that purpose, and proceeds straight to the rear, the officer taking post on his proper flank in column. The other divisions follow in succession.

(*Plate* 5.)

RETIRE FROM BOTH FLANKS BY SUB-DIVISIONS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.

Right (or left) Sub-division Right about Face.
Right (or left) Shoulders forward— Forward.

2. *If the retreat is from both flanks.*— Upon the caution, the outward sub-divisions face to the right about by word of command from their respective officers, and led by their respective senior subalterns, proceed as directed when the retreat is from a flank. On reaching the outward flanks of the two centre sub-divisions, they wheel outwards upon points) (d d) placed for that purpose, and proceed in double column to the rear, the sub-division leaders changing to the outward flanks during the wheel, and the whole dressing to the right (the proper left). The sub-divisions follow in succession from the flanks: the two centre sub-divisions receive the word

Right about Face. Quick March.

word *Right about face* from the commander of the left centre company, when the divisions next to them have commenced their second wheel. The colours instantly fall three paces to the proper rear, the sub-divisions close inward, and their leaders placing themselves upon their proper flanks give the word *Quick march*, when the preceding sub-divisions have completed their wheel.

It will be observed that in this movement a loss of distance will take place between divisions: the distances must therefore be corrected as soon as the whole battalion is in column, either by the leading division stepping short or marking time, and the others in succession as their proper distances are gained, until the word FORWARD is given; or by the leading division moving on, and the remainder recovering their distances by the double march, according as circumstances may require.

When from want of space or other causes the retreat cannot be effected by the wheel of divisions, it may be performed, with equal facility, by facing them inward, and filing along the rear of the line, until opposite the defilé, when the division eaders give the words rear turn, and proceed as directed.

The movement here laid down is applicable to the passage of a bridge or short defilé in presence of an enemy; and the column having passed the defilé and fronted, is in a situation to form line rapidly either by echellon or deployment, as prescribed in the last section: but when in actual contact with an enemy, a fire, when practicable, should be kept up, on both sides of the river; the divisions, as they successively cross over, instantly reassuming the line formation. It must be remembered, therefore, that the divisions which first

cross

cross over, *in retiring,* must move to the flank, so as to clear the troops on the opposite side, before they re-form line. While, *in advancing*, those which first pass, must take post at the bridge head, or outlet of the defilé, until the rest have passed or until ordered to advance by the commander of the whole. It is to be observed that in *forcing* a defilé, it will generally be necessary to support the leading division by forming a column of greater, or less, depth in its rear, previous to charging through it.

S. 20. *When a Battalion formed in Line is successively to march off in Column of Divisions to a Flank.*

THE BATTALION WILL MOVE IN COLUMN OF DIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS) FROM THE RIGHT ALONG THE REAR.

Left face, left wheel, Quick march, Front turn.

1. *If the movement is along the rear and from the right flank.*—Upon the caution being given the leading division will *face* to the *left, left wheel, Quick march,* and will march out perpendicular to the line, the extent of its own front; it will then receive *Front turn* from its leader, who will take post on its inner flank, and continue there unless ordered to change. The division next it will face in the same manner, and will disengage its head towards the column; and when the leading division passes, it will receive from its leader the words *Quick march, Front turn;* and thus division after division will follow in column at their true distances.

Right face, Right wheel, Quick march.

2. When the movement is from the left flank of the battalion, the same operation takes place, except that the divisions *right face, right wheel,* and follow in succession as before.

(*Plate* 6.)

S. 21. *When the Battalion, halted in Line, is to form Square on any named Company, or on the two centre Sub-divisions.*

COLUMN AT QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) CENTRE COMPANY. THREES, RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD. DOUBLE MARCH.

Threes Shoulders forward. Halt, Dress.

FORM SQUARE. QUICK MARCH.

SECTIONS OUTWARDS.

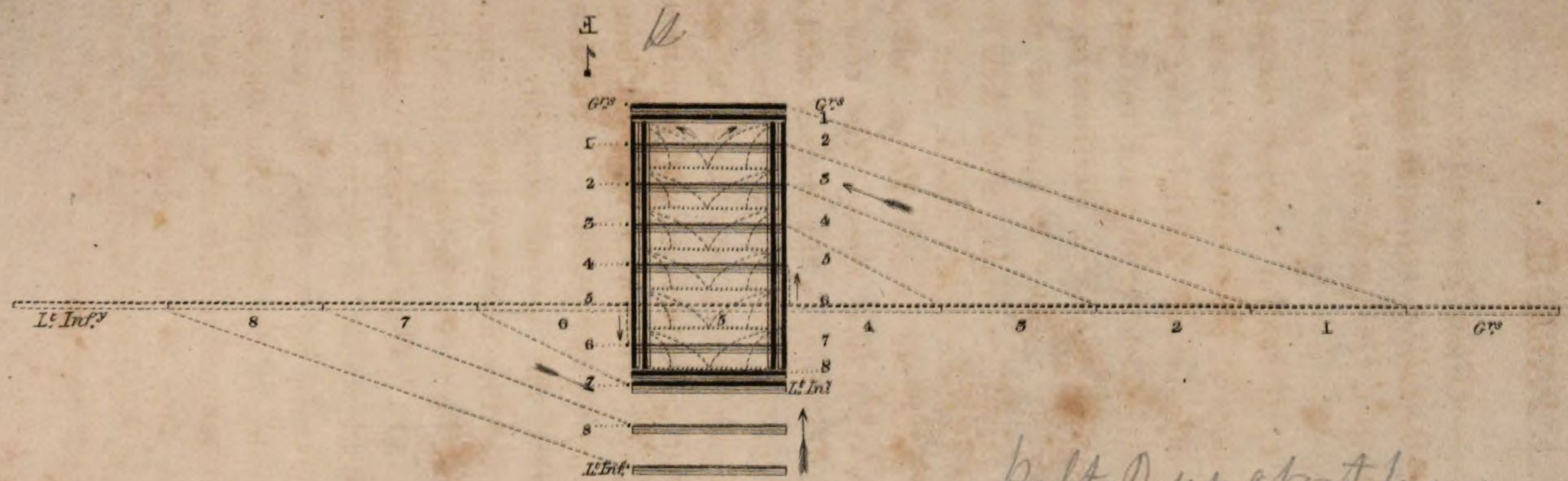
Halt. Right about face.

1. *If on a central company.*—The company of formation stands fast—the companies of the right wing bring their right shoulders forward, by threes, disengage to the front, and form in column at quarter distance in front of the named company, receiving from their leaders, as they successively reach their places in column, the words *Threes, left shoulders forward, Halt, dress.* The companies of the left wing in like manner bring their left shoulders forward, by threes, and disengaging to the rear form in column at quarter distance, in rear of the named company. The commander will then give the word FORM SQUARE, QUICK MARCH, and when the second company has closed upon the front company, which stands fast, he gives the word SECTIONS OUTWARDS. The remaining companies, with the exception of the two rear ones, wheel outwards by sections, the rear sections closing to the front after the wheel; the two rear companies close up and form the rear face of the square, receiving from their respective leaders the words *Halt, Right about face.*

Square

No. VI

A Battalion from Line forming Square on a Central Company.



Halt - Right about face -

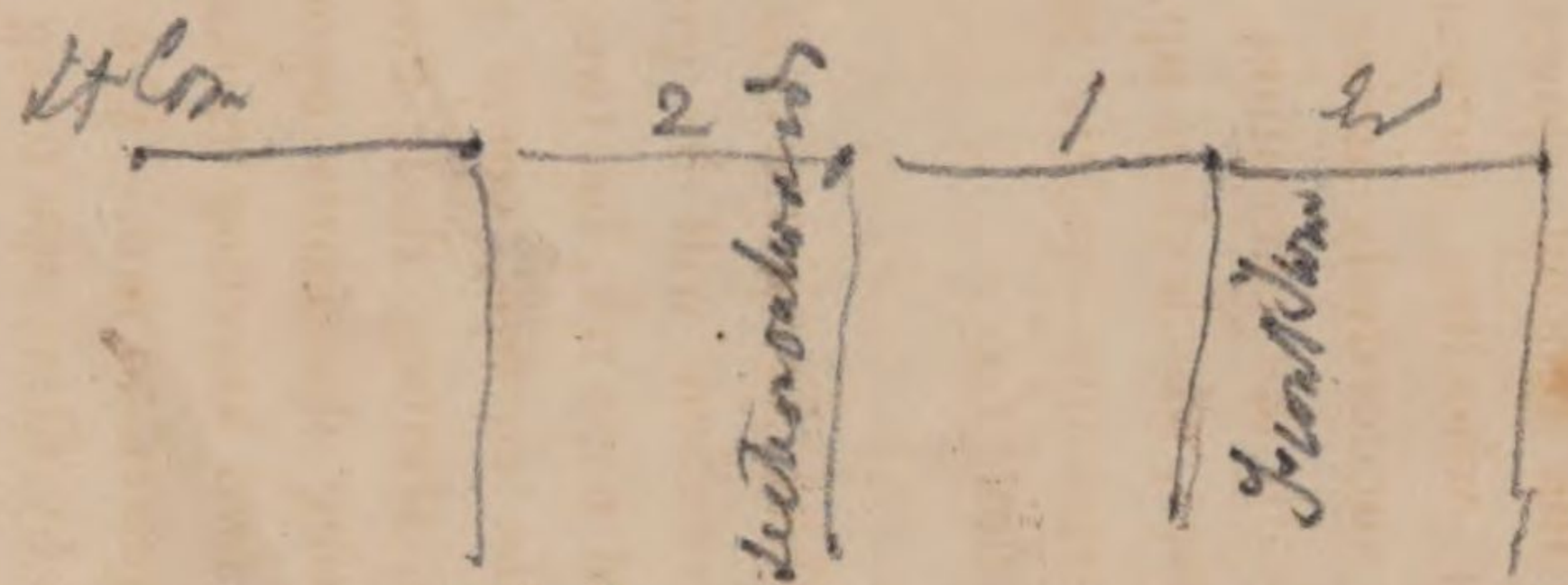
Scale of 2/3ds ——— of an Inch.

to a Company.

Suppose formed on Grenadiers Right in front - they stand & tile - But as No 1 has to close on them four quarter distance No 2 & remainder must remember to make up the distance they lose by No 1's closing on the Grenadiers - before they give the word Sections outwards ——

You ~~cant~~ never form square - on a right company when you retire from ~~the~~ proper Right - - do never on a left - Retiring from the proper left —

9



forming square on left centre company

form square - Right centre

Square may be formed as above prescribed on any named company of the battalion.

SQUARE ON THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) COMPANY. COMPANIES RIGHT (OR LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD. DOUBLE MARCH. FORWARD. *Halt. Sections outwards.* *Halt. Right about face.*

2. *If on a flank company and to a flank.*—The companies wheel to the right or left as may be ordered, and when in open column receive the word FORWARD. The leading company is instantly halted by command from its own eader, the second closes on it, the remainder wheeling outward by sections as they successively arrive at quarter distance, with the exception of the two last companies, which close up, receiving from their respective leaders the words *Halt, Right about face.*

PREPARE FOR CAVALRY. READY.

3. *When the square is to resist cavalry.*—The caution will be given, and upon the word R EADY, he two front ranks, all round the square, come to the kneeling position, slanting their firelocks forward, and resting the butts upon the ground: but the two kneeling ranks will not cock, until required to fire. The standing ranks will fire by files; the firing to commence, and to cease, by signal from drum.

KNEELING RANKS.

The kneeling ranks will fire a volley, when required, by word of command from

READY.

P'SENT.

LOAD.

the commanding officer, either by faces or the whole at once. After the fire the ranks will resume the posture of defence, and will come to the standing position on the word LOAD.

The kneeling ranks may fire previously, resuming their posture of defence, while the standing ranks fire according to circumstances, and the discretion of the commander.

REFORM COLUMN.

QUICK MARCH.

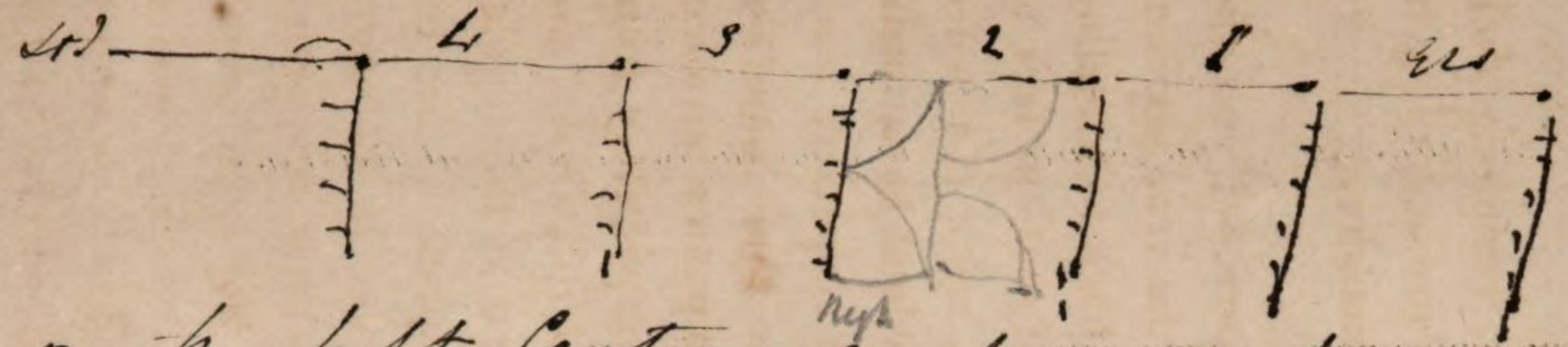
Halt, Dress.

Halt, Front, Dress.

4. *To reduce the square.*—Upon the word REFORM COLUMN, the rear sections of the two side faces step back to wheeling distance, the pivot men of sections face to their proper front, and, upon the word QUICK MARCH, they will wheel backwards, and will be halted by the respective leaders of companies; at the same time the front, and two rear companies advance, and retire, and receive respectively from their leaders, the words *Halt, Dress,* and *Halt, Front, Dress,* when at the regular quarter distance. The square is thus reduced to the proper order in column; officers take post with their respective companies; and the line may be reformed by deployment, (having previously wheeled the column, if the square has been formed to a flank,) as prescribed in S. 36, Part III.

The

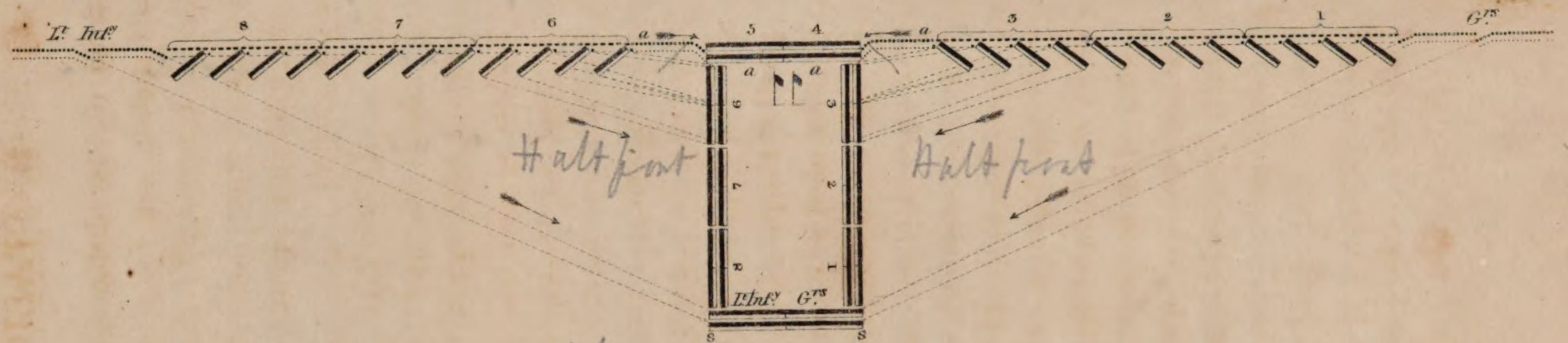
from [illegible] the proper right of company. retire by files to the



on the left Centre company form square —
subdivisions inwards

When the Battalion is formed on the centre the duffing is from the centre or inwards Flanks of Companies —

A Battalion in Line forming Square on the two centre Subdivisions.



Scale of ⅔ *of an Inch to a Company.*

The square from quarter distance column is the simplest and best that a battalion can form in every situation; it is equally applicable to battalions of nine, eight, seven, or six companies, and it is therefore invariably to be adopted in brigade, unless the following square on the two centre sub-divisions is specially ordered.

(*Plate* 7.)

ON THE TWO CENTRE SUB-DIVISIONS FORM SQUARE.

RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD. D. MARCH.

5. *If the square is to be formed on the two centre sub-divisions.*—On the word *Form square,* the colours and centre serjeants fall to the rear, the two outer sub-divisions of the two centre companies (*a a*) face inwards, and the leading files disengage to the right and left; a serjeant from each of the two flank companies will post himself at the proper distance, square with the flanks of the two centre sub-divisions, and mark the rear angles (s s). The two flank companies at the same time face inwards, and the remaining companies of the battalion face to the RIGHT ABOUT; and upon the word QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH, the two centre sub-divisions close by the side step upon the interval left by the colours, while the two sub-divisions which were faced inwards, file in rear (*a a*) of those in their front, and the companies which faced to the right about move at once by sections, inclining forward their outward shoulders,—those of the right wing to the right,

Halt, Front.

right, and those of the left wing to the left, each section being conducted by its leader to the relative situation it is to fill in the square; *viz.*, the left sections of No. 3 are *halted* and *fronted* by its leading officer, when three paces within the centre sub-divisions, the proper left flank of the left section being perpendicular to their rear: the right sections of No. 3 follow the left and cover in the rear, and are *halted* and *fronted* perpendicular to the flank of the centre, the left sections immediately closing upon them. In the same manner, Nos. 1 and 2 complete the right face of the square; while Nos. 6, 7, and 8, by a similar march form its left face, the left sections covering in rear of the right; and the sub-divisions of the two flank companies are conducted by their respective leaders to form the rear face, the right sub-division of the grenadiers covering its left sub-division, and the left sub-division of the light company covering its right sub-division, each receiving the word *Halt, Right and left face,* and touching to the centre.

The square will thus be in readiness to resist cavalry, as explained in No. 3 of this Section.

In this manner any wing of a battalion, consisting of eight

or

or ten sub-divisions, may form a square upon the two centre sections.

RE-FORM LINE.

Q. *or* D. MARCH.

Halt, Front, Dress.

6. *Reduce the square and form line.*—On the caution, the flank companies face outwards, the rear sub-divisions of the centre, face outwards in file, and on the word QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH, they file into line, the words *Halt, Front, Dress,* being given by their officers; while the two centre sub-divisions open by the side step to the right and left, to leave room for the colours and centre serjeants: the flank and other companies step off at the same time; the former move in file to their respective places, and the latter deploy by sections, the rear sections having stepped short to gain wheeling distance, and receive the words *Right* (*or Left*) *Shoulders forward, forward,* when opposite their proper places in the line.

FORM DOUBLE COLUMN OF SUB-DIVISIONS.

7. *But should it have been previously necessary to move the square,* it will for such purpose be reduced to column at quarter distance; and on the caution, the rear sub-divisions of the side faces will fall back to section distance, and the pivot men of the sub-divisions of those faces will face to their proper front.

On

QUICK MARCH. *Halt.* — *Halt Front.*

On the word QUICK MARCH the sections which formed the side faces wheel backwards; and at the same moment the two sub-divisions of the front face, and four sub-divisions of the rear face, advance to quarter distance, are *halted,* and the latter (*a a*) are fronted, by words from their respective leaders.

The whole will now stand a double column of sub-divisions at quarter distance, and may be moved in any direction like any other column. The readiness and rapidity with which square is reduced to column and re-formed into square when required, obviates the necessity of explaining a march in square. Should there have been any thing within the space of the square to protect, it can form on the reverse flank of the column during the march. On the caution to FORM SQUARE, the colours, which are in rear of the centre of the two front sub-divisions, will instantly fall to the rear of the two following sub-divisions, the centre files of which give way to allow them to pass.

8. *When the line is retiring, the square may be formed at once without halting.*—Upon the word, ON TWO CENTRE SUB-DIVISIONS, FORM SQUARE, they will halt and front; the outer sub-divisions will immediately *turn inwards,* and form upon them; and the formation will proceed, as already directed, at the DOUBLE MARCH.

S. 22. When the Battalion forms a Square, or Oblong, two deep, to protect Baggage or Treasure against Infantry only.

FORM SQUARE TWO DEEP ON THE TWO CENTRE COMPANIES; REMAINING COMPANIES RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD. QUICK MARCH.

1. The caution being given to FORM SQUARE, the colours fall to the rear, the two centre companies stand fast, and the remainder face to the right about.

On the word QUICK MARCH, the two centre companies close inwards, and the remainder bring up their respective right and left shoulders and move into square. Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4, form the right face Nos. 5, 6, 7, and 8, the left face, and the grenadier and light infantry the rear face of the square, being halted and fronted by their respective officers when they arrive in position.

Halt, Front. Dress.

THE SQUARE WILL MARCH TO FRONT, REAR, RIGHT, OR LEFT FACE.

2. *When the square or oblong is to march by any one face.*—The face which is to lead is announced; the colours move up behind its centre: the commander will then give the word to the two flank faces, BY SUB-DIVISIONS ON THE RIGHT AND LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL; upon the word QUICK MARCH they wheel back, and the rear face advances two paces, and then faces about. The square marches two faces

Q. MARCH.

HALT, RE-FORM, SQUARE. Q. MARCH.

faces in line, and by their centre; and two faces in open column, which cover and dress to the flanks on which they wheeled back, carefully preserving their distances. The square halts, and when ordered to RE-FORM SQUARE, the sub-divisions in column immediately wheel up, and form their faces, and the rear face which previously faced about, will close up, and then face about.

Should the baggage not admit of the sub-divisions wheeling back into the square, the flank sides may face to the proper direction.

FORM LINE, RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD. QUICK MARCH.

3. *To reduce the square.*—Upon the caution, the two centre companies open out by the side step to leave room for the colours, and the remaining companies receive the word RIGHT and LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD, QUICK MARCH, and are brought into line by the echellon movement, forming on the covering serjeants as usual.

Should the ground be uneven, or otherwise unfavourable to the mode of forming the square, the same operation may take place on the centre companies, by making the remaining companies of each wing form open column in their rear; the companies forming the side faces wheeling outwards, and the grenadier and light infantry closing to the front, and going to the right about.

(*Plate* 8.)

S. 23. *When a Battalion, halted, in Line, is to change its Front to the Rear, upon the Centre.*

CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR UPON THE CENTRE.

Upon the caution, the colours will countermarch; the two covering serjeants of the two centre companies change places, and will take up the points of formation (ss) to the new front, covering upon a centre serjeant, (Vide S. 7, Part III.) The leaders of these companies will then face them outwards, and will countermarch to the right, and change places by files.

THREES RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD.

RIGHT AND LEFT COUNTER MARCH.
Q. *or* D. MARCH.

Right (*or left*) *Shoulders forward. Forward. Halt, Dress up.*

The commander, in the meanwhile, will give the word to the other companies THREES RIGHT AND LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD; and, upon the word QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH, the companies of both wings will countermarch to the right and left, and will pass each other by the left, those of the right wing describing a circle in their countermarch, the depth of a sub-division, to leave room for the others to pass. Each division will be halted in its relative position (d d) to the new front by the words *Right* (*or left*) *shoulders forward, forward, halt, dress up,* from its leader; and will form upon the coverers, who will run out as usual.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE, BY MOVEMENTS OF THE OPEN COLUMN.

(*Plate* 9.)

ON A FIXED POINT.

S. 24. *When the Battalion is required to change position to the Front on the right halted Company, by throwing forward the whole left, and by the flank march of Companies.*

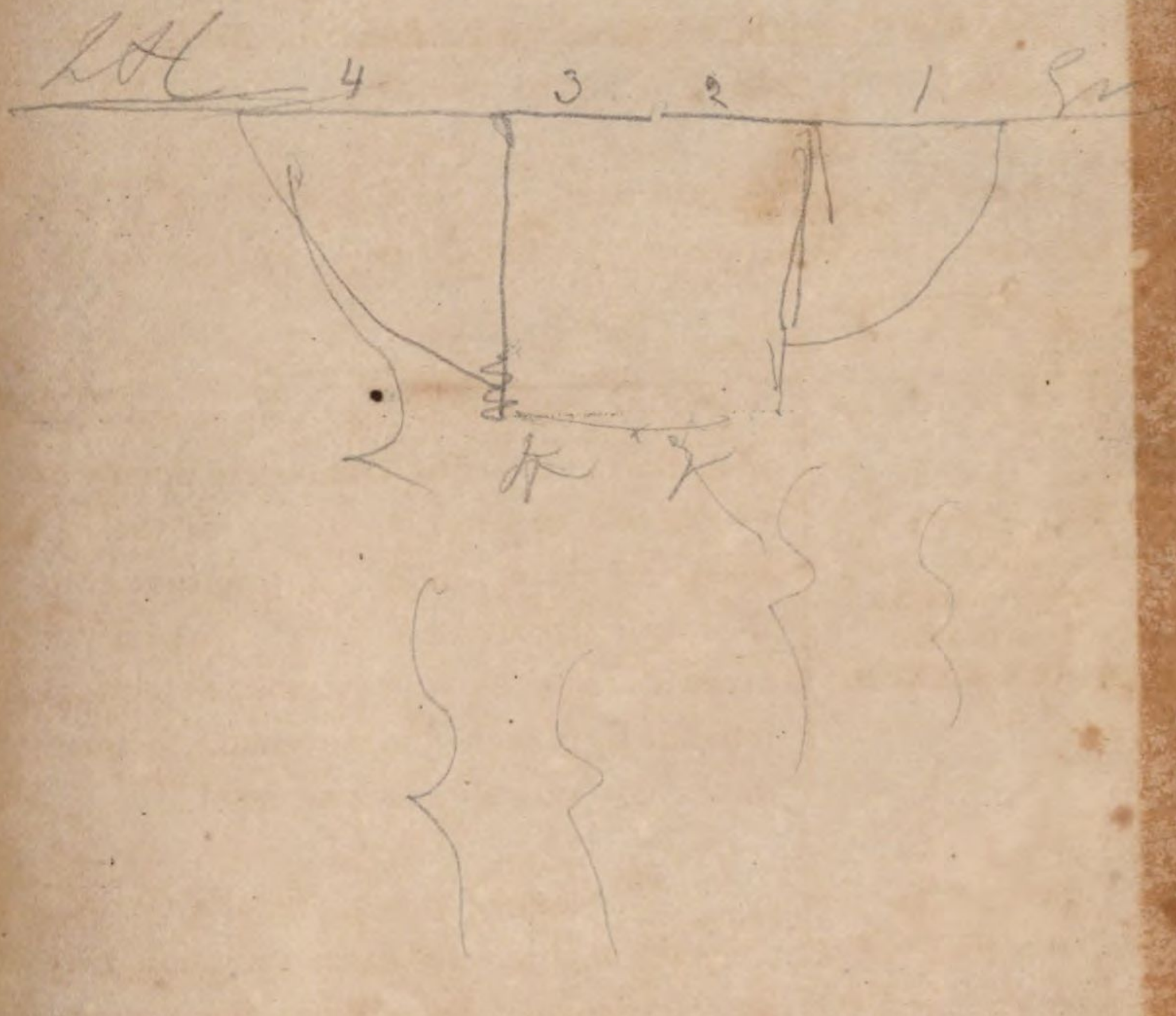
1. The right flank (c) is the fixed point on which the change is made, and is in the intersection of both lines. Another point (b) is placed, *ad libitum,* 20 or 30 paces beyond that flank. These two points determine the direction of the new line. If the change of front is to be at right angles with the old line, the right company stands fast; if oblique to it (o c), that company will wheel backwards on the right flank so many paces as will make it perpendicular (c c) to the new direction (o c).

FORM OPEN COLUMN IN FRONT OF THE RIGHT COMPANY. REMAINING COMPANIES RIGHT FACE. QUICK MARCH.

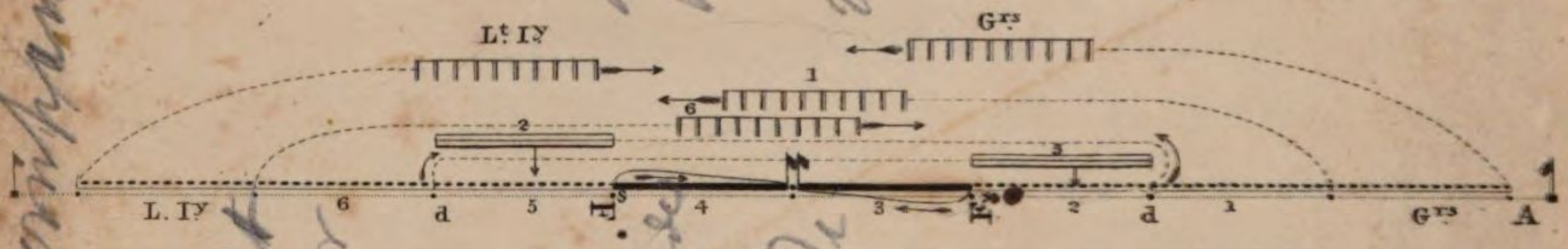
The remaining companies face to the right, and disengage to the left; the covering serjeant of the right company at the same time running out takes the distance for his company, covers correctly, and faces to the right about. At the word QUICK MARCH, the whole step off, the officer of No. 1 leads his company upon the

92u. Pen

Lot



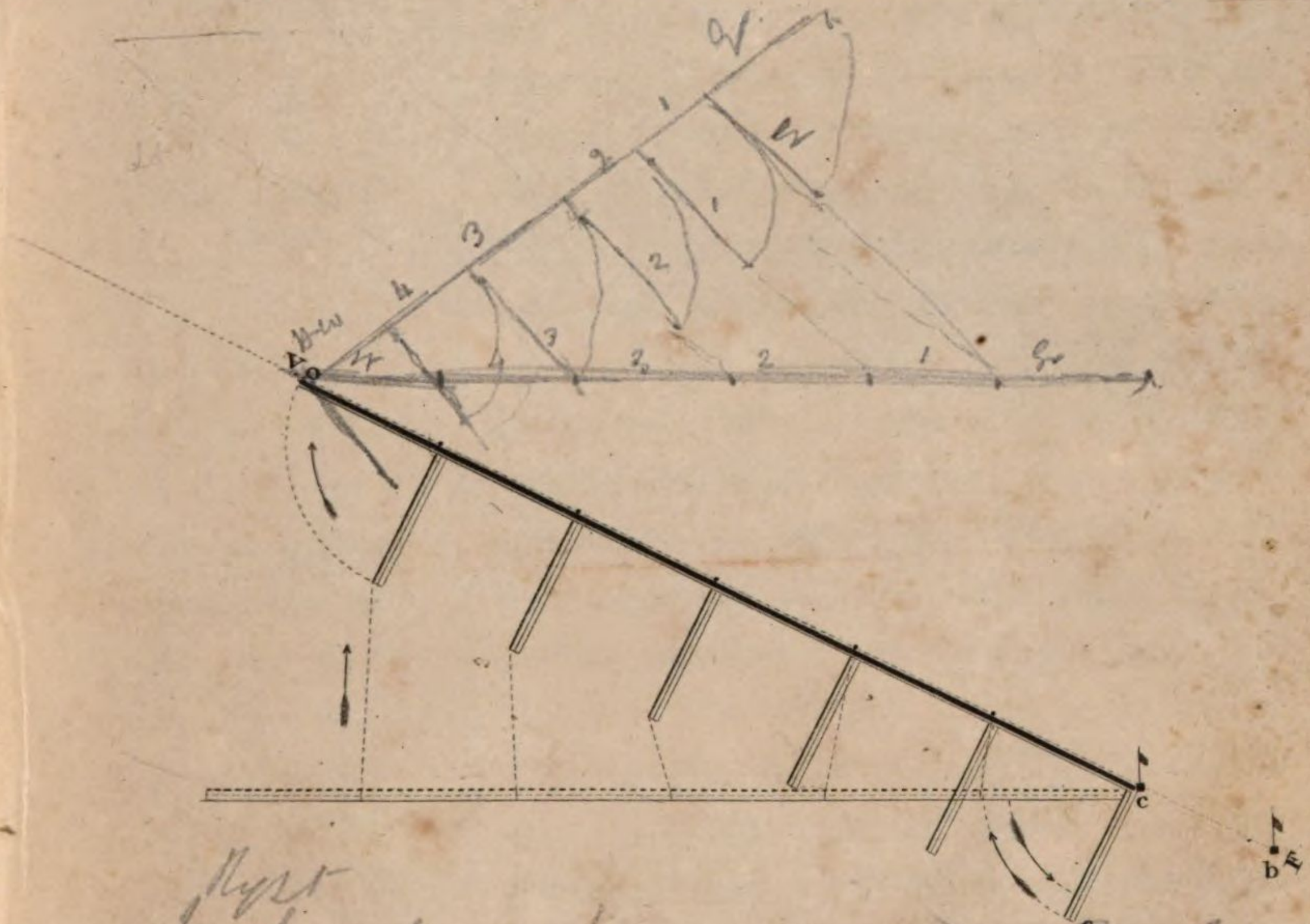
A Line changing front to the rear on the Centre.



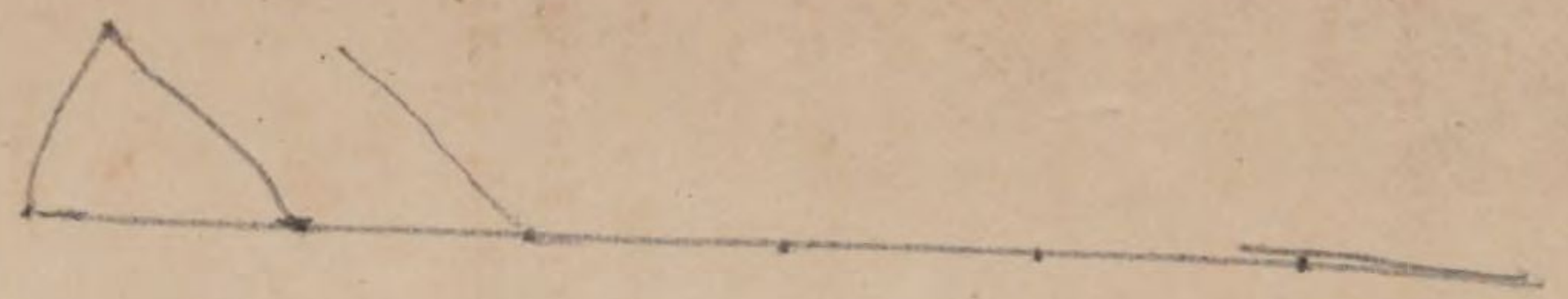
The Battalion is to stand fast on the left halted company — Wheeling Both by the flank March of Companies

A Battalion in Line changing position on the right halted company by the flank March of Companies.

Left Wheel into Line



Right
The Company being Wheeled Back or Forwards to take the intended direction of the Line — the Remainder from Column in front of it — Line Right Wheel into Line —



the covering serjeant of the grenadiers; his own covering serjeant running forward, marks the distance of his company, covers correctly, faces to the right about, and gives the point for No. 2 to march upon; and so on in succession: officers leading their companies on the covering serjeant of the preceding company, give the words *Halt, Front, Dress,* as they reach their places in column, and instantly take post upon the pivot flank of their respective companies; the covering serjeants moving to the rear by the reverse flanks of their own companies, resume their proper stations in rear of them. The whole will then stand an open column left in front, and be wheeled to the right into line.

Halt, Front, Dress.

RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE.

2. In the same manner the battalion may change its position to the left, *right thrown forward,* by the formation of the open column in front of the left halted company.

3. If the change of position is effected by the formation of the open column on a central company—the caution will specify which flank is to be *thrown forward;*—the companies face inwards and disengage to the front, and rear, as may be ordered—the covering serjeants of the companies forming

forming in rear of the named division, taking covering and distance for their own companies; the serjeants of the halted company, and those in front of it, mark the pivot flanks of the companies respectively in front of them, as in No. 1.

FORM OPEN COLUMN IN REAR OF THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) COMPANY. REMAINING COMPANIES RIGHT (OR LEFT) FACE. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Front, Dress.* RIGHT (OR LEFT) WHEEL INTO LINE.

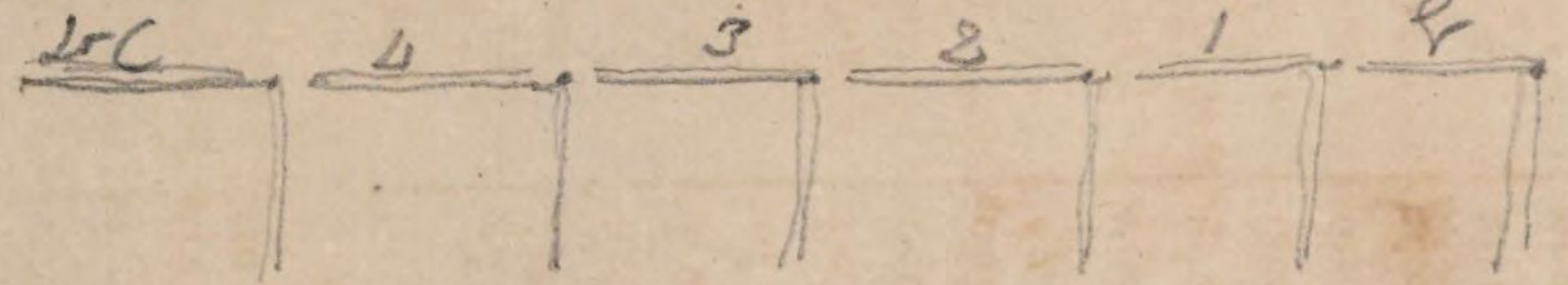
4. *When the battalion is to change position on a flank halted company by throwing back the other flank.*—The direction of the line is taken as in No. 1, but upon the inward flank of the company of formation. If the change of front is to be at right angles with the old line, the company of formation will stand fast: if oblique to it, that company will wheel backwards on its inward flank so many paces as will make it perpendicular to the new direction: the remaining companies face towards the company of formation, disengage to the rear, and step off at the word; the covering serjeants runout when at the usual distance (20 paces) from the new alignement, and cover in the line of pivots: each company will form on its own serjeant, and the whole will wheel to the right or left into line.

These changes of position may be effected, when thought expedient, by moving the companies into the new alignement, by threes, when the double march may be applied.

ON

When the Battalion in Line Retires from ~~Rear~~ Right of Companies to the Rear it forms Square — on the Left Centre — & vice versa

If the Rear Rank is ~~one~~ in front — Thus the Right Comp becomes the Right for a Time

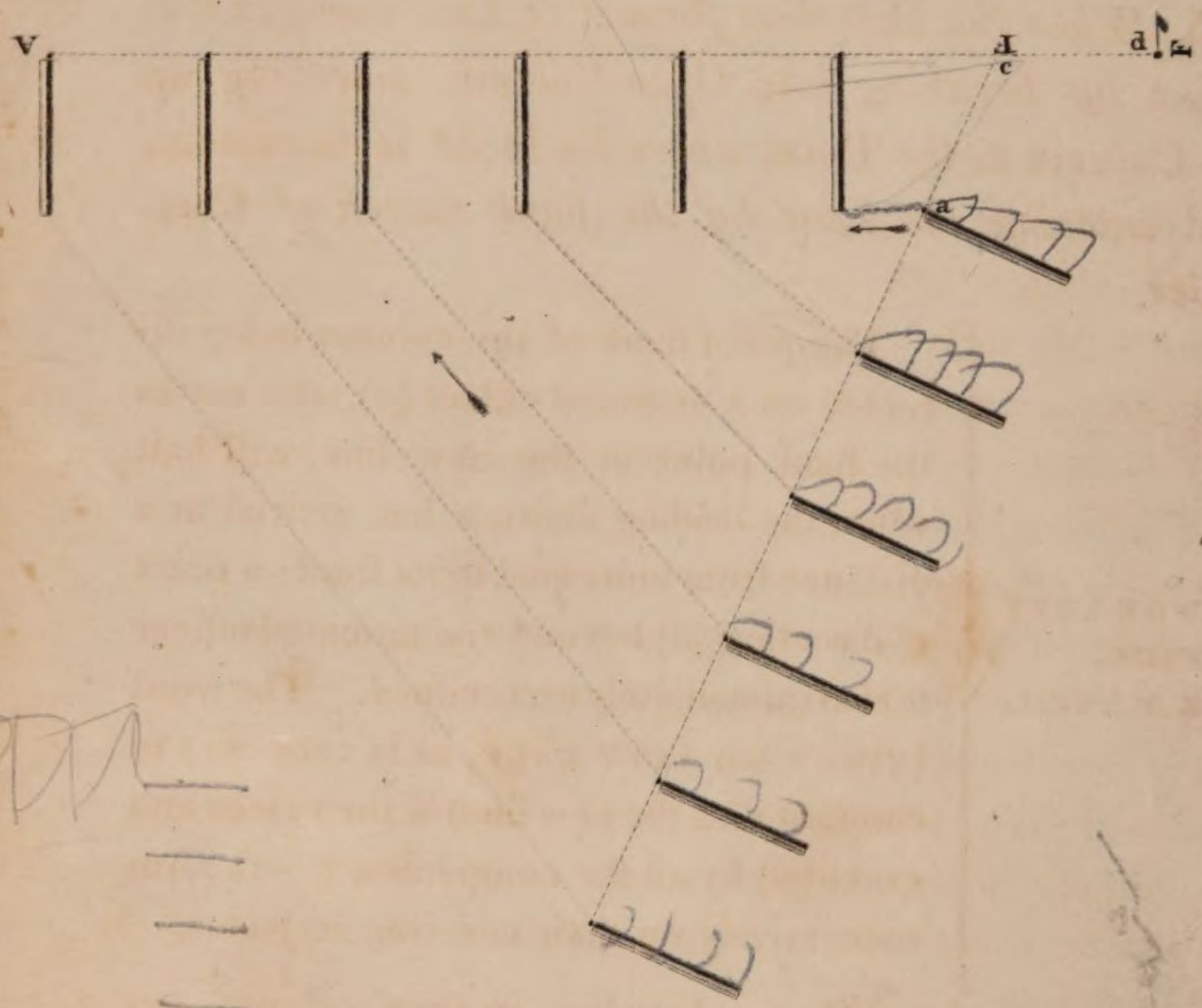


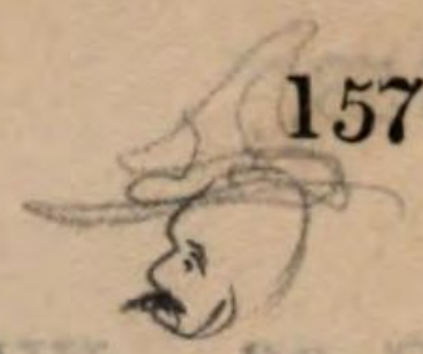
from the proper Right of Companies retire by files to Inwards Turn —

The Square is formed in same way

A Battalion marching up in Column where its Head is to remain, and entering the Line by the flank March of Companies.

3 Right Shoulders forward
halt dress —
Left Wheel into Line





ON A DISTANT POINT.

On the principle laid down in the last Section, changes of position on a distant point may be readily effected, by breaking the battalion into open column, and marching to the point in the new alignement, where the front or a central company is to rest, wheeling one or more divisions into the alignement, and filing the remainder into their places in column.

(*Plate* 10.)

S. 25. *When the Battalion formed in Line changes Position by breaking into Open Column, marching up in Column to the Point where its Head is to remain, and entering the Line by the flank march of Companies.*

RIGHT OR LEFT FACE. QUICK MARCH.

The pivot flank of the column being directed on a mounted officer (c), who marks the flank point in the new line, will halt when the leading division has arrived at a distance from him equal to its front: a point of direction (d) beyond the mounted officer is also immediately ascertained. The word (RIGHT OR LEFT FACE, as is necessary to conduct into the new line) is then given and executed by all the companies, which form successively on their covering serjeants.

HALT.

When a battalion in open column, entered and marching on a straight line, is to form at a point where its leading flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT when its leading division is at wheeling distance (ac) short of that point.

S. 26.

(*Plate* 11.)

S. 26. *When the Battalion formed in Line changes Position, by breaking into Open Column—marching in Column to the Point in the new Position where its Head is to rest, and to which its Rear Divisions form, by successively passing each other and wheeling up.*

FORM LINE TO THE REVERSE FLANK.

Right or Left Shoulders forward. Forward. Halt, Dress.

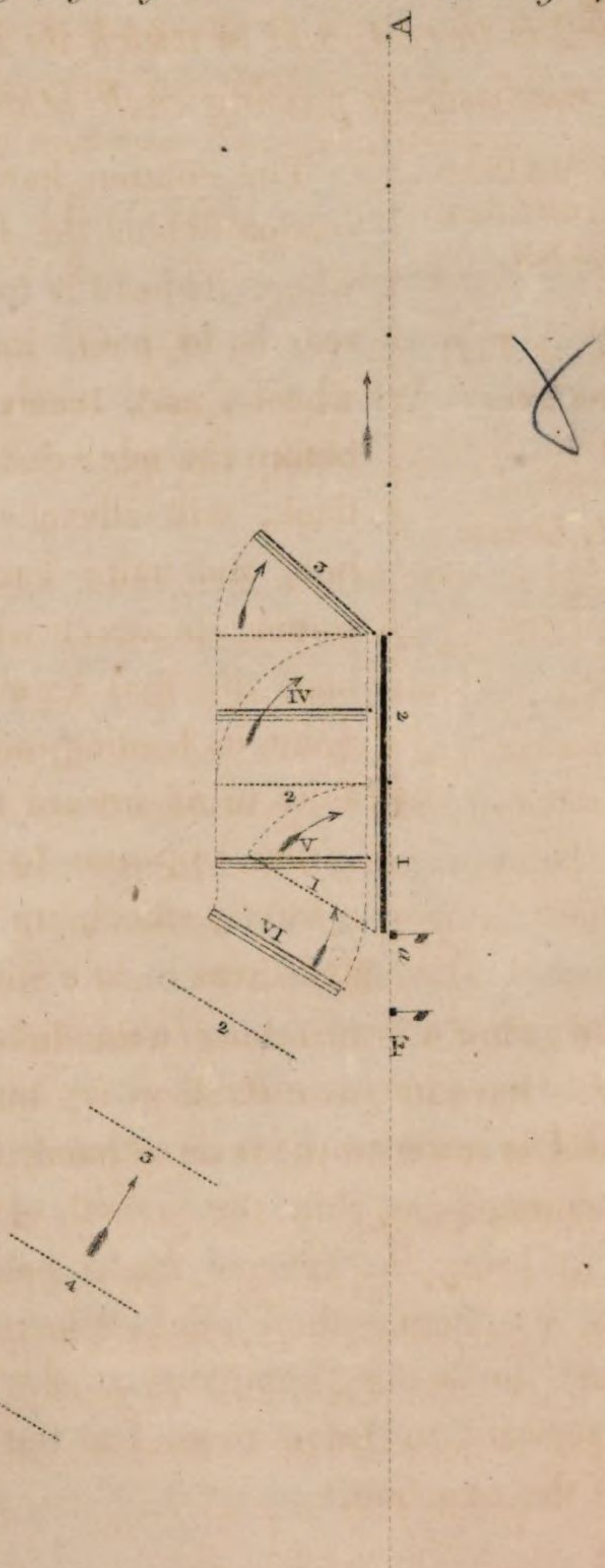
The column having arrived in any direction behind the line, and at the point where its head is to rest (*a*), but which its rear is to pass, its leading division (1) wheels, and, receiving the word *Forward* before the next division reaches its pivot flank, will advance three paces into the line, and halt; each other division continuing its march will move on square behind the first formed division, at which point its leading officer will, if necessary, shift to its inward flank, and each, as it comes opposite to its ground, will successively wheel, upon the moveable pivot, and dress in line with those already in it.

If the column is marching in the direction of the line, it will of course have its pivot flank on it; but as in this formation the wheel is made to the reverse hand, the battalion must, before it commences, shift the breadth of the column and three paces to bring the reverse flanks behind the line, and be directed by them,—the leading officers shifting at the same time, and the leading company, after wheeling, moving three paces forward to leave room for the companies to march clear of the new line.

In

all Rights

A Battalion marching in Column to the point, in the new position, where its head is to rest, and to which its rear divisions form, by successively passing each other and wheeling up.



Sr.

176

to Rupert Sackgrach - Sunt Jum

In this manner the battalion does not stand in open column on the new line, but successively wheels up by divisions, and forms in full front on the given objects. It may be used when the direction of its march is nearly in the prolongation of the new line, and when a battalion, arriving on the flank of a line already formed, has to lengthen out that line.

OPEN COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

It is to be observed that all changes of position of the open column, made on fixed or distant points, are the same as those explained for the line, after that line has been broken into column; and therefore need not be repeated.

S. 27. When the leading Flank of the Column is changed by the successive March of Divisions from the Rear to the Front.

HALT. BY SUCCESSIVE DIVISIONS REAR WING TO THE FRONT.
Right Face.
Quick March.
Front turn.

If the right is in front, the left to be brought up, and the column to continue to advance,—the whole is ordered to HALT. —At the caution, BY SUCCESSIVE DIVISIONS REAR WING TO THE FRONT, the officer of the left (the rear) company immediately orders it, *Right face—Quick March,* till his left flank can freely pass near the right flank of the others. He then commands *Front turn,* close by the right flank of the company then preceding him, and remains on the inner flank of his company until clear of the column.

The

Right Face. Quick March. Front turn.

The officer commanding that company, as soon as the other approaches him, orders, *Right face—Quick March,* behind the now leading one, and *Front turn,* as before, when his inner flank is clear of the right flank of the former column, and he will thus follow the leading division, when at the due wheeling distance. All the other companies successively perform the same operation; and when the right company has taken its place in the rear, the whole column is in perfect order.

If before this operation the column should be closed to half or quarter distance, then all the companies may be FACED at the same time, proceed as above directed, and each takes its distance from its preceding one, before it moves on.

(*Plate* 12.)

S. 28. *When it is required to change the Wings of an open, half, or quarter distance Column, formed upon a Road where the space does not admit of the Flank Movement.*

BY DOUBLE FILES FROM THE CENTRE. REAR WING TO THE FRONT.

Upon the caution, the rear company will receive from its leader the words *Inwards face—By files from the centre—* and the sub-divisions will immediately face inwards and disengage to the right and

When you deploy on a rear Company from Column into Line — as soon as its front is clear — it dresses upon on the Base Point — at Double March — & the remaining companies when their own fronts are cleared also dress up

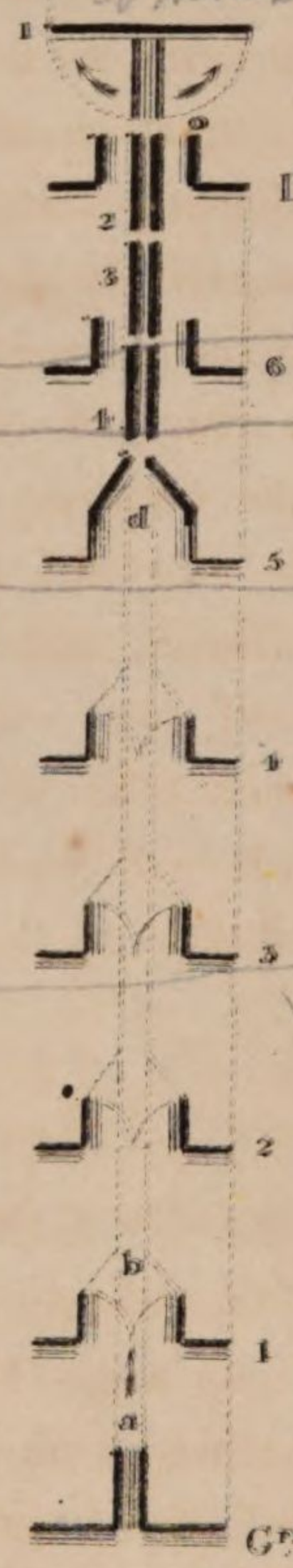
A Battalion changing Wings by double Files from the Centre.

By double files from centre — Rear Wing to the Front

(Rear Co (Grenadiers) Officers)

Inwards face — Gts — By files from centre

Commander.



2 centre sections — outwards Wheel

Quick — Inwards —

Capt — from — company.

Inwards — face

Quick — March

L

The Manœuvre when there is Room is Also done thus

1
2
3
4

Right frequick March

front Form

Inwards face by files from the centre.

TWO CENTRE SECTIONS, OUTWARDS WHEEL, QUICK MARCH.
Halt, Dress.
Form Company, Forward.
Inward face, Quick March.
Form Company, Forward.

and left (*a*): at the same time the commander of the battalion will give the words to the remaining companies, TWO CENTRE SECTIONS—OUTWARDS WHEEL—QUICK MARCH, and the rear company will advance through the centre (*b d*) of the battalion by the opening formed by the wheel of sections. When the rear company shall clear the centre of the front company of the column (*o*), its leader will give the words *Form Company—Forward;* each company will successively follow in the same manner, and the moment that the flanks of the sections which wheeled outwards are cleared by the company which is to precede from the rear, the words *Inwards face—Quick March,* will be given, as before,—the files of each sub-division inclining towards each other as they advance (*d*); and the whole will successively form to the front and take up the march in column (*c*).

S. 29. *When the Column, at open or half distance, is required to form a Square.*

FORM SQUARE UPON THE FRONT COMPANY.
Q. *or* D. MARCH.
Vide Plate 23.

1. *If the Square is to be formed upon the front Company.*—The caution being given the remaining companies will advance upon the word QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH, and form square as directed, S. 21, No. 2, Part III.

FORM SQUARE ON THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) CENTRE COMPANY. RIGHT (OR LEFT) WING. RIGHT ABOUT FACE. Q. *or* D. MARCH. *Sections outwards. Front turn, Sections outwards.*

2. *If upon a centre company*, the caution will state on which centre company the formation is to be made, and that company will stand fast. The right wing (supposing the right in front) will receive the word RIGHT ABOUT FACE from the commander, and upon the word QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH, the officer commanding the named company will wheel it outwards by sections, the rear sections closing on the front sections: the left wing will at the same moment close to section distance, and the companies will wheel in succession by *Sections outwards*, in a similar manner; while the right wing will move to the centre, with the rear rank in front; and when each company shall close up to the one which precedes it, the leader will give the word *Front turn—Sections outwards*, and the rear sections will close to the front, as before.

FORM SQUARE ON THE CENTRE.

WINGS, INWARDS TURN. *Double March.*

3. *If an open column be attacked by cavalry while moving to the front or rear in file, or by the flank march of companies in sections of threes*—the caution will be given —and, if in file upon the word INWARDS TURN, the divisions will turn to the right and left, and the instant the left centre company shall turn, supposing the right of the column in front, its leader will give the word *Sections outwards*—the

wings

Sections outwards.
RIGHT (OR LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD. FORWARD. SQUARE ON THE CENTRE. RIGHT WING. RIGHT ABOUT TURN. DOUBLE.

wings will close upon the centre at the double march, and each company will successively wheel outwards into square, as explained in the last paragraph. But if the column is moving in sections of threes, the command will be RIGHT (OR LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD, FORWARD; SQUARE ON THE CENTRE; RIGHT WING, RIGHT ABOUT TURN, DOUBLE; and the formation proceeds as above directed.

The column is reformed as directed in S. 21, No. 4, Part III.

QUARTER DISTANCE AND CLOSE COLUMN.

S. 30. *When a Battalion forms a close or quarter distance Column from Line.*

FORM CLOSE OR QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN ON — COMPANY, RIGHT OR LEFT IN FRONT.

1. *If a close column before or behind either of the flank companies:*—The caution will state which company, and whether the formation is in front or rear of it, and the officer of the named company (1) shifts by the front, if necessary, to the flank which is to become the pivot one of the column. The covering serjeant of that company places himself six paces in front or rear of that officer,

RIGHT (or LEFT) FACE.

officer, (according to circumstances,) to mark the perpendicular of the front of the column. The other officers, if not already there, shift to the flanks which are to lead. The battalion will then face to that company, and the heads of the other companies will disengage to the named flank.

QUICK MARCH.

The whole will move at the words QUICK MARCH to the front or rear of the named company; covering serjeants stepping out when within twenty paces to take up the distances at the proper pivot point, and each leader will proceed in the same manner as in forming an open column from line, stopping in his own person at his covering serjeant, and giving his words *Halt, Front, Dress,* when the pivot flank of his company shall reach the covering serjeant, whom he immediately replaces; remaining himself perfectly steady, and giving his whole attention to the covering in column.

Halt, Front, Dress.

In close columns the covering serjeants cover their officers; the supernumerary officers and serjeants will take post on the reverse flank. When the column is right in front, the colours to be on the right of the left centre company, and when left in front, on the left of the right centre company. In quarter distance the supernumeraries will take post in the rear of their respective divisions, and the colours will be in rear of the third, fourth, and fifth files from the pivot flank of the right or left centre company, according as the column may be right or left in front.

During

During the formation of all such columns, as soon as the battalion is put in motion, a field officer will immediately place himself in front of the column, before the serjeant of the named company, and from thence judging the perpendicular of the column, will attend to the serjeants covering each other in that direction as they come up, whether such covering is taken from the front or from the rear, which will depend on the formation of the column.

INWARDS FACE.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Front, Dress.

2. *On a Central Company.*—Upon the CAUTION of formation being given, the officer of the named company will place himself on his future pivot flank, the other officers will shift, if necessary, to the flank which is to lead; the battalion will then face INWARDS; the heads of companies will disengage, according as they are to be in front or rear; and at the words QUICK MARCH the rest of the formation will proceed as before directed, part of the battalion arranging itself before, and part behind the given company, and the officers covering on the proper pivot flank.

In the same manner column may be formed from line upon any company facing to the rear; that company upon the caution countermarching by files—and the wings facing OUTWARDS, and countermarching to the right or left, and forming as before. In all counter marches from line, the company of formation will be faced by the command of its own officer, so as to lead to its new pivot.

3. *If*

Vide Plate 6.
FORM COLUMN AT QUARTER DISTANCE.
RIGHT (OR LEFT) IN FRONT ON— COMPANY.
REMAINING COMPANIES, THREES, —SHOULDERS FORWARD.
Q. *or* D. MARCH. FORWARD.
Shoulders forward.
Halt, Dress.

3. *If a quarter distance column upon any named company.*—The company of formation stands fast, and the officer shifts, if necessary. The other officers, if not already there, shift to the flanks which are to lead; the whole move at the ordered pace to the front or rear of the named company, as may be necessary to gain their proper place in column; and the formation will proceed as directed in Nos. 1 and 2.

It must always be remembered that the leading three of the company next the one of formation must wheel upon its centre file in disengaging to the rear.

The quarter distance column thus formed is ready to wheel into square, as directed in Sec. 21, No. 1, Part III.

CLOSE TO THE FRONT.
Q. *or* D. MARCH. *or* WITHOUT HALTING, CLOSE TO THE FRONT.
DBL. MARCH.

4. *The close column may be formed from any more open column,* If on the march, by the head division *halting* upon the caution, and letting the others close up, and *Halt* successively,—or, WITHOUT HALTING, by the rear divisions being ordered to close by the DOUBLE MARCH, and successively to resume the quick march; the front division having steadily continued that pace.

S. 31. *When the Column at close or quarter distance marches to a Flank.*

COLUMN WILL MARCH TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) FLANK. RIGHT (or LEFT) FACE. QUICK MARCH.

HALT, FRONT.

The caution will express to which flank the column is to march. The whole will then face, and the officer who leads the front company, will take care to march in the exact alignement, upon the point that will be given: all the others will dress and move by him; and the leaders of divisions will be careful to preserve their proper distance from him. When the column *Halts*, *Fronts*, the pivot officers, serjeants, &c., shift to their proper places, if not already there.

If the column is at quarter distance it may march to a flank in sections of threes, by the command THREES RIGHT (OR LEFT), SHOULDERS FORWARD, QUICK MARCH, FORWARD.

When a close or quarter-distance column takes ground to its reverse flank, officers will not shift their pivots unless specially ordered by the commanding officer, CHANGE YOUR FLANKS; and in cases where they do not shift, the senior subalterns will conduct their respective companies.

S. 32. *When the Column at quarter-distance, moving to the Front, or Rear, takes ground to the Right, or Left, by the Echellon March of Sections.*

SECTIONS RIGHT (or LEFT).

1. The command will be given that the column will move BY SECTIONS RIGHT (or LEFT), and the companies will form echellon by sections, as instructed in S. 22,

Part

FORWARD.

Part II., taking the word FORWARD from the commander of the battalion, when the requisite wheel shall be made.

RE-FORM COLUMN.

FORWARD.

2. Upon the word to RE-FORM COLUMN, the echellon will wheel back by sections, as instructed in S. 22, Part II., the commander giving the word FORWARD when he sees the sections are in the line of their companies.

In this movement the officers commanding companies will remain on their proper pivot flank; and when the column takes ground to the reverse flank, the covering will be taken up on the reverse flanks of companies by the senior supernumerary officer, so as to preserve the exact parallelism of the companies when wheeled back into column. Ground may also be taken to a flank by the diagonal march RIGHT (OR LEFT (HALF TURN, and this may be applied at close as well as quarter distance.

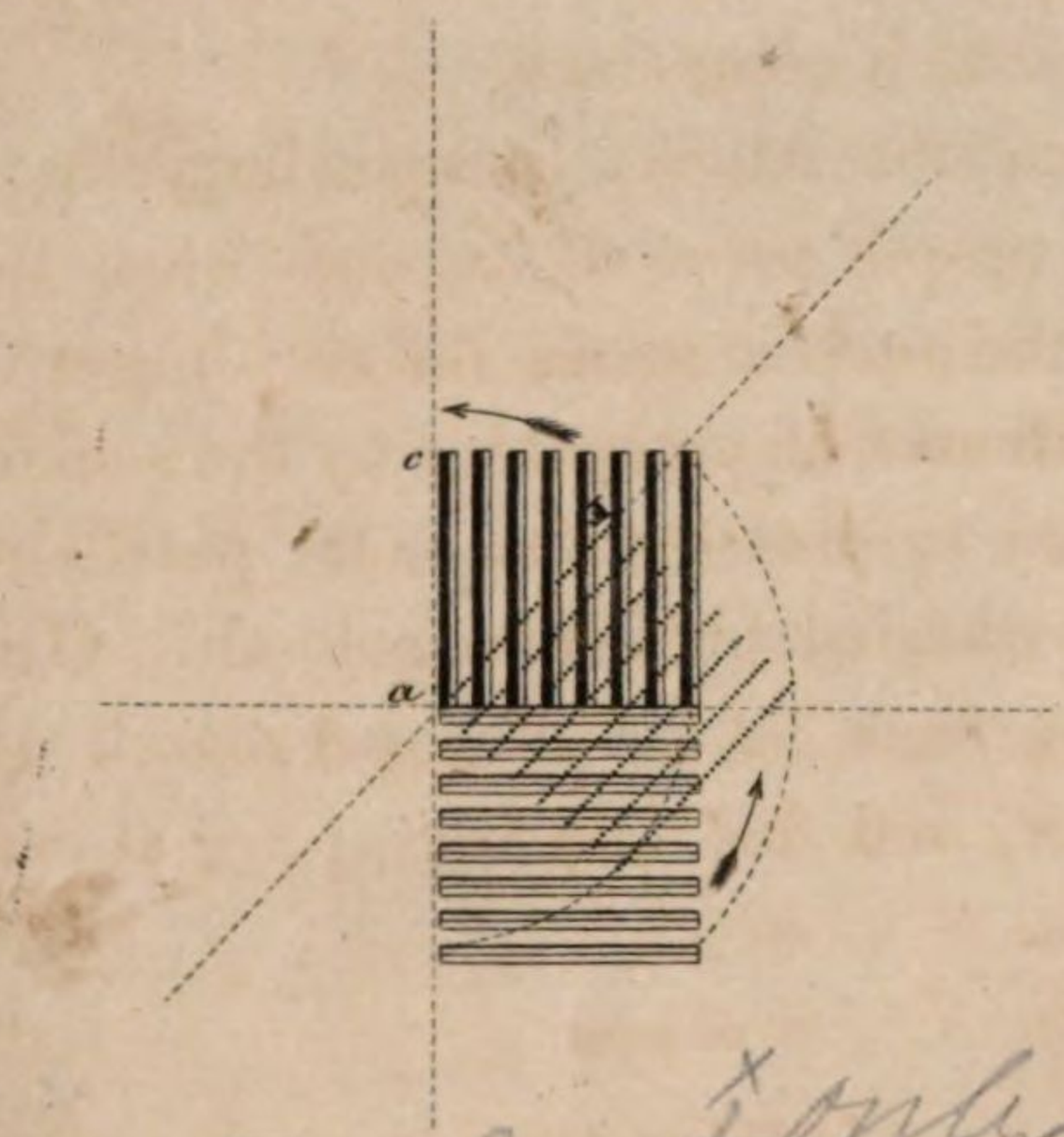
(*Plate* 13.)

S. 33. *When a Column, halted at close or quarter distance, is to wheel on a fixed or a moveable Pivot.*

COLUMN TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT WHEEL.

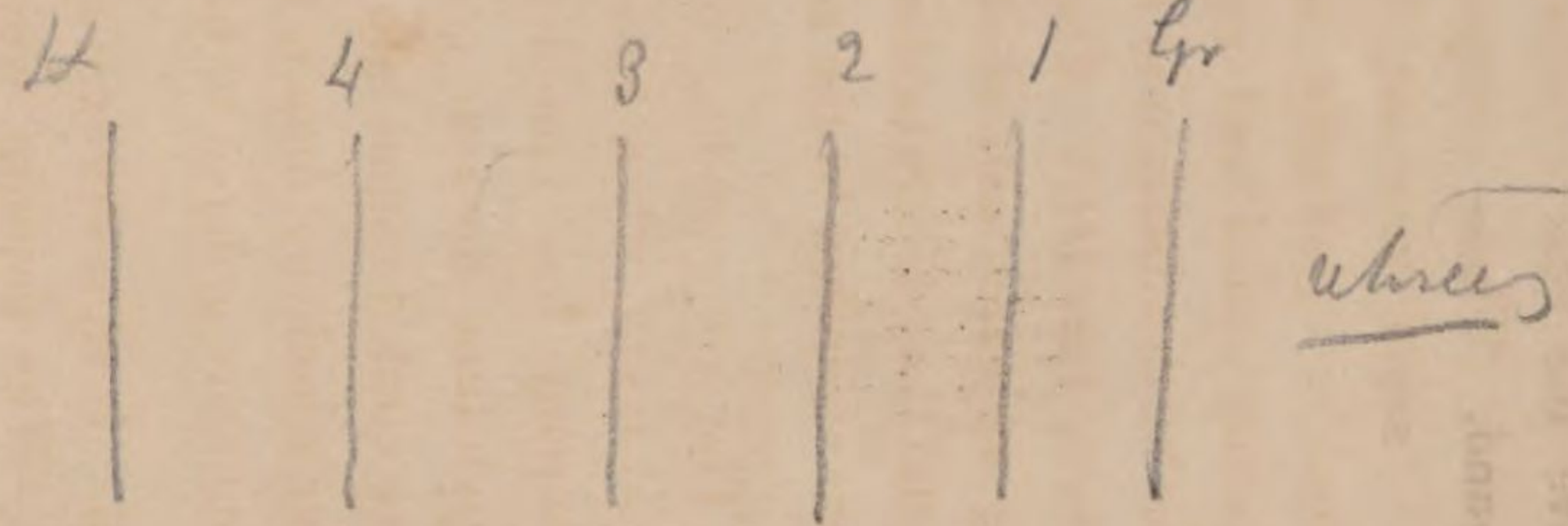
1. *At close distance on a fixed pivot.*—Upon the caution (supposing the right in front) the flank file on the left of the front company, whether officer or man (*a*), will face to the left; the front company stands fast, but the remaining companies make a half face to the right; the covering serjeant of the front company moving out to mark

A close Column wheeling to a Flank.



at Quarter Distance only in Halting Front
Company advances six paces
& then wheels — as in a common
Wheel only shorter —

If column is advancing by Files, right in Front the square is on the left centre company, of left in front on Right centre Company



Commander - Inwards Turn -
No 3 - Section outwards
No 2, Front Turn section outwards, when at proper distance,

mark where the outward flank of the column will rest when the wheel is complete (*c*). Upon the word QUICK MARCH, the front company will wheel as usual, with the exception that the step must be much shorter, and so regulated as to give the rear companies time to come round. These companies will step off at the same moment, bringing the right shoulder gradually up, and each file circling round and covering the relative files of the division in front: (Vide S. 10, No. 6, Part III.) The officers and covering serjeants will circle in the same way round the officers in their front, and confine their attention to the covering.

Q. *or* D. MARCH.

HALT.

The commanding officer will give the word HALT when he sees that the leading company has completed the wheel, at which time the rear companies must also have circled round into the new direction; after which no man is to move until companies are ordered to be dressed.

RIGHT (or LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD.

2. *At close distance on the moveable pivot.*—The column while in march may change its direction on the moveable pivot upon the same principle. Upon the word RIGHT (or LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD, all the divisions but the front one, (which will wheel according to the instructions

structions given in S. 21, Part I.) will make a half turn to the outward flank, and circle round, covering the relative files of the division in front; and the whole will continue to wheel until the word HALT, or FORWARD, be given. If the column is required to wheel in *double* time, the commander will give the word DOUBLE, and when the wheel is completed, FORWARD, QUICK, unless the column is to continue at the double time.

DOUBLE.
FORWARD.
QUICK.

The directing flank in these wheels (whether on the moveable or halted pivot) is the outward one; and to ensure the proper execution of the wheel, it is indispensably requisite, when companies are equalized, that the outward files of companies should carefully preserve their covering with the outward wheeling file of the front company of the column. The remainder of the men, who are circling round by the diagonal march, are guided by the outward file of their respective companies, conforming to that file during the wheel, and considering it the regulating flank of the movement. On the word HALT, the whole instantly halt, and front.

RIGHT OR LEFT WHEEL.
Q. *or* D. MARCH.
HALT.

3. *At quarter distance on a fixed pivot.*—Upon the caution, the rear divisions half face to the wheeling flank, as above directed, and at the word QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH the front division will advance six paces, and wheel at a shortened pace round the pivot man, who instantly faces, in the new direction, the rear divisions circling round as directed in No. 1, (Vide S. 10, No. 7, Part III.)

4. *At*

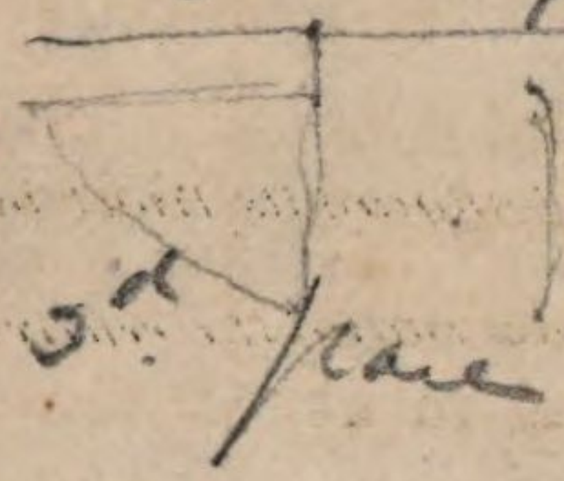
Retiring in column of divisions from a flank in rear of a flank

8 7 6 5

or from the Left in Rear of Right —

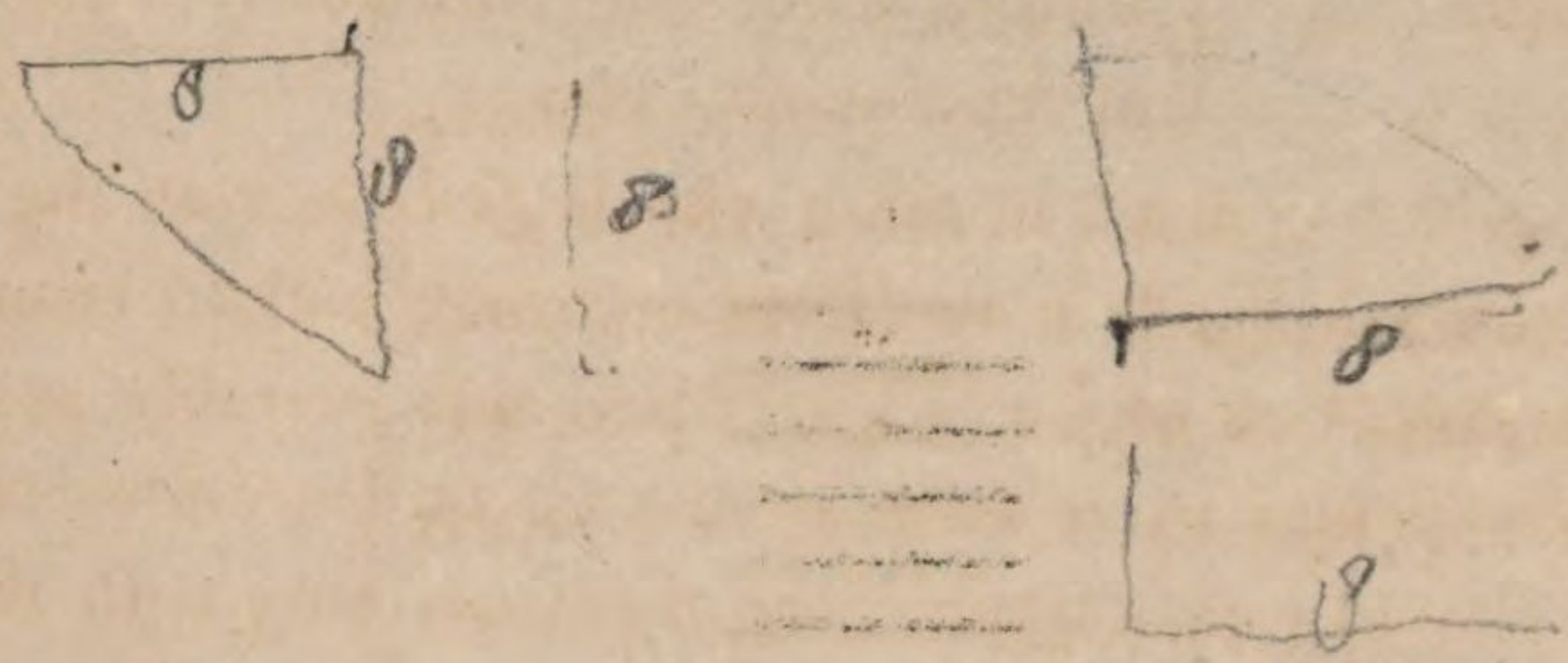
8 7 6 5

Lt Comp. at the 3d pace



8 Right about face
Right shoulders forward

8 7 6 5

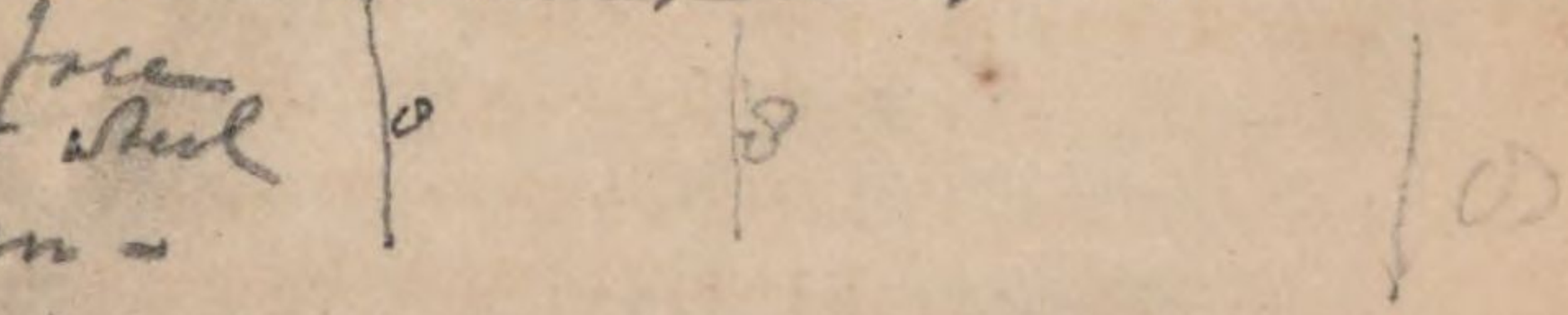


Retire in column of divisions from a flank along the rear

Com Pl — The Battalion will move in column of divisions to the Left in rear

Lt Comp. Cover to the Right face Right wheel Front Turn —

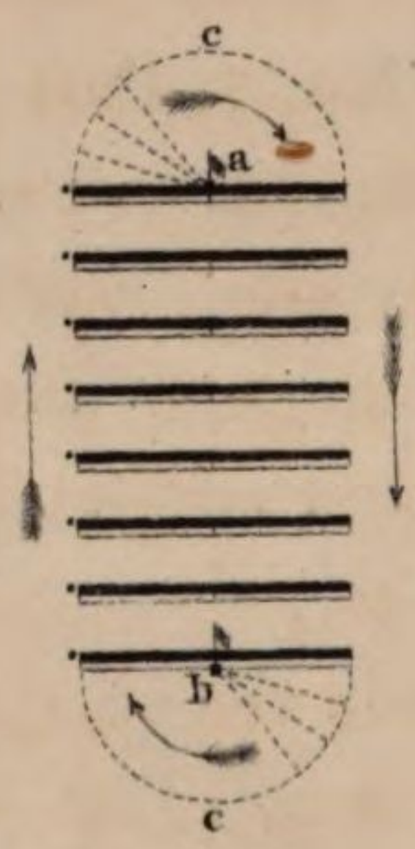
8 7 6 5



Removing Divisions in Succession

A Column at Quarter distance changing its front by the Countermarch of Subdivisions round the centre.

The leading subdivisions only Reverse the entire Wheel in this Manœuvre
Page 172 –



Successive divisions Reverse their Front

At the Rear Rank – Each Man Front Rear

RIGHT or LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD.

4. *At quarter distance on a moveable pivot.*—The commander gives the word RIGHT or LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD; upon which the front division moves round at a short pace, the pivot man gradually advancing during the wheel in the new direction, until the commander sees that the rear divisions have circled round into any required alignement at proper distances. He then gives the word FORWARD, (Vide S. 10, No. 7, Part III.); but if the wheel is to be performed in *double* time, he gives the word DOUBLE, and when wheeled to the angle required, FORWARD, QUICK, unless the column is to continue at the double time.

DOUBLE. FORWARD. QUICK.

In all these wheels, when the companies are unequal, the reverse files must not attempt to cover the outward file of a preceding company which may be stronger, but will carefully preserve their relative situations during the wheel.

(*Plate* 14.)

S. 34. *When a close or quarter-distance Column is to change its Front, by the wheel and countermarch of Sub-divisions round the Centre.*

COUNTERMARCH BY SUBDIVISIONS ROUND THE CENTRE.

1. Upon the caution being given, two points will be placed in the centre (a b), to mark the angle on which the respective sub-divisions are to wheel the half circle (c c), and to mark the point at which the leading sub-divisions are to *halt*, when the

RIGHT (OR LEFT) SUB-DIVISIONS, RIGHT ABOUT FACE, Q. *or* D. MARCH.

HALT, FRONT, DRESS.

the countermarch is completed. The reverse sub-divisions will then receive the word RIGHT (or LEFT) SUB-DIVISIONS, RIGHT ABOUT FACE. On the word Q. or D. MARCH the whole step off, and the right and left sub-divisions wheel in succession to the right (if right in front), the leading sub-divisions only, receiving the word *Wheel* from their leaders, and advancing at a shortened pace after the wheel, the whole touching to their inward flanks; when the leading sub-division is in a line upon the new front of the column, the whole receive from the commander the words, HALT, FRONT, DRESS, which should instantly follow the wheel of the last sub-division, when, if the counter-march has been performed correctly, the companies will stand upon their proper ground. The word FRONT applies to the reverse sub-divisions only.

RIGHT ABOUT TURN.

FRONT TURN, FORWARD.

2. *If the column at quarter distance is upon the march,* its front may be changed in a similar manner without halting, by the reverse sub-divisions receiving the words (supposing the right in front) RIGHT SUB-DIVISIONS, RIGHT ABOUT TURN, upon which the respective columns of sub-divisions wheel, as directed in the last paragraph—the commanding officer giving to the whole the words FRONT, TURN, FOR-

WARD

WARD—five paces before the sub-divisions arrive in line, when the whole, touching to their pivots, advance in the new direction.

S. 35. *When a Column at close or quarter distance is to open out to full or half distance from the Front or Rear.*

COLUMN WILL OPEN FROM THE FRONT.

RIGHT ABOUT FACE.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Front.

1. *If from the front.*—The caution will be given. The front company will stand fast; but the remaining companies will receive the word RIGHT ABOUT FACE, upon which the covering serjeants will place themselves at the second file from the pivot flanks: the word QUICK MARCH will then be given, and the leader of the rear company will march upon an object, which will be taken by him, or upon a point placed for him. The leader of the second company, counting the number of paces required, will *Halt* and *Front* his company when it shall have gained its proper distance—the others *Halt, Front* in succession, their leaders commencing to count the requisite number of paces, just as the previous company receives the word *Halt*, and each leader, the moment he has fronted, will correct his covering, and remain perfectly steady in his own person, the company touching lightly to him, and rapidly taking up its dressing. When the ground is rough the leaders of companies may be assisted by their covering serjeants, who will

will run out in succession, and mark the proper distance, clear of the flank of the column, the officer preserving the covering, halting, and fronting, when in line with his serjeant, who resumes his place in rear of the company.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt.

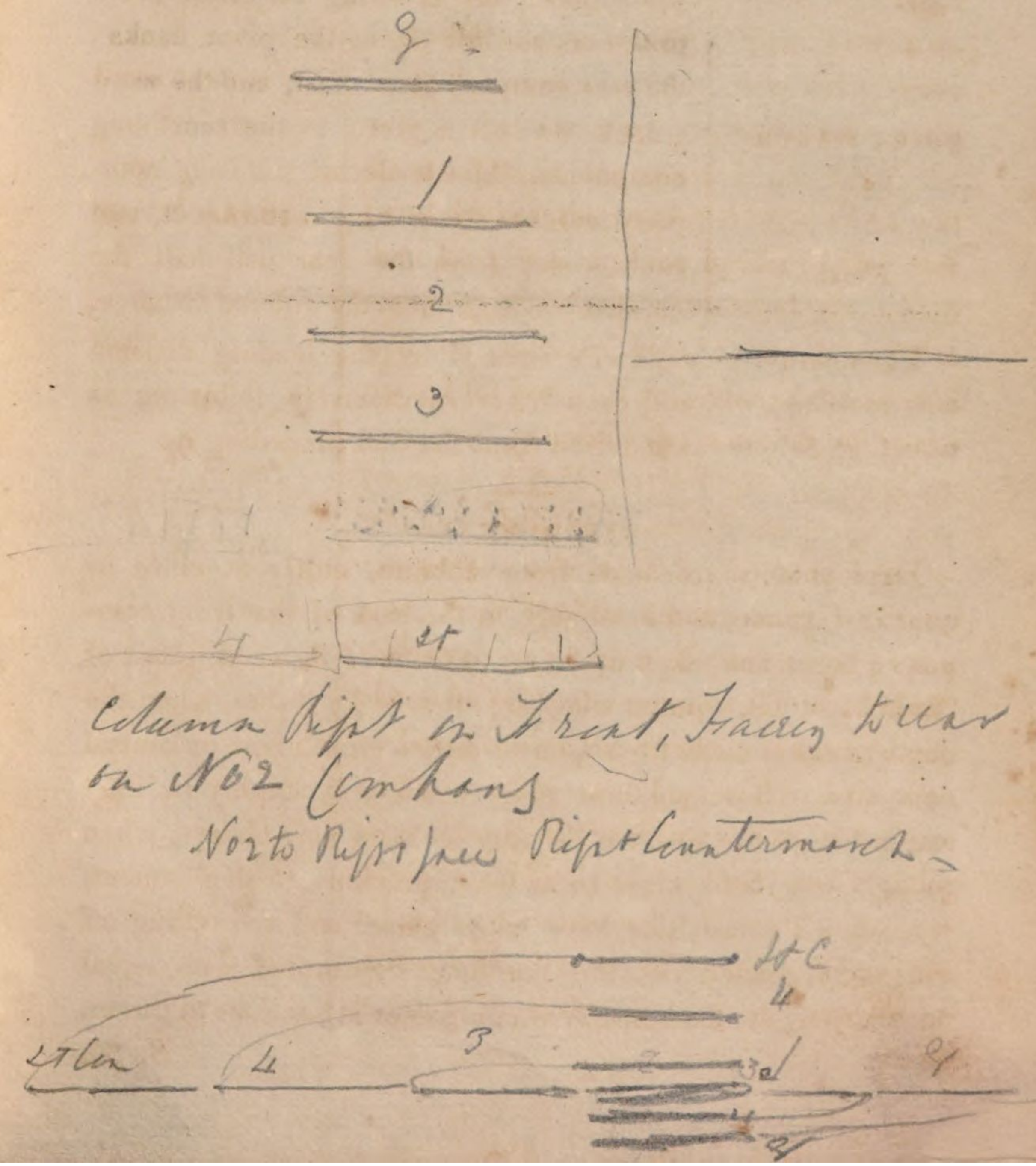
2. *If from the rear.*—Upon the caution being given, the covering serjeants move to the second file from the pivot flanks; the rear company stands fast, and the word QUICK MARCH is given to the remaining companies. The leader of the front company marches straight upon an object, and each leader from the rear will halt the company in his front at the ordered distance.

The column may also be opened by the leading division only marching off, and each other successively following as wheeling distance is acquired from the one preceding it.

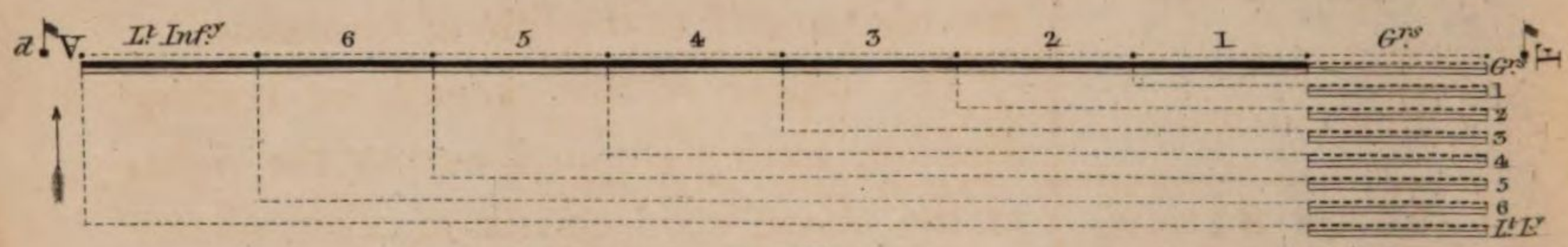
DEPLOYMENTS.

Deployments are made from column, either at close or quarter distance, and invariably on the base of the front company; or on one taken up so far in front of it, as to admit of the head of the column wheeling forward by threes, when the deployment is made from quarter distance on a rear or central company. Close columns must necessarily deploy in file; and although the quarter distance column may always, when thought expedient, close to its front previous to deployment, yet, when no casualties have taken place, and the telling-off can be depended on, the line may be formed with equal accuracy by the flank march of companies in sections of threes.

From Line to Rear on 1st Company
3d - left Shoulders forward
Right Countermarch
Quick March



A close Column deploying into Line on the front Division.



When a column dismount from the Front
all except the front division, dismount about
Face & half themselves
when they then mt from the Rear each
company is halted by the Commander
of the company behind him & then
that & proceed distance halts their
immediately in his own Front

S. 36. *When the Battalion, in Column of Companies, at close or quarter distance (right in front), deploys into Line.*

FROM CLOSE COLUMN.—(*Plate* 15.)

DEPLOY ON THE FRONT COMPANY.

1. *On the front company.*—The caution being given, the base points will be taken up in the prolongation of this division, and corrected from it, just beyond where the left of the battalion is to extend (*d*); the officer taking post on the right flank.

REMAINING COMPANIES LEFT FACE.

QUICK MARCH.

Front, turn, Halt, Dress up.

At the word QUICK MARCH, the rear companies step off with the heads dressed, moving parallel to the line of formation.

The officer of the second, or leading division, having stepped out to the right, at the above word QUICK MARCH, allows his division, led by his serjeant, to go on a space equal to his front, and then gives his word *Front, turn.* His serjeant will run out, and take up the covering and distance in the line, as directed in S. 10, No. 11, Part III., when one half the front of the company is clear of the division on which it is to form. He then steps forward and places himself before the left flank of the preceding division, giving the word *Halt, Dress up,* one pace in rear of the points of formation, and expeditiously corrects his men upon the serjeant, resuming his proper post in line.

In

Front, turn, Halt, Dress up.

In this manner every other company proceeds, each being successively fronted, marched up, and halted in line, by its officer, who stops on the left flank of the division which precedes him, and gives the word *Front, turn*, the moment his company has gained its proper distance, so that there shall be no necessity, upon marching up to the formed line, to incline to either flank.

DEPLOY ON THE REAR COMPANY.

2. *On the rear company.*—The caution being given, the base points (*s s*) will be taken up in prolongation of the front company, by the serjeants of the named rear one. The remaining companies will then face, and march as before; and the moment the front of the named company is clear, the leader will give the word *Double March*, and will *Halt Dress*, at his base points; each other company will successively *Halt, front*, until it is uncovered, and will then advance in quick time on the alignement, observing all the details for deployment already given.

Double March. Halt, Dress.

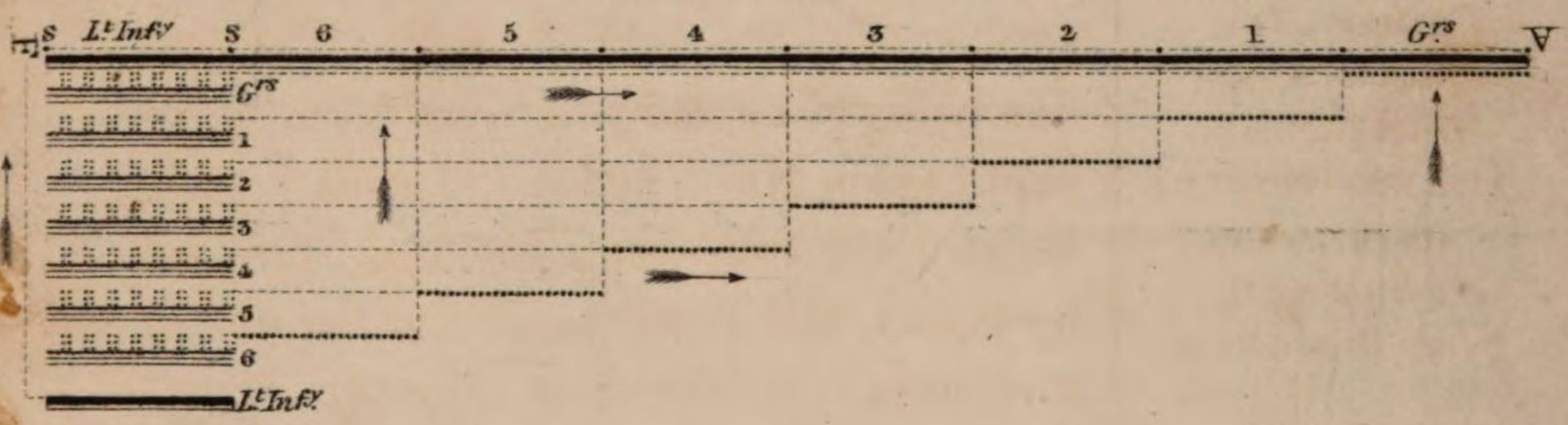
(*Plate* 16.)

The instructions given in the last numbers apply likewise to deployments on a central company, with the exception that the battalion points must be given to both flanks, in prolongation of such company. In deploying on a rear or central company,

A Close Column deploying into Line on a Central Company.

on the leading 3
front from centre

A Column at Quarter distance (right in front) deploying on the rear Division.



6 – The Battalion
to let the Remainder Clear his front
which at the Same time he is supposing

company, the company of formation will be moved up in double time; and in all cases when officers and their coverers change to the leading flank of their companies (which is always done *on the caution*) they will face outwards, and pass through the intervals, the former in front, the latter in rear of their respective companies.

In deployments officers must look over their inward shoulders, in order to judge the distance in halting their companies.

In all deployments from close column, the rear ranks will lock close up on the caution.

FROM QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN.

DEPLOY ON THE FRONT COMPANY. REMAINING COMPANIES, THREES RIGHT. SHOULDERS FORWARD. Q. *or* D. MARCH. FORWARD. *Left Shoulders forward— Forward. Halt, Dress up.*

3. *When a battalion in column of companies at quarter distance right in front deploys upon its front division.*—The caution being given, the points are taken up as explained in No. 1, and on the word Q. or D. MARCH, the rear companies wheel forward by threes, and move parallel to the line of formation. As the front of companies are successively cleared they will receive from their leaders the command, *Left shoulders forward—Forward,* and when within one pace of the line, if moving in quick time, (or two if moving in double time,) *Halt, dress up.* The covering serjeants will run out and take up the covering and distance in the line as directed in No. 1.

(*Plate* 17.)

DEPLOY ON THE ~~FRONT~~ REAR COMPANY. REMAINING

4. *On a rear company.*—The base points (ss) are given on the caution, three paces in front of the head of the column, and on the

COMPANIES, SHOULDERS FORWARD. Q. *or* D. MARCH.

Double March. Halt, Dress. Shoulders forward, Halt. Q. or D. March. Halt, Dress up.

the word Q. or D. MARCH, the remaining companies bring their shoulders forward, and lead straight out to the flank as directed in No. 3. As soon as the front of the rear company is clear, the leader will give the word *Double march*, and will *Halt dress* at his base points; each other company will successively *Shoulders forward, Halt*, until it is uncovered, and will then advance on the alignement, observing the instructions given in the preceding paragraphs.

In deploying on a central company, the base points are in like manner taken up three paces in advance of the front company of the column, and the companies leading out to either flank proceed, respectively, as laid down in Nos. 3 and 4.

ECHELLON FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS.

(*Plate* 18.)

S. 37. *When a Battalion from Line wheels forward by Companies to either Flank into Echellon.*

COMPANIES, —— PACES TO THE —— WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.

1. At the CAUTION, that the companies will wheel forward so many paces to the right or left, so as to place them perpendicular to their future lines of march, the officer, if not already there, moves to the named flank of his company, and the covering serjeant of each at the same time runs out, places himself opposite the centre of the 8th file from the named flank, immediately takes the said number

Fig. B.

number of paces, on the circumference of the circle of which his pivot man is the centre, and then stands fast with his body dressed in the line of that flank man, who also faces into the line of his serjeant. All those serjeants ought thus to be in a line (ss); but if any small correction is necessary, it will be made by the commanding officer, from the leading flank.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

At the word QUICK MARCH, each company wheels up till its 8th file arrives close behind the serjeant (s), at which time the officer who is on the standing flank gives his word *Halt, Dress;* eyes are turned towards him, and the dressing being completed, the serjeant places himself on the outward wheeling flank (b).

QUICK MARCH.

2. *When the echellon thus formed marches forward and halts.*—The companies standing thus parallel to each other, and their leaders being on the pivot or flanks wheeled to, the whole move at the word QUICK MARCH, each flank on its own perpendicular: each officer must be attentive to preserve the distance he marched off at from his preceding pivot, and also his oblique covering in the line of pivots, as laid down in S. 2, Part III. These rules observed, the echellon may at any instant

HALT.

be ordered to HALT, and will then be in a situation ready to form parallel or oblique to the line it quitted:—if parallel, by each division wheeling back to the flank of the one immediately behind it;—if oblique, by the divisions moving up into the direction which the leading one then has, or may be placed in, as hereafter directed.

In oblique echellon, the colours and centre serjeants will wheel up and form a section of themselves. Thus they will occupy the same position, whether the line takes ground to a flank by echellon of companies of sub-divisions or of sections.

S. 38. *When the Battalion, having wheeled from Line into Echellon, has marched, and halted, and is to form back parallel to the Line it quitted.*

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE.

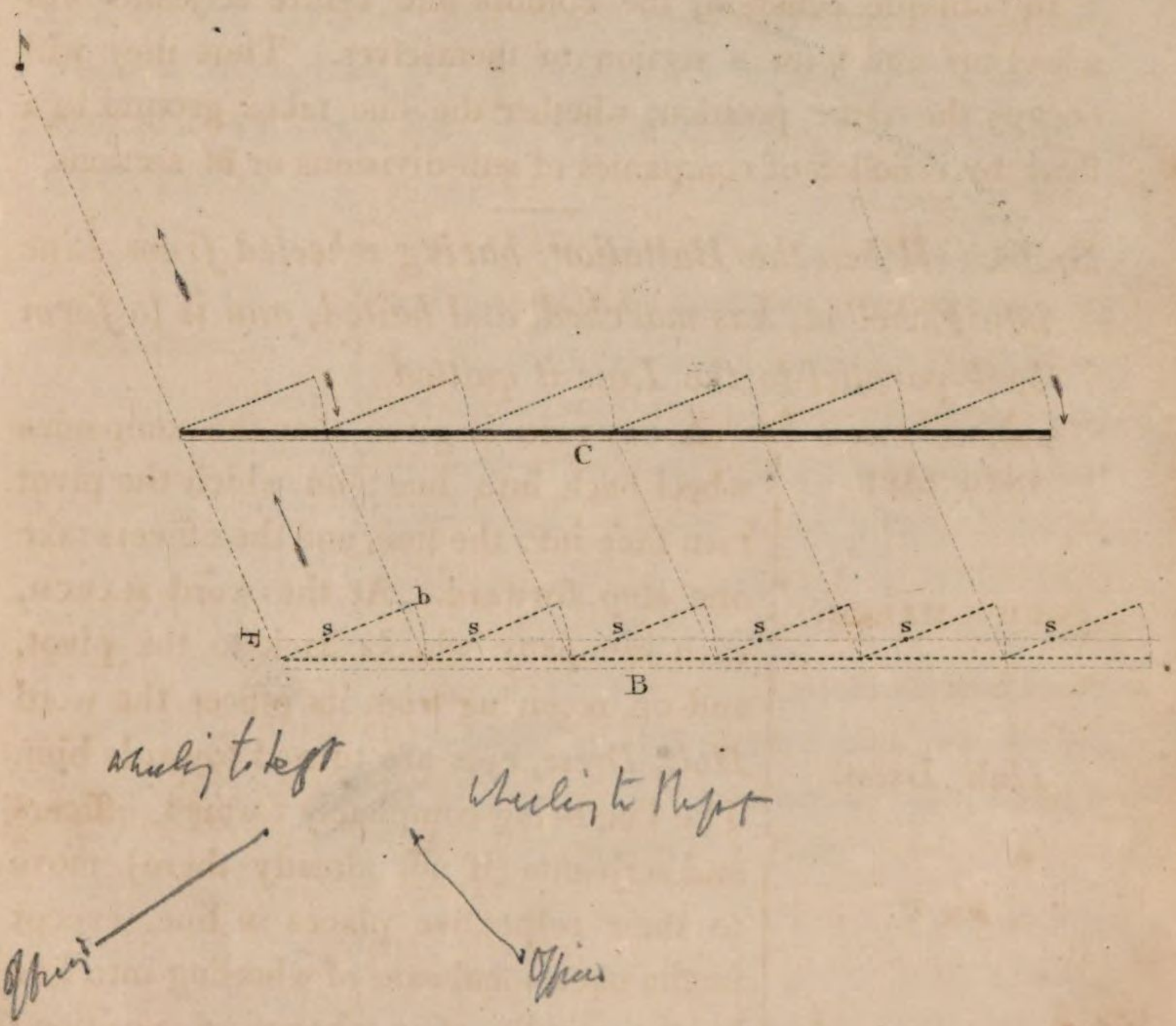
QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

Fig. C.

A CAUTION is given that the companies wheel back into line: on which the pivot men face into the line, and the officers take one step forward. At the word MARCH, each company wheels back to the pivot, and on receiving from its officer the word *Halt, Dress*, eyes are turned towards him. The line being completely formed, officers and serjeants (if not already there) move to their respective places in line, except in the occasional case of wheeling into line in the middle of a change of position: officers do not then shift from their leading flank (unless ordered), but remain there ready to fire, and to resume the march in echellon.

A Battalion from Line wheeled into Echellon, and after having advanced, forming back, parallel to the Line it quitted.



Changes of Front by Echellon.

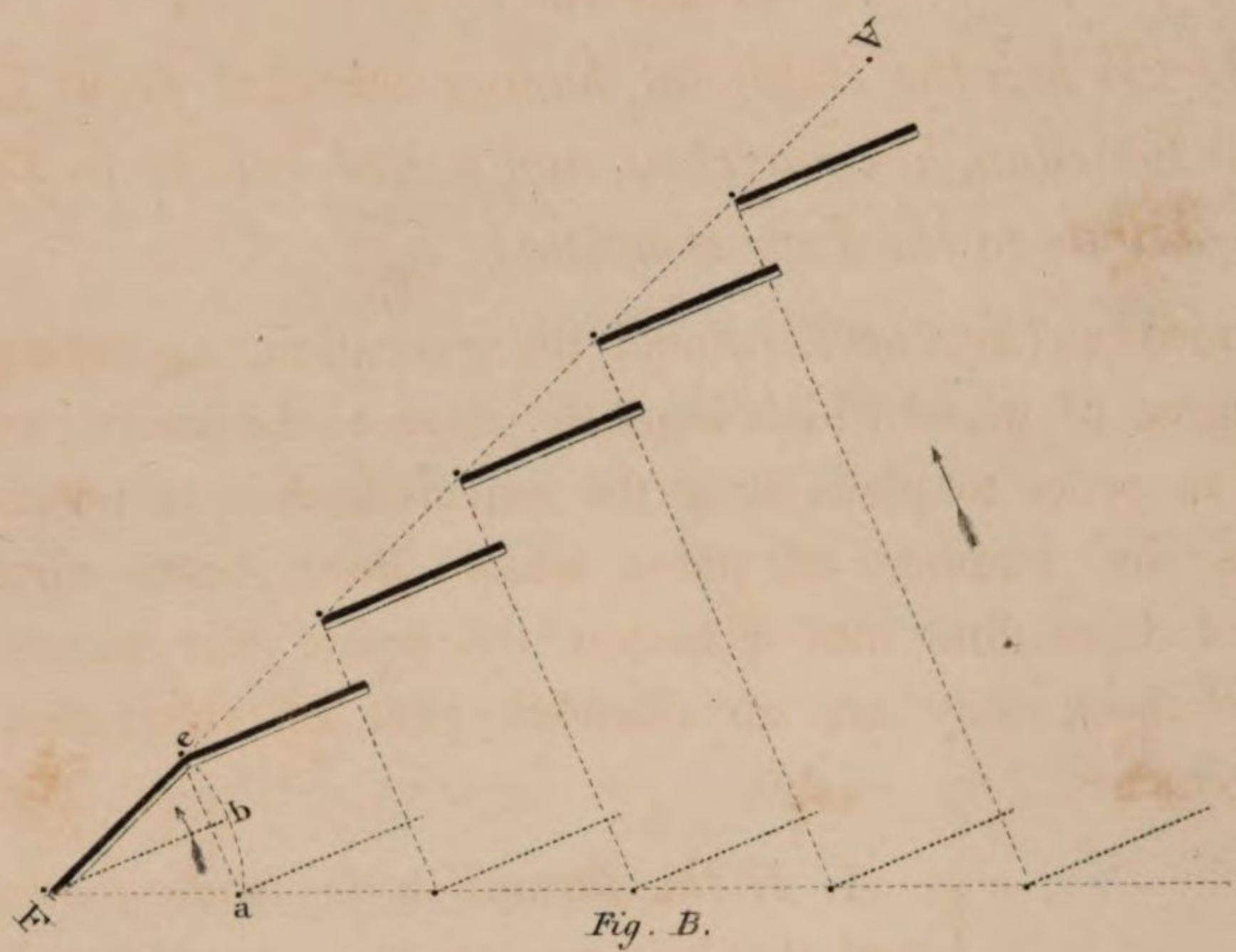


Fig. B.

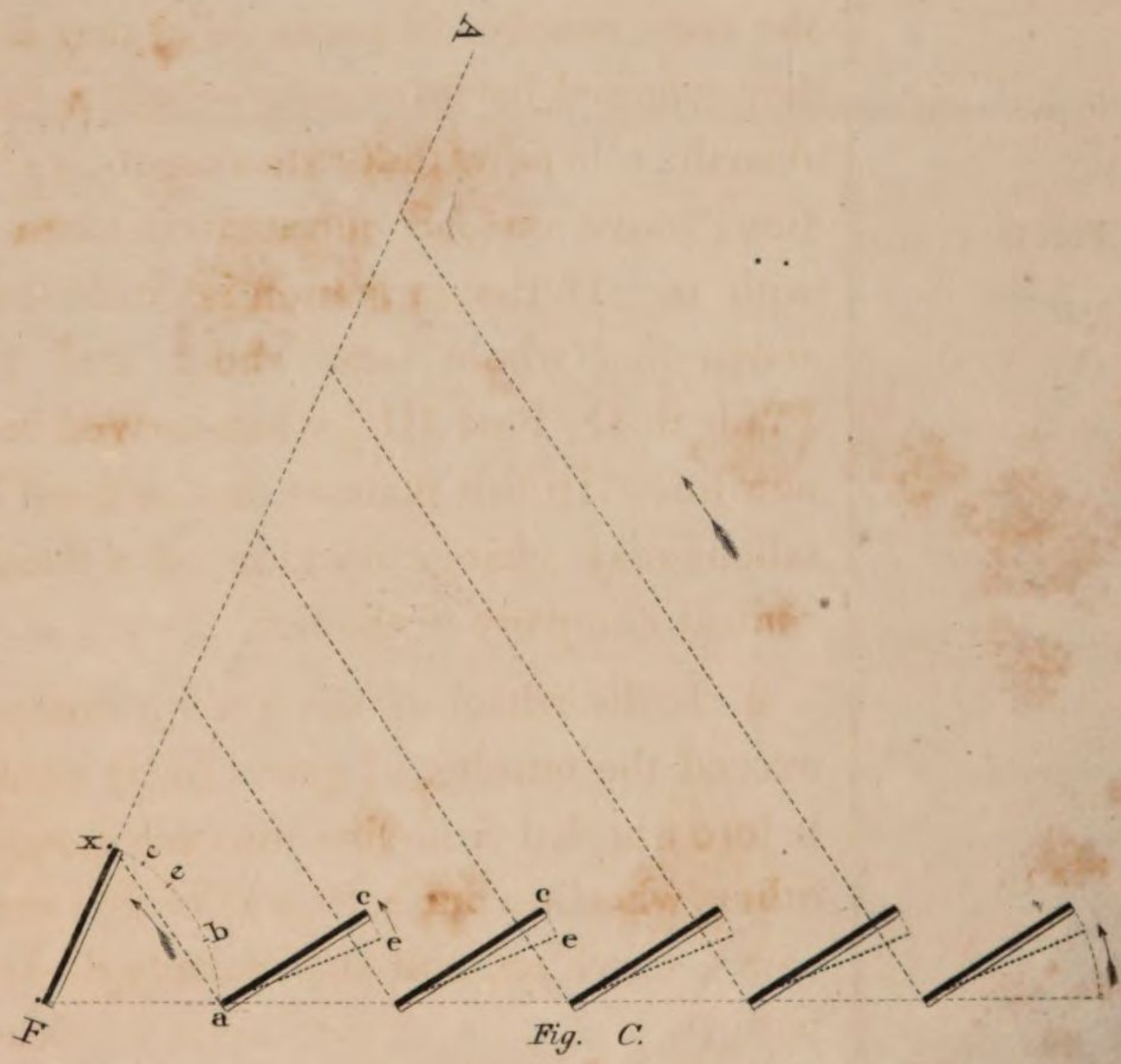


Fig. C.

(*Plate* 19.)

S. 39. *When the Battalion, having wheeled from Line into Echellon, has marched, and halted, and is to form up oblique to the Line it quitted.*

Various circumstances attend the execution, according to the degree of wheel which must be given to the leading company, in order to place it in the required oblique position; and as the number of paces which have been already wheeled from line into echellon determine the nature of the echellon, they are an essential part of the following arrangements.

Fig. B.

1. *If the formation is made forward,* and the leading company is wheeled up the same number of paces (b e) that it before wheeled from line into echellon (a b), then the others, without altering their situation, move on and successively dress up with it. If the formation is made backward, the whole face about and form (Vide S. 41, Part III.) when arrived in the new line. In this manner one or more battalions may change position on a flank or central company of the line.

Fig. C.

2. If the wheel of the leading company exceed the number of paces (a b) which it before wheeled from line into echellon, the others wheel up one half (e c) of that excess (e x), move on, and successively dress up with it.

3. *If*

(*Plate* 20.)

3. *If the formation is to be on the prolongation* of the front division as it stands, the others wheel back (b e) one half (b d) of what they originally wheeled forward, then move on, and dress up with it.

These wheelings make the divisions stand perpendicular to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation, which lines change in consequence of the position given by the leading division.

S. 40. *When the Battalion, formed in Line, changes Front, on a fixed flank Company, by throwing forward the rest of the Battalion.*

CHANGE FRONT ON — COMPANY, RIGHT OR LEFT THROWN FORWARD.

— COMPANY, — PACES.

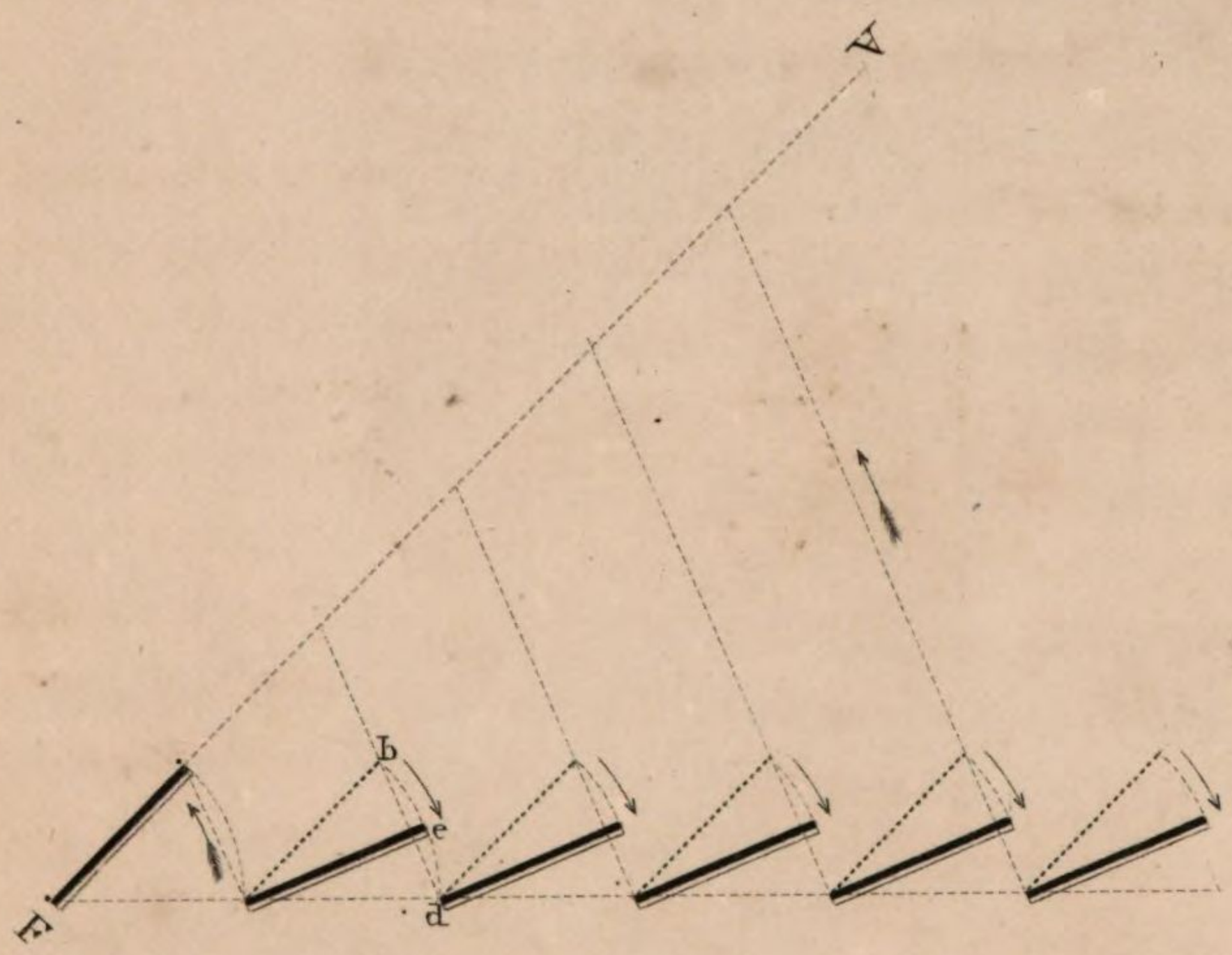
When the commander has determined the new line to be taken, by placing a person in it, 20 or 30 paces beyond the fixed flank, he orders the serjeant from before the 8th file of the flank company to wheel up into that line, thereby to ascertain the number of paces required. He then directs that company to wheel so many paces as will bring it into the new position, and the adjutant to prolong the line as far as the outward flank of the battalion will extend.

REMAINING COMPANIES — PACES TO THE —— WHEEL, QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

The other companies are at the same time ordered to wheel towards it half the number of paces wheeled by the flank one, for by that means will each stand perpendicular to the line, which is drawn from its

Forming line by Echellon on the

prolongation of the front Division.



Range point on No 14 to Left Stating Quarter Distance
Remainder 8 Left Wheel –

its flank in the old line to its relative flank point in the new one, and it is along such line that each will move. The battalion wheels into echellon, as in S. 38, Part III.

QUICK MARCH.

The officer being on the inner, and the serjeant on the outer flank of each company, the whole, except the company of formation, will move on at the word QUICK MARCH, as directed in S. 37, No. 2, Part III.

—Shoulder forward.

Halt.

Dress up.

When each of the divisions in march respectively approaches to twenty paces from the company already placed, the covering serjeant will run out to take up the distance in the intended line, covering from the points on which the formation is made (Vide S. 7, Part III.), and when the division leader shall reach the outer shoulder of the rear rank man, on the flank of the company formed before him, he will give the word *Shoulder forward;* and when the division shall have wheeled up on the moveable pivot, exactly parallel to the intended line, with its front rank on a line with the rear rank of the formed company, he will give the word *Halt,* proceeding nimbly to the formed flank in his front, and, without unnecessary pause, giving the word *Dress up,* correcting his men upon the serjeant and the battalion point.

The

The exact formation in this oblique line depends entirely upon the companies having wheeled (only) one half of the angle which the new position makes with the old one; for should they at first wheel the whole of that angle, they would be then marching parallel to that line, and arrive in it doubled behind each other; whereas, by having the other half of the wheel to complete, when they come near to the new position, each moves in a perpendicular direction, and vacates the ground required by the succeeding one to form upon.

In the formation of oblique lines from the echellon march, it is quite essential that the divisions should not be wheeled up parallel to the intended line, until the front rank man on the leading flank of each division shall be clear of the rear rank flank of the division formed before it; for if the wheel is made sooner, the flanks must more or less overlap, and crowding or shifting by an irregular movement must ensue, to gain the line. By the front rank of each echellon division halting in a line with the rear rank of the formed division, it will have one clear pace to dress up to the alignement.

S. 41. *When the Battalion changes Front on a fixed flank Company, by throwing backward the rest of the Battalion.*

CHANGE FRONT ON — COMPANY, RIGHT OR LEFT THROWN BACK.	The new position is given, and the flank company wheeled backwards into it.

The

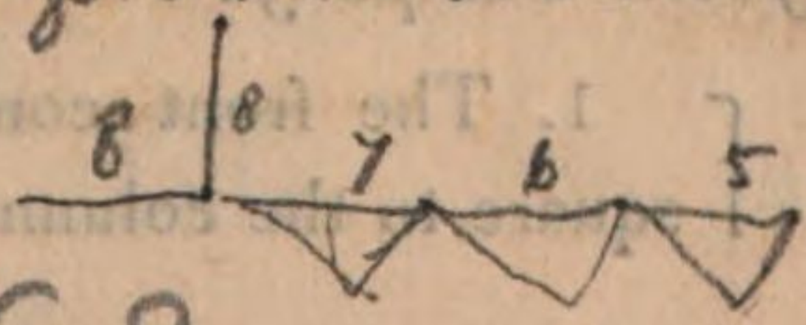
REMAINING COMPANIES, RIGHT ABOUT FACE. — PACES TO THE —— WHEEL, QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

The rest of the battalion FACES to the right about, the companies then wheel forward the given number of paces towards the standing flank.

MARCH. —*Shoulder forward. Halt, Front.* *Dress up.*

The companies MARCH with their rear ranks in front, the serjeants running out at the proper time as before, and will form in line in the same manner as when changing position forward; that is, when the officer of each shall see the proper front rank man of his leading flank clear of the rear rank man of the flank, on which he is to form, he will give the word *Shoulder forward,* wheeling past the covering serjeant, (a file giving way,) who had taken up the point of formation, and *halting* and *fronting* in the rear, with the front rank upon a line with the rear rank of the formed company as before; he remaining at the flank of appui, and giving, without unnecessary pause, the word *Dress up,* correcting his men upon the serjeant and battalion points.

Line wheel change to right on No 8
Remainder right about face - 8 paces
right wheel - quick march
halt front



S. 42.

Form line on No 8.
Left shoulders forward. halt front do

(*Plate* 21.)

S. 42. *When the Battalion changes Front on a Central Company, by advancing one Wing, and retiring the other.*

Fig. B. 1. The company (a) of the wing to be thrown back is wheeled backward, and the company of the wing (b) to be brought forward is wheeled forward; or a central company is wheeled upon its centre, into the new direction. Two points (d d) are quickly taken in the line, about where the flanks of the battalion are to extend, and in the line of the central company.

— WING, RIGHT ABOUT FACE. COMPANIES, —— PACES INWARDS WHEEL. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

The retiring wing (B) FACES about—both wings wheel their companies inwards and forwards, half as many paces (h) as the central companies had wheeled.

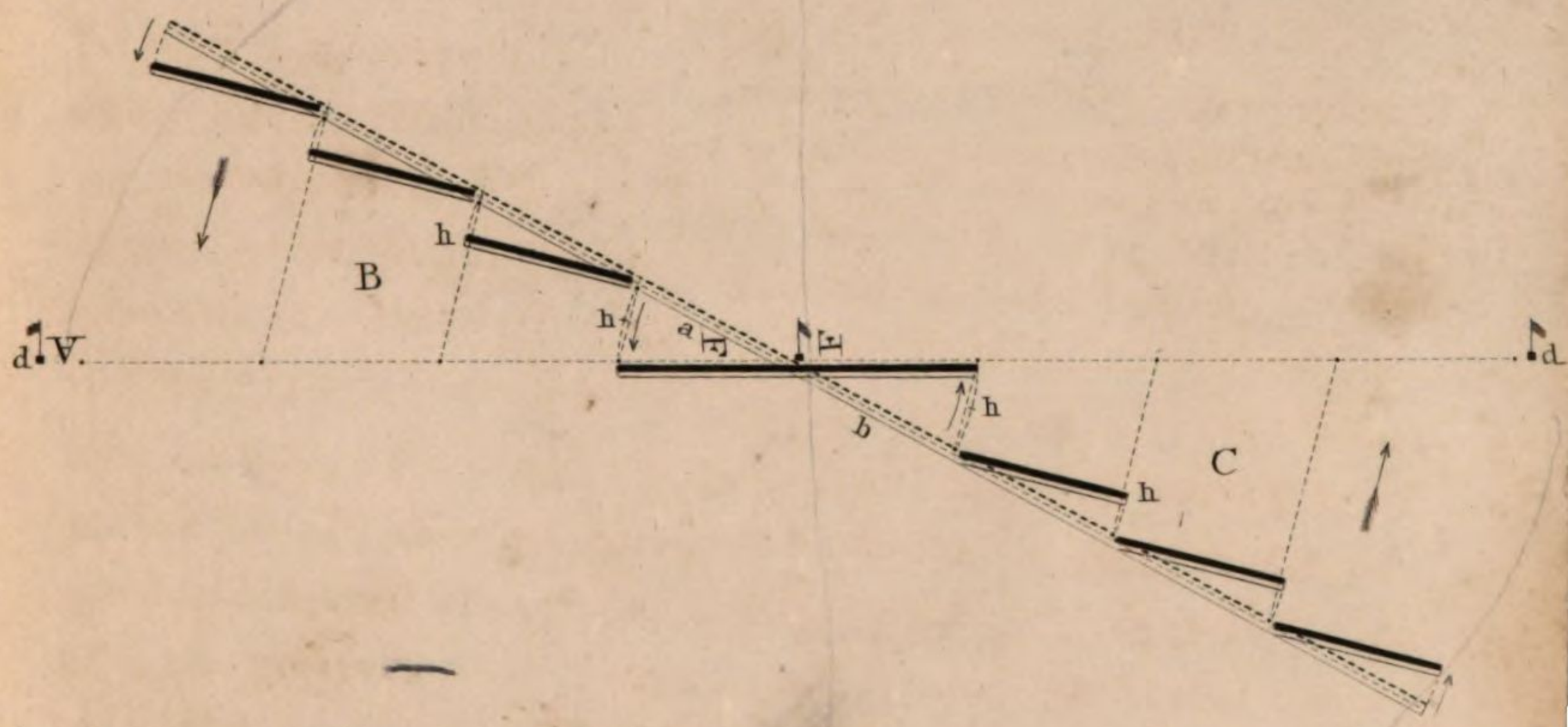
MARCH.

Fig. C. The whole MARCH forward into line with the central companies, the advancing wing (C) dressing up, and the retiring wing (B) fronting and also dressing up, as already directed in S. 40 and 41, Part III.

S. 43. *When, from open Column, the Companies wheel backward into Echellon, in order to form in Line on the front Company.*

1. The front company either remains square to the column, or is wheeled backward

A Battalion in Line changing Front on the Centre by Echellon.



ward into the intended direction of the line; and on the position given to it must depend the relative one which the other companies will take. If the front company remains square to the column, the remaining companies wheel backward on the reverse flank four paces, or the 8th of a circle; but if the direction be oblique, then the remaining companies wheel one-half the number of paces wheeled by the front company, in *addition* to the 8th of a circle. Thus, if the front company wheels 2 paces, the remainder wheel 5; if 4 paces, they wheel 6, and so on.

COMPANIES, — PACES ON THE — BACKWARD WHEEL.

On the CAUTION, that the companies, except the front one, will wheel back on the right or left so many paces, (and which wheel is always backwards, and always on the reverse flank of the column, as being that which afterwards first comes into line,) the officer moves to that flank, and the serjeant of each places himself with his back opposite to the centre of the 8th file of the rear rank, immediately takes his named paces, and halts, fronts, with his body turned in the line of the flank man on whom he wheeled. At the word QUICK MARCH, the company wheels back till the 8th file of the rear rank touches the breast of the serjeant, (who gives a low caution

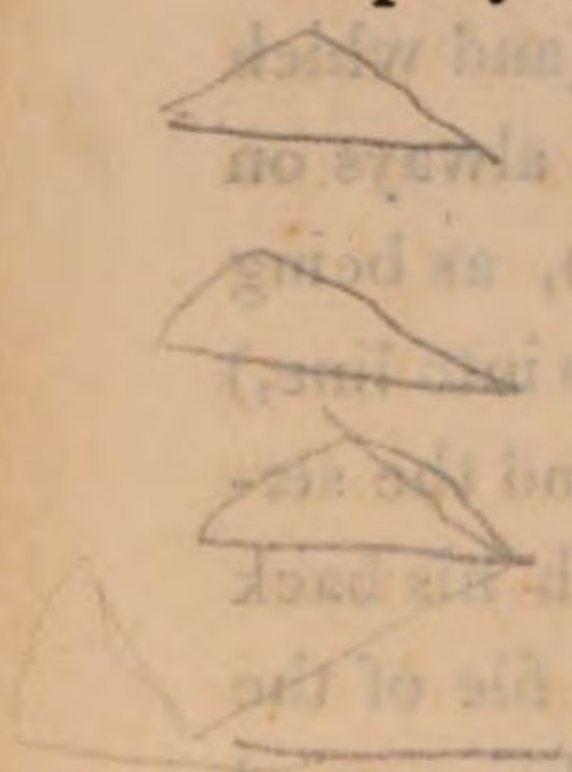
QUICK MARCH.

to

Halt, Dress. to halt); it is then halted and dressed by the officer from the standing flank, the serjeant places himself on the outward flank, and the whole are now in a situation to march forward, and form in the line on the head company, as in S. 41, Part III.

If the line be formed on the rear company of the column —that company will stand fast; the others will FACE ABOUT —wheel BACK on the pivot flanks of the column, as being those which afterwards first come into line—QUICK MARCH, and then *Halt, front*, successively in the line of the rear company.

3. *If the line be formed on the rear company, but facing to the rear*—the whole column will countermarch each company by files, and then proceed as in forming on a front company.



4. *If the line be formed on a central company of the column*, that company will stand fast. Those in front of it will FACE about. The whole, except the central company, will WHEEL back the 8th of a circle, or four paces: those in its front on the proper pivot flanks of the column, and those in its rear on the reverse flanks, such being the flanks that first arrive in line. The whole would then QUICK MARCH into line with the central company, as in S. 41 and 42, Part III. If the line is to be formed facing to the rear of the column, the

the divisions will countermarch, and the new front will be thrown back, and the rear forward, as before.

S. 44. *When, from Line, the Companies of a Battalion march off in Echellon, successively and directly to the Front, and again form in Line, either to the Front, or to the Flank.*

ADVANCE IN DIRECT ECHELLON OF COMPANIES FROM THE RIGHT OR LEFT.

1. *So long as the intention is to form to the front*—The companies may march off at any named distance whatever behind each other, and when the leading division *Halts*, the others may move on, and dress in line with it.

(*Plate 22.*)

Fig. B.

Fig. C.

2. *But when it is the intention to form line to the flank*—If the echellon be formed at regular distances, the divisions of which it is composed may wheel to the right or left (according to which flank is in front), thus placing the rear division of the echellon (b) in advance, and the whole may successively form line upon any named division (b) perpendicular to the former front. If, from the direct echellon, it be required to form an oblique line, the directing flank of the leading division will be considered the first point in the intended line, and its precise direction will be established,

by

by placing another point (a) beyond and before it. The covering serjeants will run out upon the caution, and take up the line of covering from the echellon flanks, at distances (s s) equal to the extent of the division which respectively precedes them. The rear companies will then be moved by the diagonal march (c x) upon their respective serjeants; or if the line is taken up more to the flank, they will be conducted by the combined application of filing (x s) and the diagonal march (c x) to those serjeants, halted and fronted (s s) square to their former front; and the oblique line is formed by the wheel back of each company on the established echellon flanks; or when the companies are thus placed, the whole may be put in march to the front, HALT, and WHEEL backward into line at some more advanced point.

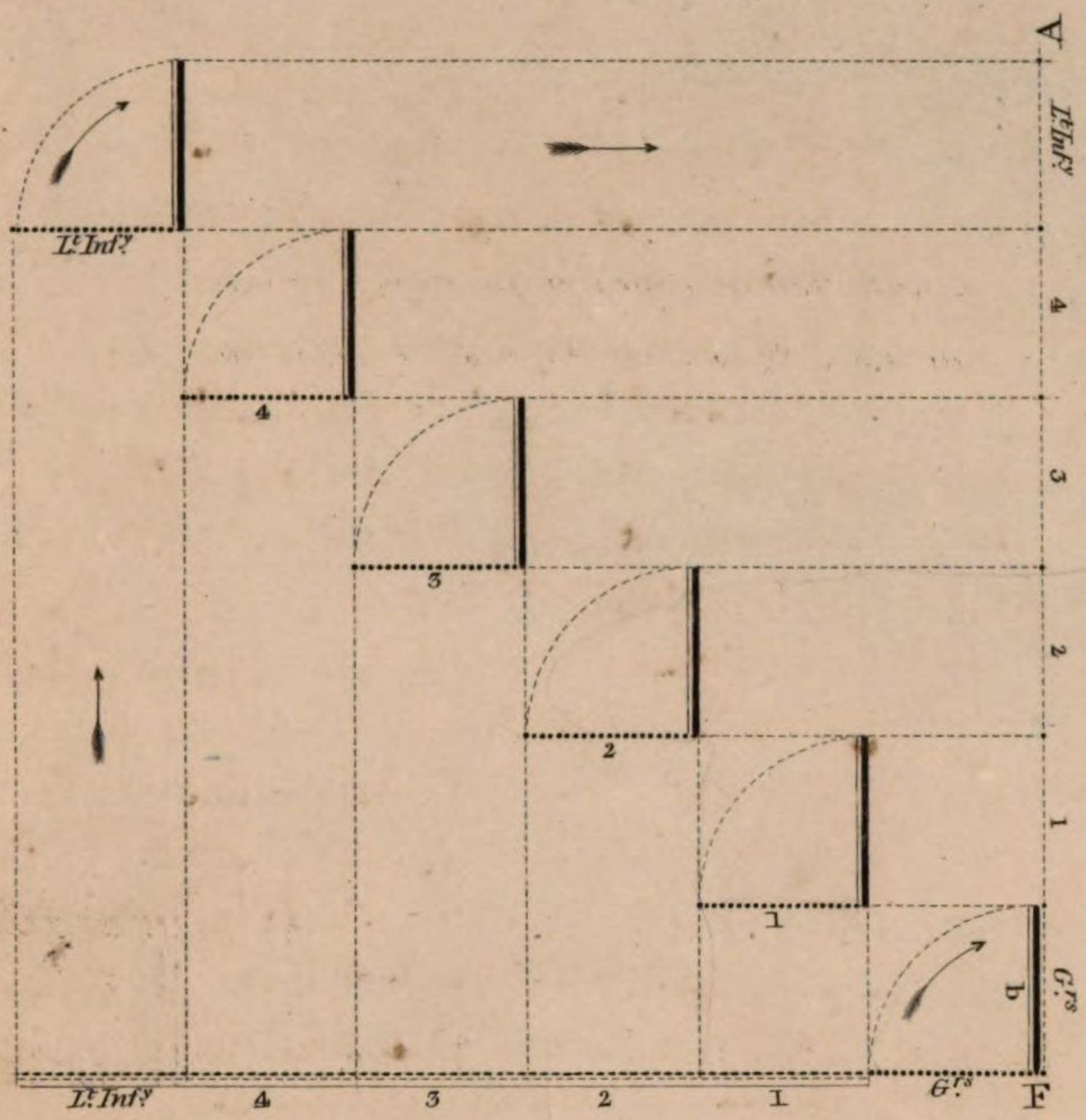
Fig. D.

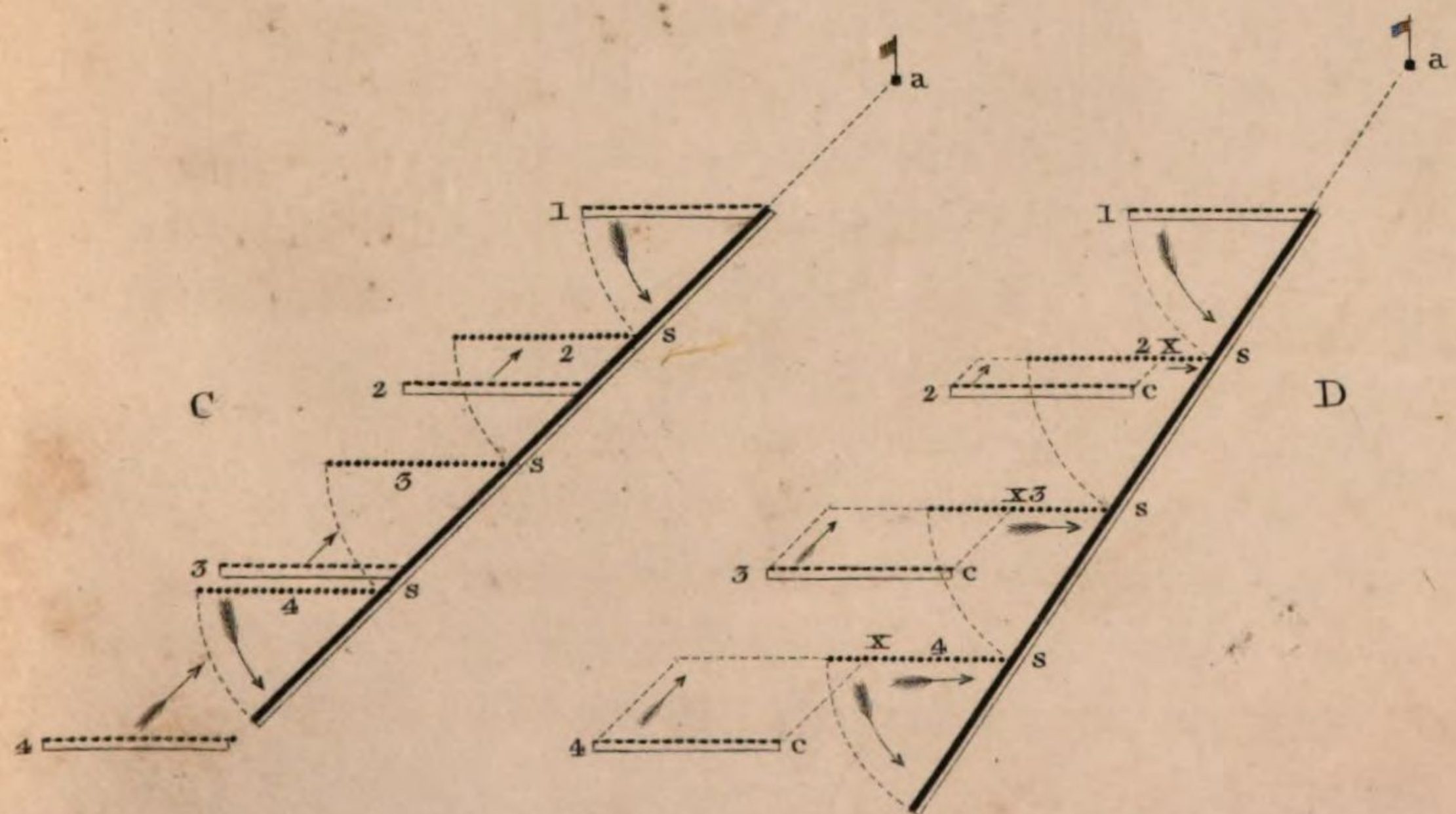
3. *If a column is to be formed to the flank from a direct echellon,* the covering serjeants will of course take up the proper pivot points from the leading division, and those in the rear will move by threes into the alignement.

In direct echellon of companies from the left, the commander of the left company (as well as the leaders of the other companies) shifts to the left flank of his company. The colours are in rear of the right flank of the left centre company, if the movement is from the left, and *vice versâ,* if from the right.

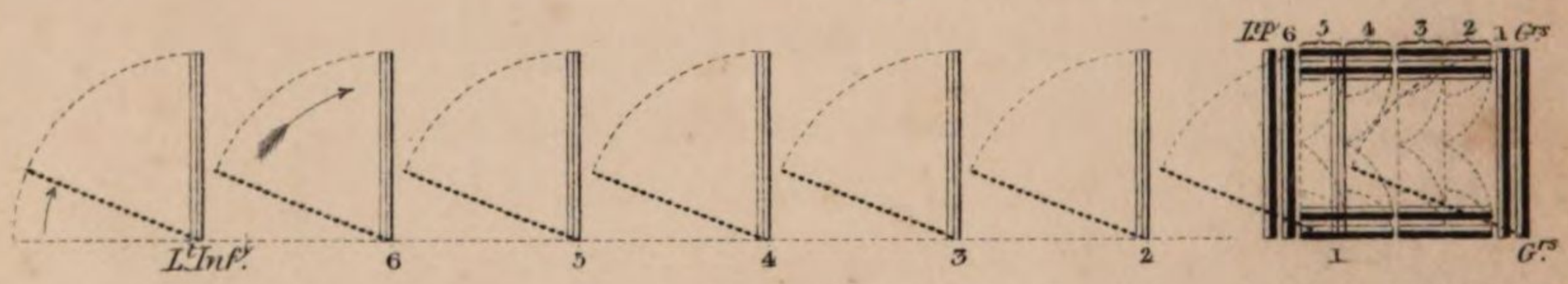
S. 45.

A Battalion in direct Echellon forming Line to a Flank.





A Battalion in Echellon forming Column and then Square on the Leading Division.



(*Plate* 23.)

S. 45. *When a Battalion in Echellon of Companies, halted, or in motion, is required to form Square.*

COMPANIES, RIGHT (OR LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD. FORWARD. FORM SQUARE.

The commanding officer will give the word COMPANIES RIGHT (or LEFT) SHOULDERS FORWARD, and when the divisions are in open column, FORWARD, FORM SQUARE; and the formation will proceed as directed in S. 29, Part III.

S. 46. *When a Battalion marching in Line is to take ground to a Flank by the Echellon Movement of Sub-divisions or Sections.*

SUB-DIVISIONS, OR SECTIONS, RIGHT OR LEFT.

1. On the word, SUB-DIVISIONS, or SECTIONS, RIGHT or LEFT, the pivot men of the front rank of each, turning in a small degree to the pivot hand, mark the time for two paces during which the named divisions wheel on those men, and the 3 files of the colours and centre serjeants also wheel up as a division, parallel to the others. At the third pace, and at the word FORWARD, the whole move on direct to the front which each division has acquired, the position of leaders being as already described.

FORWARD.

RE-FORM LINE.

2. When sufficient ground has been taken to the flank, on the word RE-FORM LINE, the pivot men mark the time for

two

FORWARD. HALT.

two paces, turning back to their original front; the sub-divisions or sections instantly wheel backward into line, without altering the time, and at the third pace the whole step on, having received the word FORWARD, till the battalion is ordered to halt.

FORM LINE ON THE LEADING DIVISION. HALT.

3. When sufficient ground has been taken in echellon to a flank, and a forward formation of the line is to be made, the head division is wheeled up two paces more and halted. The rest of the battalion receives a CAUTION to form on the head division, and proceeds as directed in S. 40, Part III.

In taking ground to a flank, as above directed, it must depend upon the strength of the sub-division, or section, that wheels up, and upon the angle that it is desired to take from the former front, whether the movement ought to be performed by sub-divisions or by sections:—thus a section of nine files that wheels up two paces, will stand at an angle of about nineteen degrees with its former front, while a section of five files that wheels up two paces, will stand at an angle of about thirty-four degrees. According to the strength, therefore, of the division that thus wheels, will be the degree of obliquity taken from the former position. If, therefore, a small degree is to be taken, the line may wheel forward by companies; if a greater, by sub-divisions, and if a greater still, by sections.

Skeleton

Skeleton or Rope Drill.

It has frequently occurred that young officers and non-commissioned officers have, from the want of men, or from the severity of garrison duty, been deprived of opportunities of acquiring a thorough knowledge of their battalion drill.

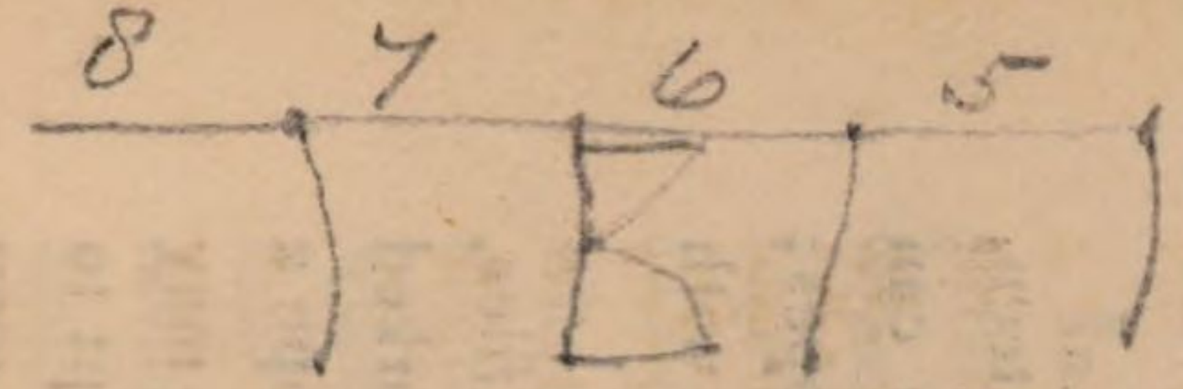
To obviate this, and to provide for the due instruction of the young officer and non-commissioned officer, *in all cases and under all circumstances*, the following system of *Skeleton* or *Rope Drill* is introduced, by means of which, they may, without harassing the soldier, be made practically versant in the command of a company, while the serjeant may acquire that promptitude and accuracy in giving points and taking up covering, without which no regiment can move correctly.

Commanding officers are therefore strictly enjoined to follow the practice herein prescribed, from which the very best effects will be found to result.

A battalion of eight divisions may be formed by sixteen, thirty-two, or sixty-four men. With sixteen men there can only be division ropes, and with thirty-two sub-division ropes; but with sixty-four men, there can be section ropes, with which every movement may be practised.

The ropes may be made to represent any number of files, the space for each (namely twenty-one inches) being marked by a small piece of red cloth, and to the end of each rope a small piece of wood must be attached, so that the men may hold it; and care must be taken that they are always kept to their full extent. By means of these ropes a battalion may practise the whole of the movements of a brigade.

END OF PART III.



from Dept of Companies by
Files to the Head

on the Left Centre
Company - form square
Inwards Turn
6 & 5 upon ge
to wheeling distance -
Front Turn

Also vice versâ

PART IV.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

FOR THE

MOVEMENTS OF THE BRIGADE OR LINE.

A BATTALION may be considered to hold in a line the relative situation of a company in a battalion; and it will be found, that the chief part of the General Principles laid down in Part III., for the movements of the battalion, has necessarily embraced a more extended application to the movements of a brigade or line: it must thus follow, that a careful study of the sections of which the Battalion General Principles are composed, will qualify an officer for their application to more extended bodies; and therefore the inconvenience of repetition may be avoided in the following sections, where such general principles only will be treated on as have not been provided for in the Battalion Principles, and which exclusively appertain to the movements of greater bodies.

S. 1. *Formation and Distances.*

1. Great bodies of troops are formed into one or more lines; each line is divided into right and left wings; each wing is divided into divisions; each division into brigades; and each brigade into two, three, or four battalions.

Distances in line.

2. Battalions are to be formed in line at the distance of six paces from each other: no increased distance need be allowed between brigades.

Contiguous columns.

3. Contiguous columns, are columns in line, with intervals of six paces between battalions. This is the *minimum* distance at which columns may be formed; but the intervals between columns in line may vary from six paces to deploying distance, according to circumstances and the discretion of the commander.

Distances in open column.

4. When divisions or brigades are formed in open column of route or manœuvre, the distances between battalions should be equal to the front of the column and the six paces which separate battalions when they wheel up into line: and the leading company of each battalion should therefore preserve the latter distance, in addition to that of its own front.

Distances between battalions in column at quarter distance.

5. When a column of route or manœuvre is formed in mass at quarter distance, the distance between battalions will be twelve paces, in order to leave room for the leading division of each battalion to advance six paces, to facilitate the wheel into contiguous columns: (Vide S. 4, No. 2, Part IV.)

Distance in close column.

6. The distances between battalions, when formed in mass, will always be six paces.

7. The base and distant points of all brigade formations will be given by staff-officers. All points of entry for columns to march upon, will be taken up by field-officers. In formation of lines, by deployment and echellon, and also in the formation

tion of a line of columns, the adjutants of battalions will mark the outer flank of each, in order to connect battalion with battalion in their true prolongation. It is to be understood, therefore, as a general rule, that the inward flanks and the distances between battalions in line shall be marked by field-officers from the adjutant of the formed battalion. In the case of a formation by the double column, the field-officer who, as before directed, marks the point of entry, is also responsible for the distance of the inner wing of his own battalion. Mounted officers giving points will leave their battalions for that purpose when within 150 yards of the new alignement, and they may quit their stations as soon as their respective battalions are formed, taking care, however, that two mounted officers are, invariably, left on the line of elongation. In order that mounted officers may give their essential assistance to battalion commanders, they should always be ready to arrange these points with activity and intelligence.

Points of entry and formation in column and in line.

8. In all changes of position in column, officers must, when necessary, shift their pivots to the inner flank, or that which is nearest to the point of formation, without any regard to which flank of the column may be in front.

Officers to shift to the inner flank, in changes of position in column.

S. 2. Commands.

1. All cautions from a commander of brigade or division are instantly to be repeated by battalion

lion commanders in an audible voice; and, on the caution, all interior movements of battalions will be made, so that the whole may be ready to step off at the executive command, which each battalion receives, on all occasions, from its own leader. It is of the first importance that all words of command to a division or brigade should be circulated with the utmost precision and rapidity, for which essential purpose the eye and attention of each battalion leader must be constantly directed to the commanding general, or to the regulating battalion, when he cannot be heard. The general commanding must give his short orders of caution to the commander of the regulating battalion, or to whatever battalion is nearest to himself, in such terms as may not be mistaken by the soldiers for a battalion order. The battalion commander will proceed without delay to execute the order in the usual terms of command, and in so loud a tone of voice as to be heard by the contiguous battalions.

2. The execution of a command may be regulated by a signal, such as a bugle, or any other method for effecting simultaneous movement, which the commanding general, at his discretion, may fix upon.

3. Where the wind, or the noise of fire-arms, may interrupt the progress of an order from battalion to battalion, the commanders will conform as quickly as possible to the movement which they see executed to their right or left; and staff-officers will proceed promptly to convey the general's orders to the corps which, from these causes

may

may not have heard them pass from the regulating battalion. For this essential purpose staff-officers may be attached, to carry orders to particular bodies, so as to prevent the possibility of confusion; and where they are not in sufficient numbers, the different field-officers of regiments, who may be placed at intermediate stations, will assist in passing the order from one battalion commander to another: but great care must be taken by those who pass an order, that they have properly understood it themselves, for much mischief and confusion might arise from a multifarious communication of orders imperfectly delivered; and to prevent this the more effectually, it may be, in certain cases, expedient to send the command by a staff-officer, in writing.

4. When troops in extent of numbers are at all beyond the immediate control of the voice, it is particularly essential that the commands to HALT, or to MARCH, should be communicated by a signal, upon which the battalion commanders may act simultaneously; for the accuracy of combined movement would be totally lost, if the different bodies in line, or in column, be suffered to march, or to halt, as their respective commanders may catch the word in its approach from a distant quarter.

S. 3. *The March in Line.*

General intentions.

1. The chief object of every other movement is the quick and just formation into line when necessary, and the consequent advance of that line in front

front towards the enemy. If the correct march of a single battalion requires so much attention and precision, it is evident, that these must be redoubled to procure the just movement of a line, which is the operation that immediately leads to the enemy, and is the most difficult, and material, of all manœuvres. To hurry and bring up troops to attack in imperfect order, is to lose every advantage which discipline proposes, and to present them to the enemy in that very state, to which, after his best efforts, he has hoped to reduce them.

2. The same principles that direct the march of the battalion, direct that of the line; besides which, several peculiar observances are required, and in proportion as difficulties increase, must attention be given.

Justness of the line.

3. No body of troops can advance in line with firmness and order, unless the original formation of that line has been perfectly straight, and its correct preservation during the march requires every attention.

Cadence.

4. The cadence of the march is not to be altered by particular battalions, but, when it is necessary, each will lengthen or shorten its step by word from its own commander.

Attentions.

5. The march, and halt, and attention, in line of the officers and men of each battalion, are by its own centre; the commander alone regards the regulating battalion. Dressing to a flank is by a separate direction, and given when necessary and proper after halting.

6. Battalions

March.

6. Battalions in line, marching over heights or across valleys, will require more time to pass them than others who are moving on the same extent, but of level ground; in order to preserve equality of front, the last must, therefore, in general, be ordered to shorten their step.

General pace.

7. The pace at which lines will advance must depend upon circumstances and the nature of the ground, and is therefore only to be determined by the general commanding on the spot.

Regulating Battalions.

8. One of the battalions is named as a regulating one, to whose movements all the rest are to conform. The directing serjeants of the regulating battalion are the guide by which the perpendicular direction of the whole line will be conducted. Their squareness of front being once established, as pointed out in S. 3, Part III., they will remark some near points to march upon, for they must not look out for distant ones, but take such as accidentally occur on the ground: those of the battalion of direction are not liable to be altered; but all the others are to be considered only as relative helps to begin the march, subordinate to those of the regulating battalion, and liable to be changed from the instant that they appear, to the commander of the battalion, to produce a movement which does not correspond to that of the regulating battalion, whose march is here supposed to be accurate.

9. It is indispensable that the march of the regulating

regulating battalion should be conducted with the utmost exactness; it is the helm that guides the line, and its accuracy of movement must be regarded by the other battalions as infallible. The commander of this battalion will devote his whole attention to preserve it in the true direction indicated to him by the general commanding: from the moment that its direction is ascertained, the commander and directing serjeants of every other battalion are to consider their movements as subordinate to it, and to conform accordingly; it must preserve an unvaried cadence and length of step, which nothing but unavoidable necessity should interrupt. Near points in the true perpendicular direction must be renewed by the centre serjeant as often as required; for from the circumstances in which lines must generally be expected to move, such as thick weather, smoke of cannon, dust, &c. it is evident that distant objects of march cannot be looked for, or taken up, nor any other observed, than such as are near and derived from the eye, and the squareness of the body moving upon them.

10. The commander of each battalion is ten paces behind the rear rank, in the file of the directing serjeant, to cover and guide his movement: a mounted officer is behind either flank.

11. The instant communication of the word MARCH to all the battalions of a line, is most important to enable the advanced serjeants of the whole to step off together, and thereby to maintain their line parallel to the one they quitted.

12. As

12. As the flanks of battalions are apt to be behind their centres, the mounted officers, stationed there, will particularly attend to this, and also the flank officer of each battalion, who, being unconfined in their persons, may preserve themselves in the general line of the colours.

S. 4. Wheeling of Columns.

1. The wheel of columns, according to the principle explained in S. 10, No. 5 and 6, Part III., is essentially useful, when applied to the different battalions composing a division or brigade, in order to effect a rapid change of formation or position.

Wheel of a mass of columns into a line of contiguous columns.

2. A mass of columns may always wheel into a line of contiguous columns, giving them the respective distances between battalions of twelve and six paces, according as the columns may be at quarter or close distance, (Vide S. 1, No. 5 and 6, Part IV.). This can be effected without difficulty, because in the wheel, which should always be made simultaneously, each battalion removes its depth from the one which is wheeling in its rear, still preserving the relative distances between battalions, provided they are of equal strength.

Wheel of a line of contiguous columns into a mass of columns.

3. A line of contiguous columns at quarter distance, can *never* be wheeled by battalions into a mass of columns, because the depth of each must wheel round upon the pivot of the battalion on the right or left: but this wheel is always practicable for battalion close columns, while the breadth of each

each column (that is, its front,) is equal in extent to its depth.

4. When it is necessary therefore to wheel contiguous columns at quarter distance into mass, (or close columns, whose depth exceeds their breadth of front,) it can only be done by opening to a distance sufficient to admit the wheel.

5. In changes of front to a flank of contiguous close columns (whose front is equal to their depth), the battalion upon which the change is to be effected, will wheel at once into the new direction; the other battalions move forward at the same time, and after gaining the six paces of interval from the battalions, on their inward flanks, they wheel in succession, and move up into their places in the new line. Quarter distance columns, previous to such change of front, may close to their front, and proceed as above directed. But when deemed expedient that the contiguous quarter distance columns should change their front without closing, or when contiguous battalion close columns are not of a sufficient breadth to admit of wheeling on their own ground, the change of front must be effected by the battalions advancing in direct echellon from the reverse flank, preserving between each the distances as above prescribed. They should be halted at the point where line is to be formed, and wheeled inwards by battalions, which changes the front of the echellon, placing the former rear battalion in advance, and the line of columns will then be formed upon it.

6. In

Base Points. 6. In all formation of lines of contiguous columns upon any fixed battalion, by the operation of the wheel, countermarch, or otherwise, base points must be established in front of the flanks of the leading division of the named battalion, which will be taken up successively by the other battalions, according to the detail pointed out in S. 7, No. 7, Part III. It must be borne in mind, as a general principle, that whenever any body is named as an appui of a formation, it will always throw out these base points without waiting for specific instructions to that effect.

S. 5. *Column of Route.*

1. The instructions laid down in S. 9, Part III., from paragraphs 23 to 25, for the march of a column, apply in an equal degree to considerable columns of route consisting of several battalions; for the greater the force, the more essential it becomes to preserve the regularity of movement, which is equally conducive to military success, as to the protection of the soldier from the fatigue of harassing efforts to regain lost distances, &c. A compact and well-regulated order of march, without straggling, forms a great criterion of the discipline of an army, and of the efficiency of its officers.

2. In all route marching, the baggage should be in the rear. No impediments whatever should be permitted in the line of march, except the cannon, which will generally be formed between the

the divisions or brigades of an army. When the admission of a portion of the baggage of an army into the line of march becomes unavoidable, it should be placed between the brigades, but never between battalions of a brigade.

Original front to be preserved.

3. The preservation of the original front of a column is of great importance: unnecessary doublings should therefore be avoided; and when absolutely required, the original front of march should be resumed the moment the impediment has been passed.

Defiling to be prevented or executed by word of command.

4. No battalion, company, or section is at any time to defile, or diminish its front, or attempt in any way to avoid any bad spot in the road, unless the preceding battalion or company has done so.

5. Whenever defiling is necessary, it must be executed with order and precision, as in manœuvring at a field day, by the proper words of command, preceded by the word *Attention*.

6. When a battalion or company comes to a defilé, stream, or bad place of the road, where it might appear to the men to be more convenient to defile individually, the officers must be on the alert to prevent it.

7. Whenever a stream, ditch, bank, or other obstacle is to be crossed, it will be generally found, that instead of defiling or diminishing the front, the very contrary should be done; not only by causing the files of each section to extend gradu-

ally

ally before they arrive at the ditch, or obstacle, but even by forming sub-divisions or companies.

8. When a bad place is to be passed, the majors and captains will go to the head of their respective wings, and companies, to see it regularly executed, if ordered. They will remain at the spot till the whole of their wings or companies have passed, and then will resume their stations in the rear.

9. It is proved that the defiling of one battalion on the march, even if done with as much promptitude as is practicable on such occasions, will cause a delay of ten minutes; one such obstacle, if not passed without defiling, would therefore delay a brigade half an hour: and in the winter, when obstacles of this kind are frequent, and the days short, a brigade, which is constantly defiling without cause, will arrive at its quarters in the dark: whereas, if it had performed the march regularly, it would have got in by good time.

10. This rule respecting defiling is therefore as much calculated to provide for the personal ease and comfort of the men, as it is essential for the due performance of the movements of an army.

Hurry and stepping out to be prevented.

11. It is of the greatest importance that the men should not on any account be hurried on the march; they are to be instructed, that they are never to step out beyond the regular step, still less to run, unless by word of command.

12. When the proper distances of companies, or sections, cannot be preserved without an alteration in

in the step, it must always be effected by making the head of each battalion or company step short, instead of allowing the others to step out.

13. When the head of a company, suppose No. 4, cannot keep up without overstepping or leaving its own sections at too great a distance, the officer commanding it will forward the notice, to the head of the battalion, by the serjeants on the flanks of the leading sections, of the companies in front of No. 4, until it comes up to the commanding officer, who will of course shorten the step at the head of the column, unless he perceives that some obstacle, ascent, or difficult ground in front, will give time to No. 4 to close up; in the mean time No. 4, if no answer is returned to the notice of its having increased distance, will continue at the regular step.

14. In like manner, if the head of a battalion cannot keep up with the preceding battalion, the commanding officer will forward the notice to the head of the brigade, detaching files at the same time, to preserve the communication with the preceding battalion.

15. When obstacles which delay the march are frequent, it may be desirable, or necessary, in order to avoid loss of time, that each company, after passing, should march on at the usual rate, without shortening its step, as the following company may overtake it at the next obstacle or ascent; but it can never be necessary, and must never be suffered, that

that the leading section of a company should march on, until the rear section has completely passed and closed up; the intervals between companies may be occasionally increased with advantage and without disorder, but unless each company in itself be kept compact, disorder and disorganization will ensue.

The Halt. 16. Whenever the bugles sound the halt, the head of each battalion is to stand fast, even although it should not be closed up to the preceding one; but the following divisions of each battalion must close up to half or quarter distance, unless the column is entering an alignement, or making any other movement preparatory to a formation to a flank.

17. When it is intended that the whole should close up, the head will be halted without sound of bugle, and the word of command, *Quarter*, *Half*, or *Wheeling* distance, will be passed from front to rear; and when the rear is closed up, the bugle of the rear battalion will sound the halt as a notice.

18. A body of troops which has a considerable march to make, will generally approach an enemy in one or more columns, at open or other distances, according to circumstances. Some general knowledge of an enemy's situation must determine the manner in which he is to be approached, the composition of the columns, the flank of each which leads, and their combination in forming: a nearer view may determine a perseverance in the first direction, or a change in the leading flanks and

direction of the columns, in order to form in the speediest and most advantageous manner.

Importance of exactness in the march.

19. The success of military operations frequently depends upon the well combined march of columns upon their several points of direction; and unless the greatest exactness is preserved in a column of route, no calculation can be made upon the time when a force, consisting of several detached columns, may concentrate at a given point, for a particular purpose. This exact movement of columns to the point of concentration is of the first importance in all military enterprises, particularly in all great movements of advance to attack, or to gain a particular position; and the utmost attention is required from all the component parts of an army, to support the regularity which is essential to effect this combination of movement.

20. During a march to the front, some one column should determine the relative situation of the others, upon the principle of the regulating column in manœuvre: but the separation of columns may unavoidably be considerable according to the roads, or the means which the face of the country affords for their respective advances: as they approach the enemy, however, they must be so regulated, and directed, as to occupy the intermediate spaces when required to form

General objects in marches to the rear.

21. The safety of marches to the rear must depend on particular dispositions, and on the judicious choice of such posts as will check the pursuit of the

the enemy. In these marches to front and rear, the divisions of a second line generally follow or lead those of the first, and all their formations are relative to them; but the disposition on these occasions must depend on local and temporary circumstances, which govern the discretion of the commander.

S. 6. *Echellon of the Line.*

1. Echellon formations and movements are conducted in a considerable line upon the principles laid down in Part III.: they are calculated to place a great corps in an advantageous position to gain an enemy's flank; and sometimes they are formed with effect from the centre of a line, by refusing each wing. If an attack made by an advanced corps of a great echellon be effectual, each succeeding one moves up to improve the advantage: but if it fails, the succeeding bodies are in a situation to protect the retreat; and in gradually retiring upon each other, they afford a mutual aid and support.

Direct echellons.

2. Direct echellons are formed by the successive advance of brigades, battalions, or half battalions from either flank, or from the centre of a line; or by columns placed in readiness for deployment in echellon parallel to the enemy's position; and in both cases, the distances of at least half their front, will be preserved between the echellons, in order to give sufficient room for the mutual protection of flanking squares, when such formation is required.

Oblique echellon.

3. A line is thrown into oblique echellon for the purpose of gaining ground to a flank, and as this is a movement that contemplates the presence of an enemy, it will be effected in echellon of companies (Vide S. 37, Part III.), as that which deviates least from the line formation, which can at any moment be resumed by halting and wheeling the companies back upon their pivots, (Vide S. 38, Part III.) These echellons appear, at a distance, as if a full line; being short and independent lines, the flank movement may be made almost imperceptibly to an enemy.

4. When the object is to gain an enemy's flank the whole line is thrown into echellon from the flank opposed to that of the enemy, which it is intended to attack or turn; care being taken that the outer flanks of the echellon are protected in such advances from the enfilade of the enemy. When it is necessary to refuse a flank attacked by an enemy, the line will be partially thrown into echellon direct to the rear, to cover one's own flank: but when the enemy's attack upon such flank is repulsed, a counter attack may be made upon him to advantage, by an echellon movement from the other flank.

5. When the flank of a line is refused by the partial retreat of echellon battalions in this manner, the retreat, to the extent it is intended to refuse the line, should be made (if possible) upon a strongly-posted flank, from which the fire of artillery could enfilade the advancing enemy.

6. In

6. In an open country, echellon movements to attack or to gain a flank are attended with difficulty and hazard, when the enemy is in a position from whence he can observe the intention: advantage must therefore be taken of local circumstances that afford the means of partial concealment, or points of appui for the attacking body. All echellon movements against an enemy should therefore be masked, particularly on the reverse flanks, by such local advantages as the nature of the country may furnish.

7. Oblique echellons move by their directing flank: direct echellons of battalions move by their centre serjeants; and each direct echellon of more than one battalion will move in line, or column, by its own regulating battalion, which should always be the one next to the directing flank of the general echellon.

Application of the oblique and direct echellons.

8. The oblique echellon, *formed from line*, can never safely exceed an echellon of companies; for, as lines invariably suppose contact with the enemy, it would evidently be hazardous to present the flanks of an oblique echellon composed of large divisions of the line to a posted or attacking enemy. The oblique echellon may, however, always be applied to quarter distance columns, for the purpose of placing a great corps in a favourable position for making or repelling an attack. Direct echellons, whether of lines or columns, may be composed of small

small or large bodies moving in concert, according to circumstances, and the object contemplated: the chief precaution to be observed is, that the different parts of the echellon are never so far separated as to prevent their mutually supporting each other.

9. It may therefore be assumed as a principle, that great echellon movements, preparatory to action, and previous to coming under the fire of artillery, will be made in quarter-distance columns; and that echellon movements of the line, when under fire, will be made either in oblique echellon of companies, or in direct echellon.

10. The attacks of armies are almost always conducted on the principles of the echellon. There are few situations where the whole could act at the same time, or where it would be prudent or eligible so to do. Echellons are therefore formed for offensive operations, by fractions or parts of a whole mutually supporting and co-operating with each other.

S. 7. *Movements in general.*

General rule for changes of position of the line.

1. Changes of front and of position of considerable lines are, according to circumstances, effected by the echellon march of companies when under fire; and

and by battalion quarter-distance columns when not under fire, or when threatened with cavalry. For all distant changes of position the quarter-distance column, formed either on a flank or on the centre sub-divisions, of battalions, will be found in general the most compact and eligible formation; and even in changes of front upon a fixed division of an extended line, it will most frequently be found expedient to move the flank battalions of the line into the new alignement in quarter-distance columns, even when the battalion of formation and those near to it effect their change of front in echellon. Upon the principles here laid down, all changes of position of THE LINE will be effected; and there are few situations in which they will not be found the best adapted to the purpose: but under peculiar circumstances, where it may be found impracticable for portions of the line to get into the new alignement in echellon, or in column for deployment, the application of the flank march of companies, as instructed in the Battalion movements, may always be resorted to. Points in the new line must invariably be ascertained and fixed in due time, upon which the leading company of each battalion is to enter.

Special attentions.

2. In all movements the chief objects to be borne in mind are, the exact uniformity of cadence and length of step throughout all the battalions of a line, and the correct adjustment of distances and points

points of march and formation by staff-officers, field-officers, and adjutants.

Inversion of columns or lines consisting of several battalions.

3. Great celerity is given to the movements of extensive bodies by the application of battalion movements on their own ground, so as to invert the order of a brigade or division: this inversion can never be attended with any embarrassment or confusion; and a change of front to the rear can by this means be accomplished in an extensive line, or in line of contiguous columns, in the same lapse of time as in a single battalion.

Regulating body of movement.

4. All movements, whether in line or in line of columns, are regulated by a battalion on either flank, or in the centre. In the advance of columns in line, the head of each (whether they are double or single columns) must conform to the regulating column; and, when at deploying distance, field-officers must give their special attention that distances for deployment are accurately preserved from the regulating column, whose march will be conducted upon successive points taken up by staff-officers from the proper pivot flank. When columns in line are halted, the regulating column will immediately throw out base points for the correction of the heads of columns, and to be in readiness for deployment into line: if the object is merely to preserve a correct order of march, without pressing upon the ordered intervals, a regu-

lating

lating battalion should be named from the centre; but if to make an attack, the regulating battalion should be named from the flank which, being nearest to the enemy, is to give the appui.

Advance and retreat of alternate bodies.

5. The movements of advance and retreat by alternate bodies are performed in a considerable line either by brigades, battalions, or half battalions, according to the principles laid down for the battalion, in S. 17, Part III.; the distances between each alternate body being arranged according to circumstances, and the nature of ground. In retiring, one body will protect the retreat of another, either by its number or its position; and when the enemy presses hard, the retreating or rear line will front and form in the intervals of the first; the whole to be supported by the reserve. In proportion as the ground narrows, different parts of the corps must double; defilés and advantageous posts must be possessed; and by degrees, the respective bodies must diminish their front, and throw themselves into column of march, when it can be done with safety.

6. The retreat by alternate battalions, or half battalions, may be found useful in retiring a line across a plain, one part being put in motion, while the other remains halted to cover it in retrograding. The distance, which the alternate lines will successively retire, must depend on circumstances, but it should rarely exceed two hundred yards, in order

to

to afford mutual protection and support, and to ensure a continued and steady resistance to the enemy. The intervals will be occupied by light infantry, and the flanks, of the two outward battalions should be protected by wheeling back their flank companies for that purpose. That division of the line, which first retires, will move by a directing battalion, and any faults in the halt of the line should be corrected before the other division arrives at it. The next retiring division marches direct upon the intervals, which serve as a guide for its movement and direction.

Refusing a flank by alternate bodies.

7. If a flank is threatened while retiring in alternate lines, that flank should always be refused by the retreat of alternate battalions, commencing with the one upon the threatened flank. The second division of the line retiring in its turn, will halt in the intervals of the first instead of passing through them; so that by continuing the retreat with the threatened flank always refused, an oblique line can be readily formed to that flank to repel attack. But if the whole line be formed when a flank is threatened, and a gradual retreat of the whole force be not called for, such flank should be refused to an enemy by retiring in direct echellon of battalions, or half battalions, to the extent that may be necessary; which leaves each body free, either to form line to repel attack, by a counter one, or to form squares, if the enemy's flanking force consist of cavalry.

8. In

8. In all retreats of alternate bodies, on any ground other than a plain, the great object and endeavour of a commander will naturally be to avail himself of every advantage that the country may offer—posting a portion of his troops upon any height, or in any favourable position, that may, from time to time, present itself, always, as far as possible, guarding against such a division or separation of his force as would interfere with the principles of co-operation. But in this, as in all other cases of extended operations in the field, no fixed rules can provide for the varied and ever-changing circumstances that must attend them. Troops are taught to execute every movement that can be required of them: the application of these movements can only be determined on the spot, according to the nature of the country, and the strength and dispositions of the enemy.

Second lines.

9. The movements of a second line must correspond with those of the first, from which it will always preserve its parallelism and distance. If the first line makes a flank or central change of front, the second must make a change also on such points as will bring it into its relative position.

Distance between lines.

10. Such a distance should be preserved between lines, as may secure the second from any liability to disorder, by the unforeseen retreat of a first line; and, in general, the distance between lines may be equal to the front of two battalions.

11. It

11. It must not be supposed that second lines, though so called, are therefore to remain extended; they will generally be formed in column of battalions at quarter distance, and always move in that order.

12. The officer commanding the second line must always be properly informed of the nature of the change to be made by the first, that he may readily arrange his corresponding movements.

13. All changes of position of a first line are made according to one of the methods laid down in Part III.

14. When the front is to be changed upon the right or left flank of the first line, the point of distance between the lines will be taken from that flank to the rear; and upon it the corresponding flank of the second line is to form. If the change, for instance, is made on the right flank, a mounted officer from the second line will mark the distance of that line, in a perpendicular direction to the rear, according as the change is at right angles or oblique to the former front, and the second line will form upon it by the march of columns, as detailed in S. 19, Part IV.

15. If the change of front is on a central point of the first line, the corresponding point will be taken from it, in a perpendicular direction, in the second

second line, and which latter point will be prolonged to either flank, by field-officers, in a direction perfectly parallel to the flank points arranged for the change of front of the first line. The second line will effect its change of front in columns upon these points, as laid down in S. 19, No. 2, Part IV.

Passage of lines through each other.

16. Lines may pass through each other, as prescribed in S. 16, Part III., the second line, if in column, deploying, when required, for that purpose.

Squares.

17. Brigade squares, or any squares consisting of several battalions, can seldom be necessary; for the time unavoidably taken up in the formation is inconsistent with its object, which is generally that of a rapid position of defence against the sudden attack of the enemy's cavalry; and a corps would be placed in a very critical situation if attacked by cavalry during such formation. But battalion squares flanking each other at right angles afford upon all such occasions the most ready and efficient defence; and every battalion commander should carefully keep his corps in readiness for such formations, whether from line or column, to meet any emergency that may offer.

Movements to attack.

18. Movements of attack may be made in columns, and the distance from the enemy at which these columns of attack should form in line, must depend upon his position, and the nature of the ground.

ground. In general, the line should be formed within 1200 or 1400 paces of a posted enemy, unless the ground particularly favours and covers an attacking force from the fire of his artillery, the enfilade of which is what chiefly prevents bodies in column from approaching nearer; and troops in line will march over that space in 12 or 13 minutes, under the constant protecting fire of their own artillery. Though columns may move with rapidity close to an enemy, yet as they must then form in line, no time would be gained; and their loss would be heavier than when the formation is made at a due distance.

Reserves and supports.

19. When any considerable body of troops is formed for defence, or offensive movement, a portion of it should be placed in reserve: and when columns of attack form in line, the reserve should be retained in the formation of column, in readiness to be applied as circumstances of emergency may require. Defensive positions are occupied by lines; and there are situations, according to the nature of the ground, or other circumstances for local consideration, wherein supporting lines are an essential formation of defence; but, generally speaking, there is no support so likely to keep an enemy in awe, as that of the formation of columns, provided they can be covered by ground, and protected from the enemy's artillery. The facility and readiness with which columns can be moved and wheeled into any position upon the flanks of a formed

formed line, are calculated to leave an enemy in doubt as to the points where they may be brought to bear against him; whereas lines of support afford a specific position in defence, which invite an arranged attack, and from which it is not always easy to remove troops with rapidity, as occasions may call for a change of formation.

General remark.

20. The application, however, of the foregoing principles, and of all the manœuvres and evolutions laid down in this book, must depend upon the circumstances which relatively call for them as occasion may require. For the purposes of elucidation, the effects of formations and movements with reference to the position of the enemy, have been, in some cases, dwelt upon; but all subjects connected with the manner of applying specific formations, embrace points of consideration much beyond the detail of tactical arrangement; and they can only be governed by all the variety of circumstances, which the nature of the country, and the situation of the enemy, may suggest to the genius of a commander.

EVOLUTIONS OF THE BRIGADE OR LINE.

The Commands and Cautions, given by the Commanders of the Brigade, will be distinguished by LARGE ITALICS.

MOVEMENTS FROM LINE.

S. 8. *When a Line formed of several Battalions is required to move to Attack, or to pass a Bridge or Defilé.*

THE BRIGADE WILL ADVANCE IN DOUBLE COLUMN OF COMPANIES FROM THE CENTRE, (OR OF SUB-DIVISIONS FROM THE CENTRE OF BATTALIONS.)

1. *If to make a movement to attack in double columns.*—The advance will be made in so many double columns from the centre of brigades, or battalions, as may suit the ground, and the circumstances which determine the disposition of attack. The orders for the advance will be circulated: each commander of brigades will give the annexed caution; and the different commanders of battalions will give the commands laid down in S. 18, Part III., observing that if the advance be from the centre of brigades, each battalion composing such double column will move from its flank, (the double column being formed upon the right company of one battalion, and the left of another,) and its commander must regulate his orders accordingly, (Vide S. 18, Part III.): a regulating column will be named; and the whole will advance at the Quick March.

QUICK MARCH.

All

All such advances will be protected by artillery and light troops.

2. *If to pass a bridge or defilé.*—The advance will be made from the flanks or centre, according as the defilé may present itself either in one column, or in so many columns as there are defilés to pass; the passage being covered and protected by artillery and light troops, according to previous dispositions.

HALT.

3. *When columns formed in this manner, either to attack or to pass defilés, shall arrive at the point where line is to be formed,* —they will be halted by signal, or otherwise, and the heads of columns will be dressed on the regulating column, which will give base points. The whole will either close to the front of columns and deploy into line, or will form line by the echellon march (Vide S. 18, No. 2 and 4, Part III.) on the respective heads of columns.

4. When it is intended to advance in line of several columns, a greater degree of accuracy in the march may be obtained, by the columns being previously formed at the halt, and then proceeding as already explained.

5. The double columns formed from a considerable line, are susceptible of all the changes of formation laid down in S. 18, Part III.; it being recollected, that companies hold

the relative place in double columns of brigade, that sub-divisions do in battalion.

6. When a brigade forms double column upon the centre, and when that centre is the right and left companies of two battalions, the interval of six paces will be preserved between the columns; and it will be occupied by a mounted officer, who will assist in regulating the correct advance of the column.

7. In all movements of a line of battalion double columns, the adjutants will mark the deploying distance of the outward wing of their battalions; and in that situation accompany the movement. These adjutants, in continued marches over an intersected country, where one column is liable to be hid from another for a time, will be found most useful as guides to the general alignement, and to enable the columns to renew dressing and distances after such temporary concealment. When found necessary for the preservation of distances or dressing, this rule may be extended to the march in line of single columns.

S. 9. When a Line formed of several Battalions may have to retire from a Flank, or from both Flanks in rear of the Centre, over a Bridge or Defilé.

THE BRIGADE WILL RETIRE BY —— FROM THE RIGHT IN REAR OF THE LEFT, OR FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.

This movement is performed in brigade, precisely as laid down in the battalion movements, S. 19, Part III., with this only difference, that, if done in double column, the front of the column will consist of companies instead of sub-divisions, when the breadth of the defilé admits of it.

CHANGES

Notes by

To calculate - the number of Pages - for your files -

Take 2/3 of

File and one sheet for each file

27/2

3) 54

18 - pages -

pages

40 2

3) 80

26 1

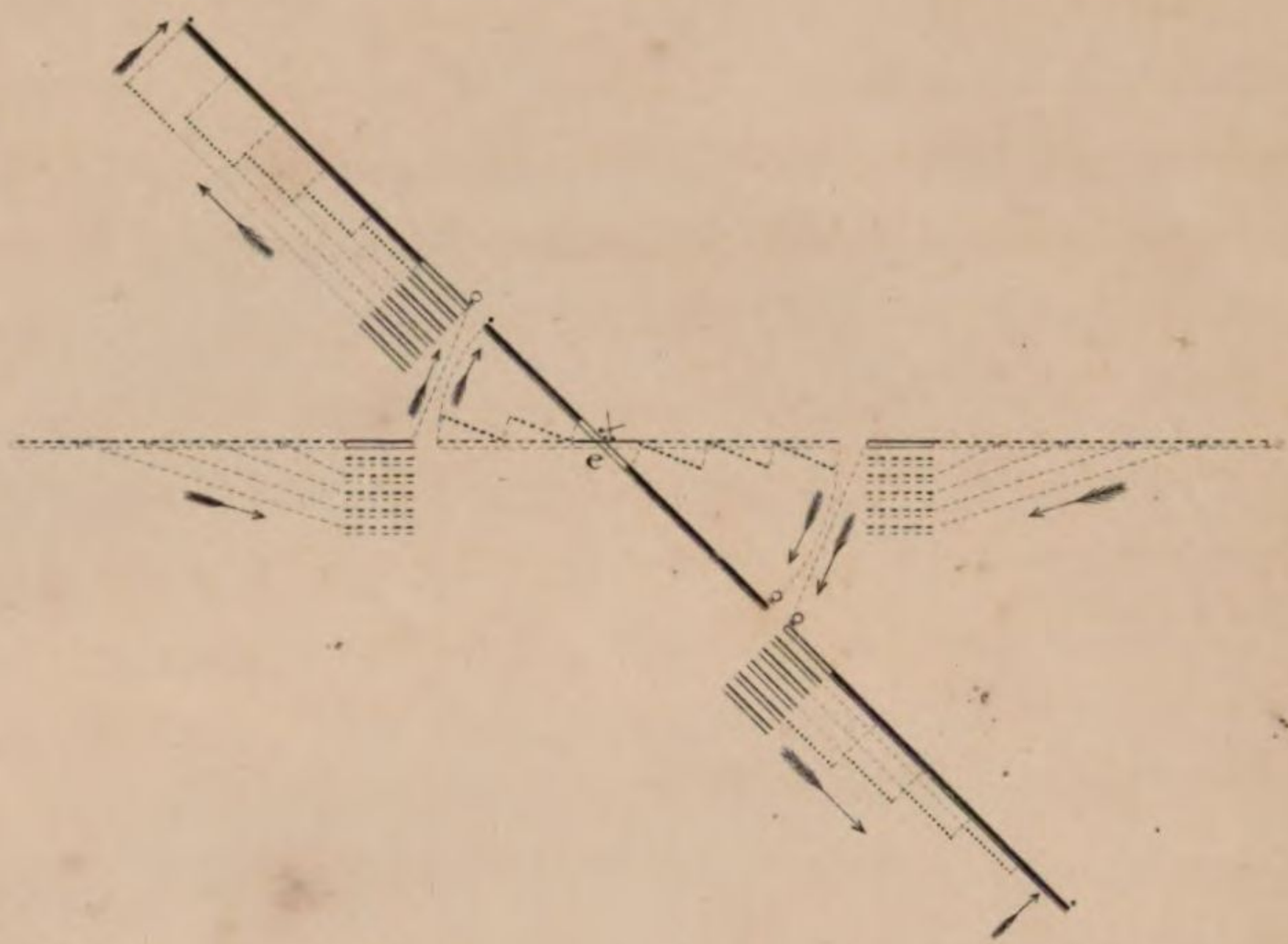
or multiply by 2 & divide by 3

say 30 files - 30 2

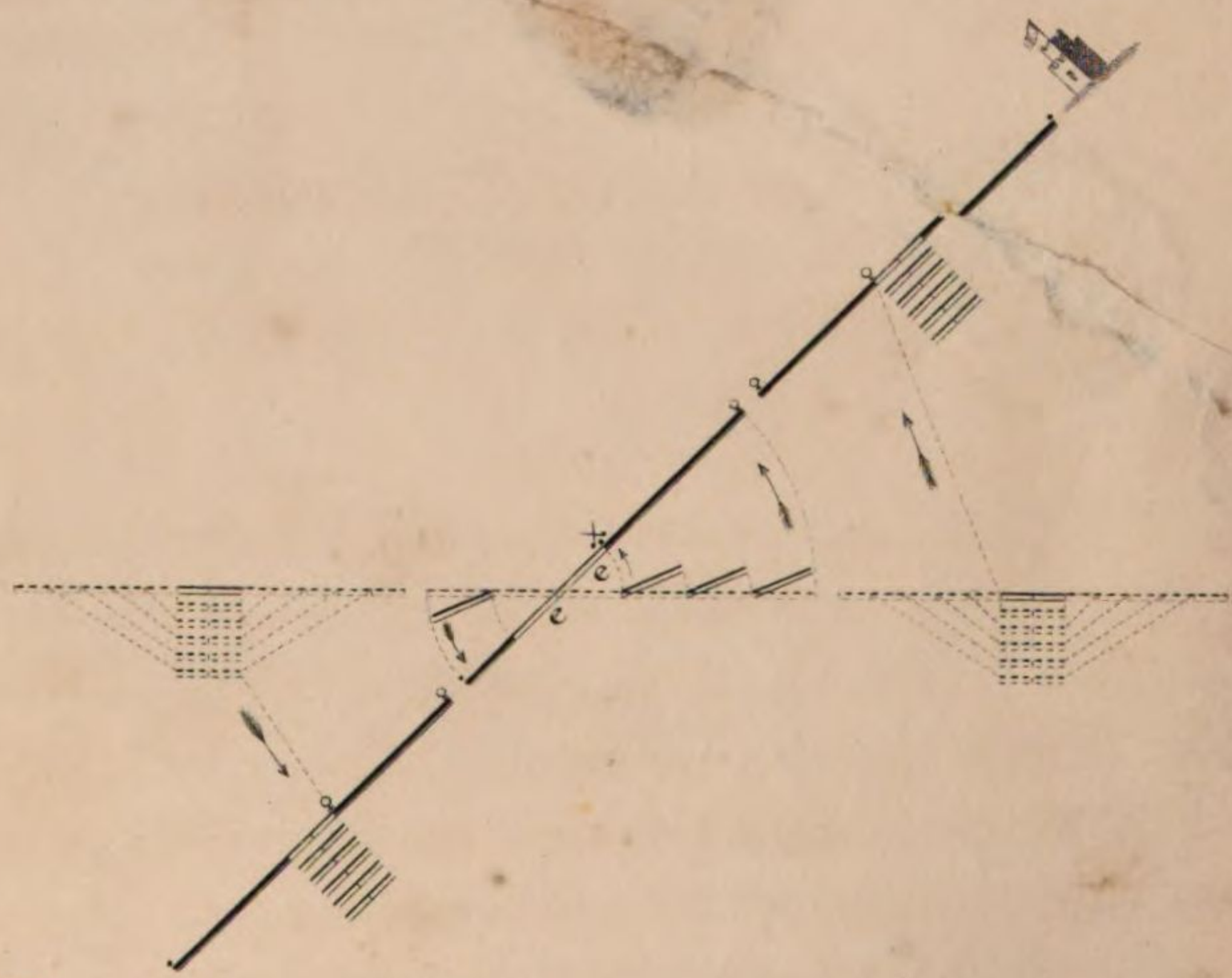
3) 60

20 pages

A Line of Several Battalions changing front by the movement of Battalions in Quarter distance Columns.



A Line of Several Battalions changing front by the movement of Battalions in double Columns of Subdivisions.



ᵒ Field Officer.
· Adjutant.
⁂ Staff Officer.

Scale of one Inch
to a Battalion.

CHANGES OF FRONT.

(*Plate* 24.)

S. 10. *When a Line of several Battalions changes its Front upon a fixed Company of any named Battalion.*

CHANGE FRONT BY ECHELLON UPON A FLANK (OR CENTRAL) COMPANY OF —— BATTALION.

QUICK MARCH.

1. *If by the echellon march of companies.*—The commander will name the battalion on which he intends the change to be made, and he will himself see that a company (e) of that battalion is wheeled perpendicular to the line he intends to form, whether that line is to be at right angles or oblique to the old one. He will then state the number of paces which the remaining companies are required to wheel, and the change of front is then effected by echellon as prescribed, (Vide S. 40, 41, and 42, Part III.,) a field-officer marking the inward flank, the adjutant marking the outward flank of each battalion.

CHANGE FRONT UPON —— COMPANY OF —— BATTALION. IN QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMNS RIGHT OR LEFT THROWN FORWARD.

2. *If the change of front is to be effected by the movement of battalions in quarter-distance columns.* A company is placed in the new alignement, and the remaining companies of the battalion of formation are wheeled into echellon, ready to effect the change of front as in No. 1. The remaining battalions form quarter-distance columns of companies in rear of their inward flank company, (or that which is nearest

QUICK MARCH.

to the battalion of formation,) and the battalions which are to be thrown back, face to the right about. On the word QUICK MARCH, the whole step off; the battalion of formation changes front by echellon, the remainder advance and retire respectively in columns, the heads of which will be directed upon their respective field officers, who mark the point of entry in the new alignement; upon which the columns will be brought square, halted, and successively deploy upon their adjutants, who mark the outward flank of each.

It is to be observed with respect to the battalions which are thrown back, that the quarter-distance columns, moving to the rear, must be carried through the new alignement, before they are halted and fronted—the proper front company is then correctly dressed in the alignement previous to deployment.

CHANGES OF POSITION.

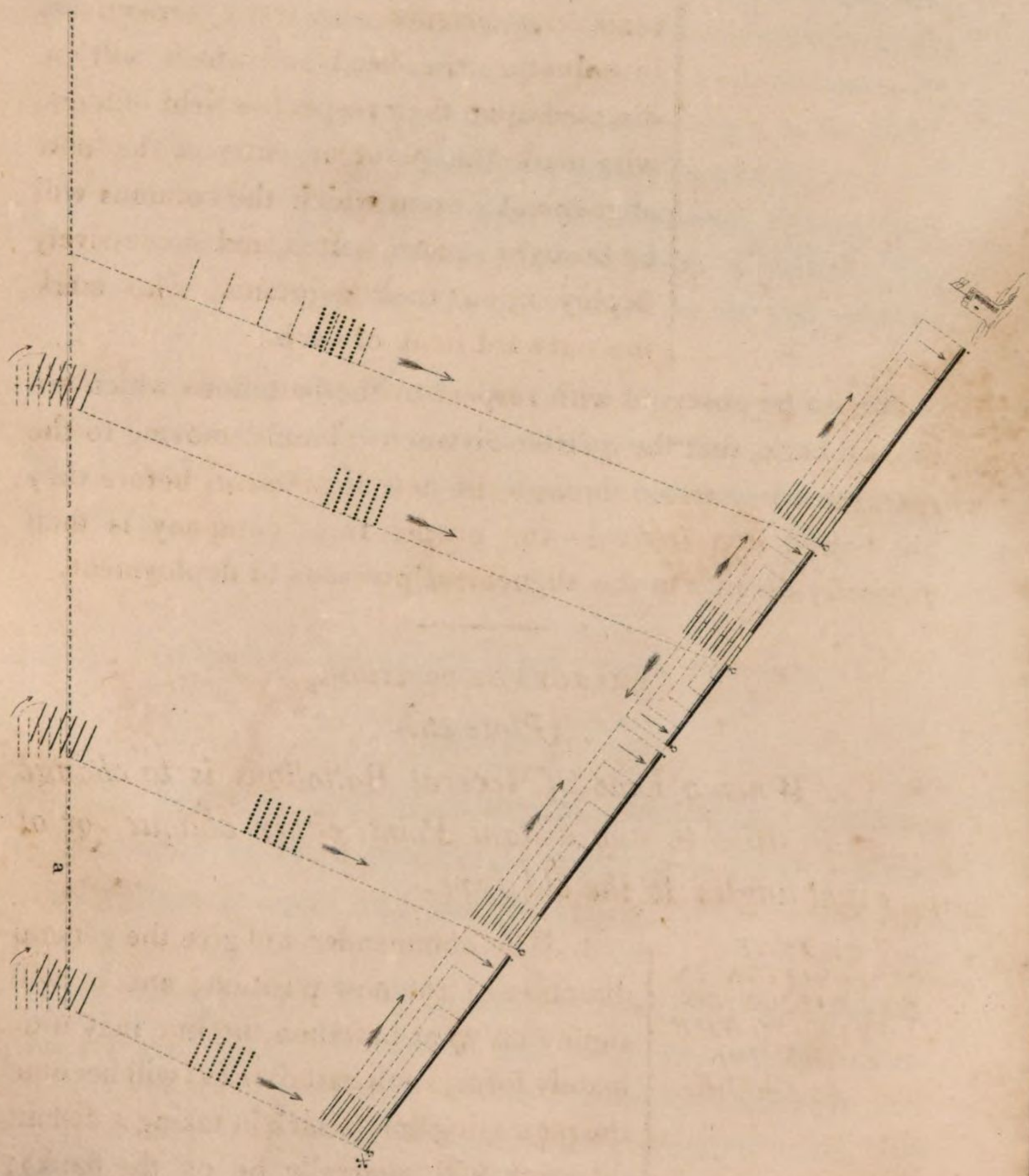
(*Plate* 25.)

S. 11. *When a Line of several Battalions is to change its Position to any distant Point, either oblique, or at right angles to the old Line.*

CHANGE OF POSITION IN BATTALION COLUMNS, TO THE RIGHT (OR LEFT) FLANK.

1. The commander will give the general direction of the new position; and he will signify on what battalion the line may ultimately form; such battalion (a) will become the regulating one (which in taking a distant direction will generally be on the flank); and

A Line of Several Battalions changing Position to a Distant point oblique to the old Line.



QUICK MARCH.

and the whole will form columns at quarter distance, on the right or left companies, or on the centre sub-divisions of battalions, as may be ordered. The regulating column is guided by the commander into the new alignement, the others conform to it; and points of entry and of distance are prepared, in the intended line, in the direction which the commander and his staff will indicate, when the battalion upon which the columns are to form is fixed. The whole will proceed as in the last section.

When thought expedient, the battalions may move off at once in open column from the flanks or centre (Vide S. 18, Nos. 1 and 3, Part III.), and close to quarter distance on the march.

QUARTER DISTANCE AND CLOSE COLUMN.

(*Plate* 26.)

S. 12. *When a Line of contiguous Battalion Columns, at quarter or close distance, is required to form a Mass of Columns upon any one Battalion.*

FORM MASS IN REAR OF THE RIGHT BATTALION.

1. *If in rear of the right battalion.*—The caution will be given, and the commanders of the remaining battalions will give the word RIGHT ABOUT FACE, and they

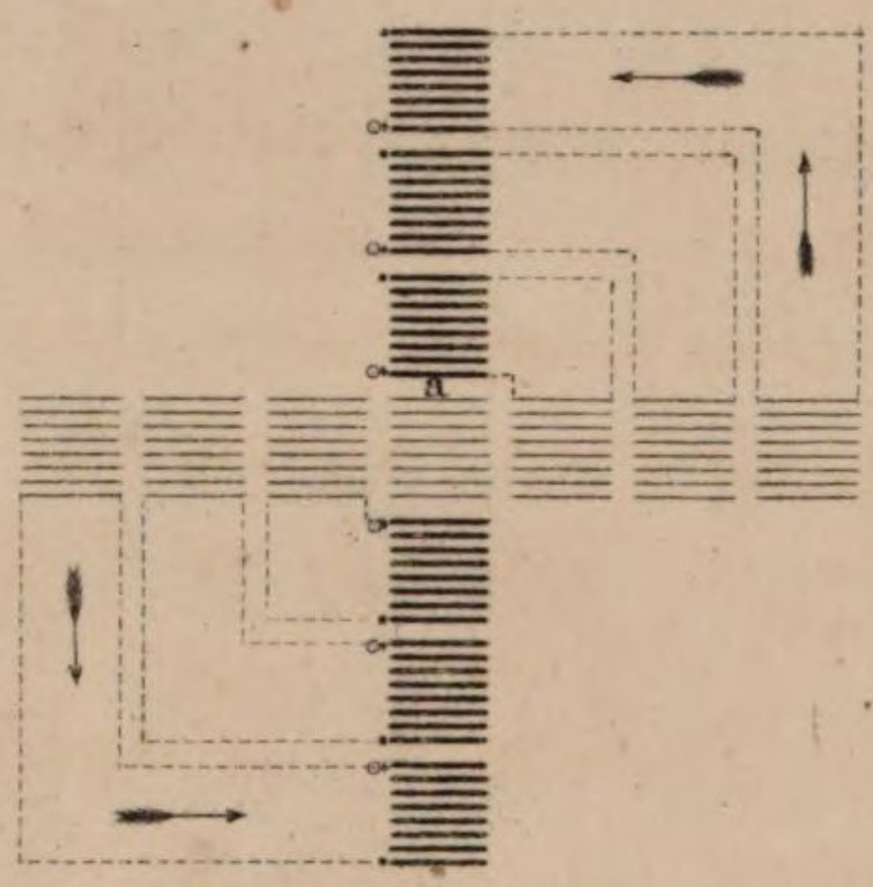
they will move QUICK MARCH to the rear upon the signal. The field officers will be in readiness to mark where the heads of battalions will rest at the proper pivot flank from the rear of the formed one (a), the adjutants at the same time mark the rear of their battalions; and when the proper right of each retiring battalion shall reach the exact line of the field officer, the commander will give the word LEFT TURN, and when the pivot flank of the battalion shall reach the alignement, he will give the word HALT, FRONT, and the whole will cover upon the formed battalion.

THE LINE WILL FORM MASS IN FRONT OF THE RIGHT BATTALION. REMAINING BATTALIONS WILL ADVANCE.

2. *If in front of the right battalion*—The remaining battalions will advance, each commander giving, upon the signal, the word QUICK MARCH. The field officers and adjutants will mark where the front and rear of their respective battalions will rest in the column; and when the rear of each battalion shall get on a line with the field officer, as before, the commanders will give the word RIGHT TURN, and will HALT, FRONT, in the alignement.

The same operation takes place for the formation of mass to the front or rear of the left battalion; the battalions which advance

A Line of Contiguous Battalion close Columns, forming a mass of Columns upon a central Battalion.



advance or retire turning to the proper flank when on a line with their field officers.

3. *If upon a central battalion.*—The caution will name which battalion: the battalions on the left of it will receive from their respective commanders the word RIGHT ABOUT FACE: the named battalion (a) will stand fast, and the whole will advance QUICK MARCH upon the signal; and will form to the front and rear of the central battalion, as in Nos. 1 and 2.

4. When a line of contiguous battalion columns thus form in mass, the battalions need only advance or retire perpendicular to their own front or rear, until clear of the columns on the right or left, when each commander will cut off the right angle, by the echellon movement of sections, (Vide S. 32, Part III., if his column is at quarter distance); or by the diagonal march. These modes of movement give him a facility for conducting his column to the destined point, without the delay and fatigue of going over unnecessary ground: and this applies more particularly when the mass is to be formed from columns in line with deploying distances.

(*Plate* 27.)

S. 13. *When a Mass of Battalion Columns, at quarter or close distance, wheels by Battalions into a Line of contiguous Columns.*

Fig. 1.

THE COLUMN WILL WHEEL BY BATTALIONS INTO LINE OF CONTIGUOUS COLUMNS. Q. OR D. MARCH.

1. The caution will be given by the commander; and each commander of a battalion will give the word RIGHT OR LEFT WHEEL (Vide S. 33, Part III.), and the whole will wheel by battalions at the same moment, at the QUICK or DOUBLE MARCH, upon the signal from the commander, dressing to the flank (b) to which the wheel is made.

S. 14. *When a Line of contiguous Battalion close or quarter-distance Columns is required to change its Front to the right or left Flank. (Vide S. 4, Part IV.)*

Fig. 2.

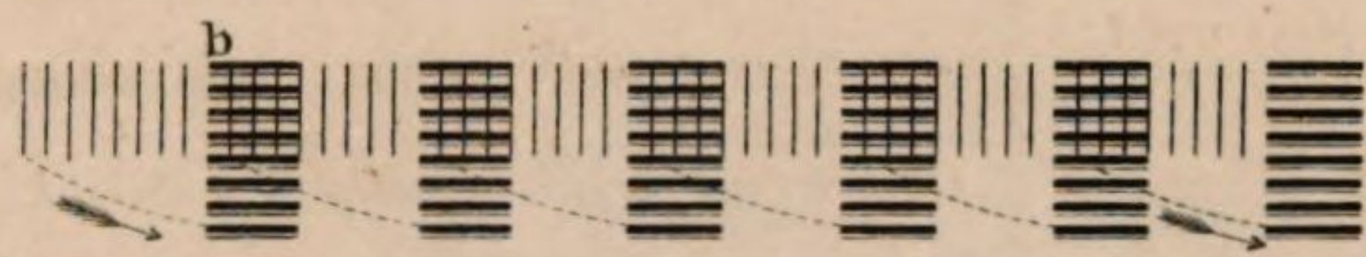
THE LINE WILL CHANGE FRONT TO THE RIGHT FLANK.

QUICK MARCH.

1. *If in close column to the right flank.*—Upon the caution the commander of the right battalion will give the word *Right wheel* to his battalion, when the pivot will face, and the rear companies make a half face to the left. On the word QUICK MARCH, the whole step off, by command from their respective leaders, the right battalion wheeling to its right (Vide S. 33, No. 1, Part III.); the remainder advancing,

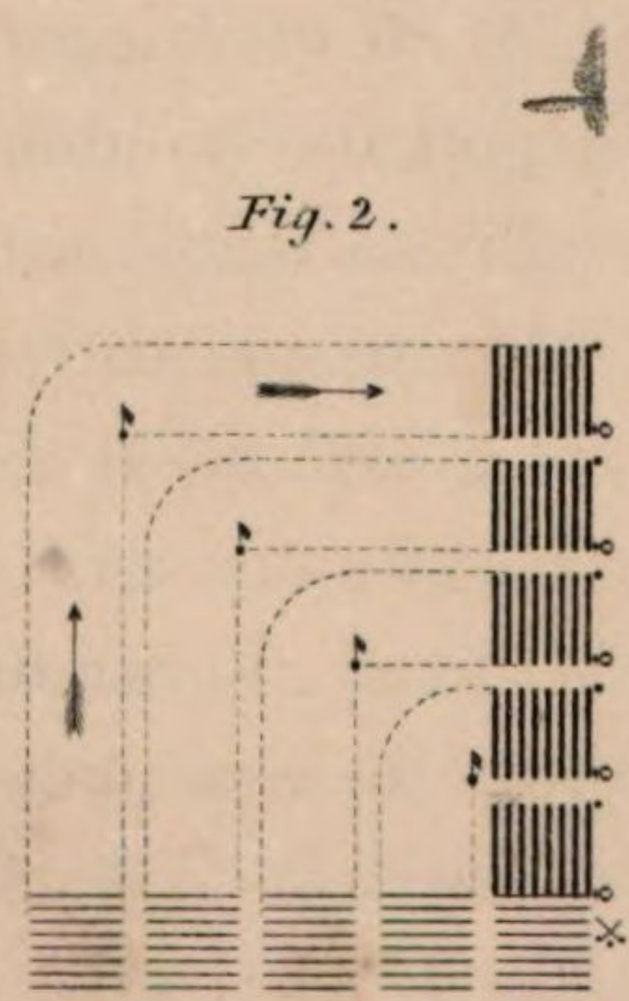
A Maſs of Battalion Columns at quarter distance wheeling by Battalions into a Line of Contiguous Columns.

Fig. 1.

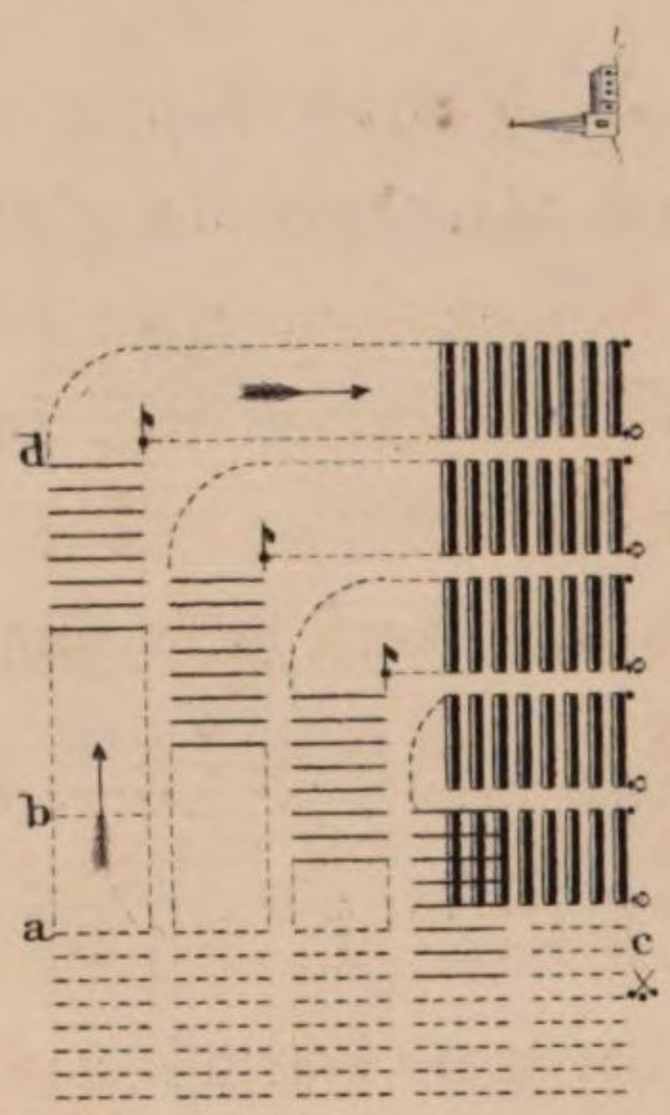


A Line of Contiguous Battalion close Columns changing Front to the right Flank.

Fig. 2.



A Line of Contiguous Battalion Columns at quarter distance changing Front to the right Flank.



ing, and wheeling in succession to the right, when they have gained the proper interval of six paces from the battalion on their inward flank, and moving up to the new line, their inward and outward flanks in the alignement being marked by field officers and adjutants.

If the columns are at quarter distance they may close to the front, and proceed as above directed.

(*Plate* 28.)

THE LINE WILL CHANGE FRONT TO THE RIGHT FLANK. ADVANCE IN ECHELLON OF BATTALION COLUMNS FROM THE LEFT.

2. *If with close columns whose depth exceeds their breadth of front, or with quarter-distance columns, retainin that formation.* —The caution will be given that the line will advance in echellon of battalions from the left flank (a): the commander of the left battalion will then give the word QUICK MARCH; and when its leading flank (a) shall have gained a space equal to the front of the next battalion and six paces (b), that battalion will be put in motion. Each battalion will successively follow in echellon when the one in its front shall have gained this space. When the whole are in echellon (c d) at this respective distance from each other, the commander will give the command or signal to *Halt;* which should be simultaneously obeyed in order to preserve the distances: the echellon will then wheel by battalions to the right, the

HALT. THE ECHELLON WILL WHEEL BY BATTALIONS TO THE RIGHT. FORM LINE ON THE FRONT BATTALION. QUICK MARCH.

com

commander of each battalion giving the word RIGHT WHEEL; and, after the wheel, the battalion of formation will give base points for the others to form upon: the remaining battalions will then form line upon it, being HALTED by their commanders upon their respective field officers.

The line of contiguous columns will then be in readiness to deploy into line; or to move to the new front; as may be required.

3. *If to the left flank.*—The same movement will take place in echellon of battalions from the right; and the battalion will wheel and form to the left.

S. 15. *When a Brigade, formed in contiguous Battalion close Columns at close order, is required to change its Front to the Rear on the Centre of Battalions.*

THE BRIGADE WILL CHANGE FRONT TO THE REAR ON THE CENTRE OF BATTALIONS. QUICK MARCH.

1. The line of contiguous columns, consisting of any number of battalions, changes its front by the countermarch of each battalion on its own centre (Vide S. 7, No. 3, Part IV.), thus inverting the order of battalions. After this change of front, the line of contiguous columns may deploy.

2. If the change of front is required, merely with a view to deployment to the former

former rear, it is of no importance which flank of battalions is in front; and in this case, each battalion column may countermarch by ranks on its own ground. (Vide S. 13, Part II.)

DEPLOYMENTS.

(*Plate* 29.)

S. 16. *When a Mass of Battalion Columns, at close or quarter distance, deploys into Line of contiguous Battalion Columns.*

THE COLUMN WILL DEPLOY INTO LINE OF CONTIGUOUS COLUMNS ON THE —— BATTALION.

RIGHT (or LEFT FACE.) *QUICK MARCH.*

1. *If upon the front battalion.*—Upon the caution, the field officers and adjutants will be ready to mark the inward and outward flanks of their respective columns in prolongation of the front battalion. The respective commanders of the remaining battalions will give the word RIGHT (or LEFT) FACE to the proper flank; and the whole will move, upon the signal to deploy, on the named battalion, by the words FRONT, TURN, from each commander, exactly as explained in S. 36, Part III.

2. *If upon a rear battalion.*—The caution will be given accordingly; and a field officer and the adjutant of that battalion will mark both flanks of the front battalion: the whole will then face to the proper

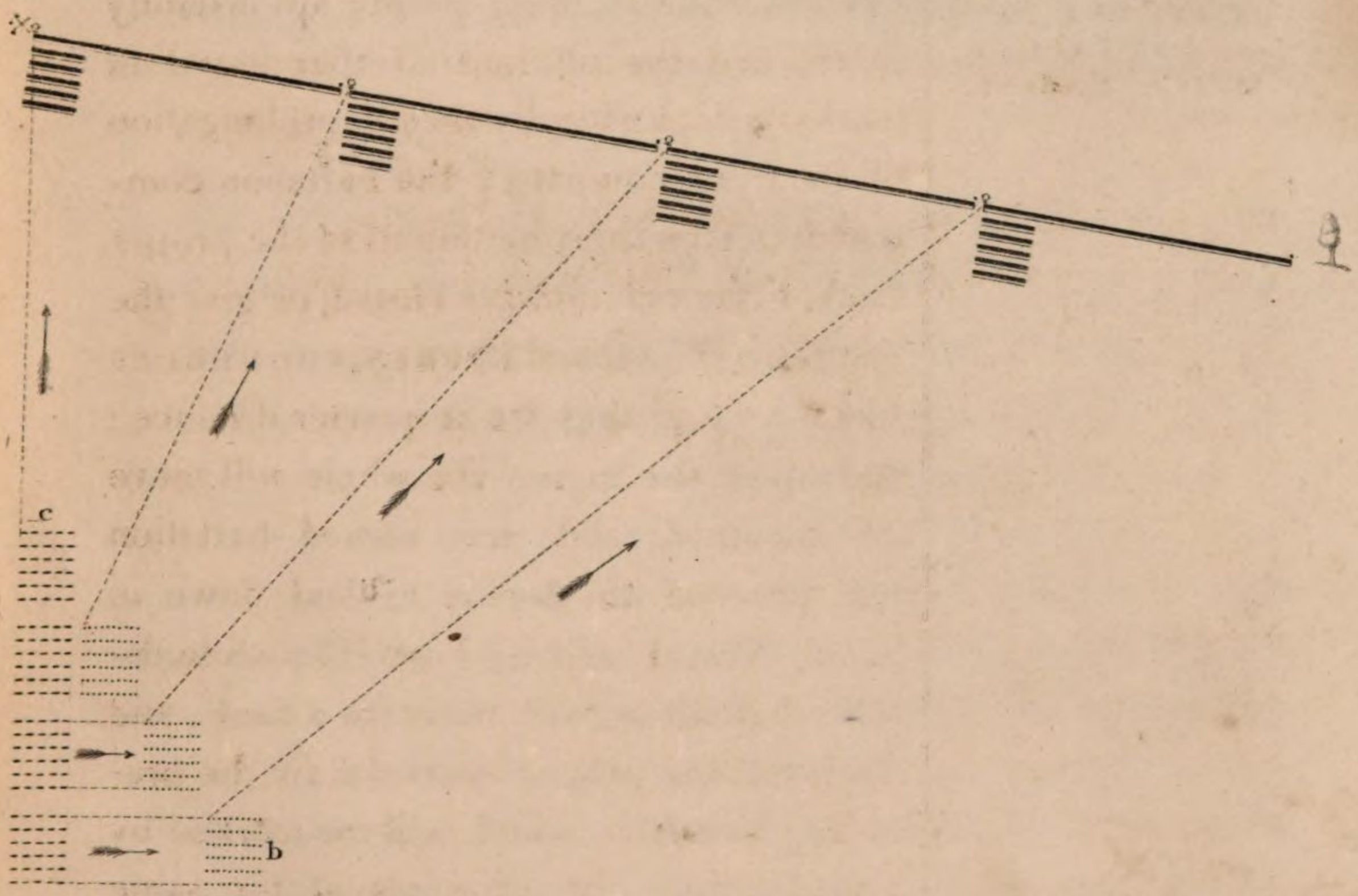
per flank; the named battalion (b) will advance to its field officer and adjutant, when the front is clear, and the deployment will take place as in S. 36, No. 2, Part III.

S. 17. *When a Line of contiguous Battalion Columns deploys into Line.*

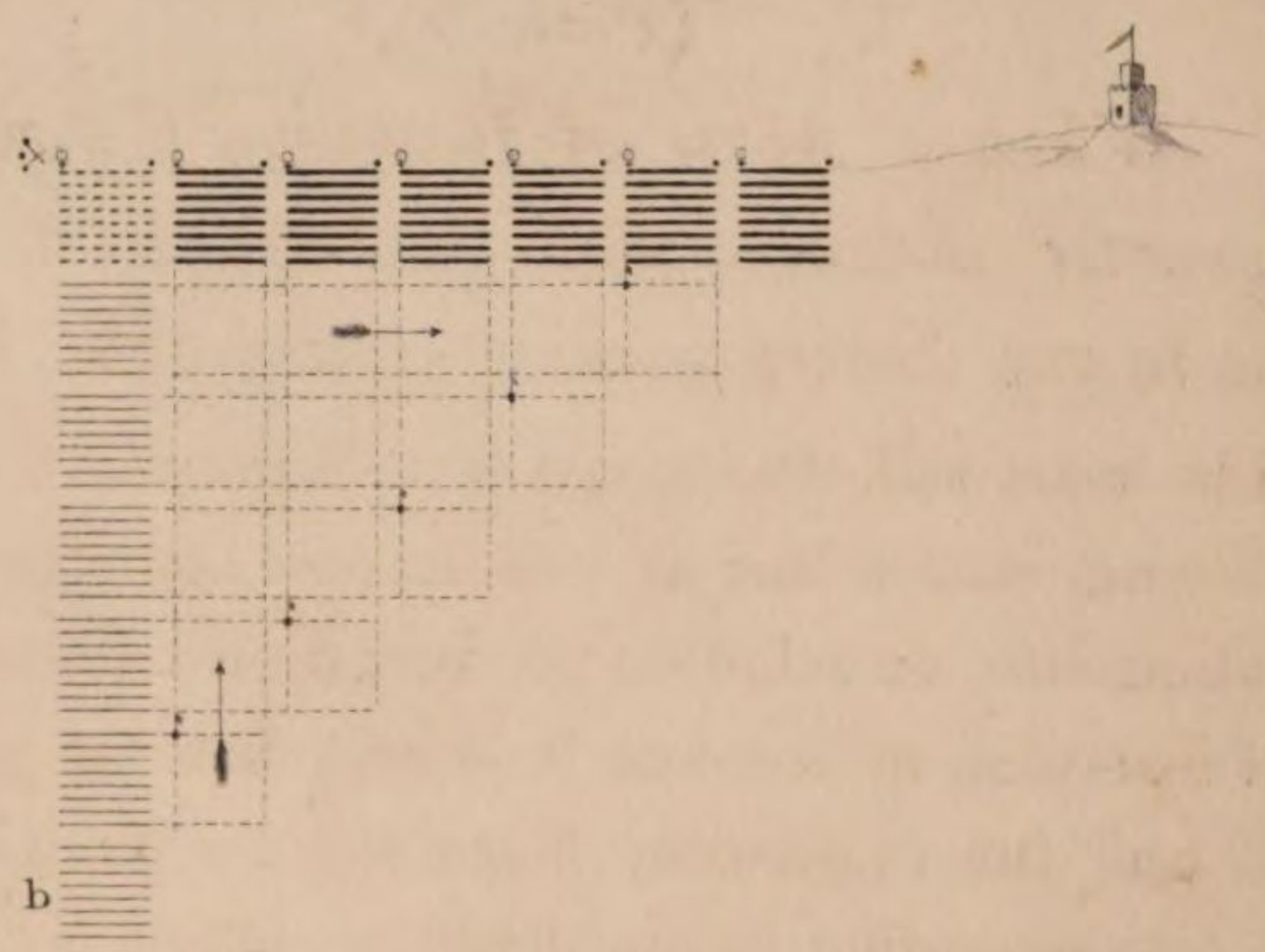
THE COLUMNS WILL DEPLOY INTO LINE UPON THE FRONT COMPANY OF ——BATTALION. QUICK MARCH.

The deployment will be made upon the front company of a named battalion. On the caution, base points are instantly given, and the adjutant of that battalion marks its deploying distance in prolongation of its front company; the battalion commanders face their battalions to the proper flank, if the columns are closed, or give the cautionary command THREES, SHOULDERS FORWARD, if they are at quarter distance: and upon the signal the whole will move off together, and the named battalion will proceed to deploy as laid down in S. 36, Nos. 1 and 3, Part III., while the other battalions will move to a flank, and deploy at the proper interval from the preceding battalion, which will be marked by a field officer, the adjutants at the same time taking up deploying distance for their respective battalions. The front company of each battalion will be halted and fronted by the commanding officer, when its inward flank reaches the field officer, and the remaining

A Mass of Battalion Columns, at Quarter distance, deploying into Line, on detached Points.



A Mass of Battalion close Columns deploying into Line upon the rear Battalion.



remaining companies proceed as directed, S. 36, Nos. 1 and 3, Part III.

When it is found expedient to deploy from close column upon a rear or central company of a battalion, base points will be given as above in the line of the front company of such battalion, and mounted officers will mark its deploying distance on both flanks (if on a central company), in prolongation of these points: the deployment will then proceed as directed, S. 36, No. 2, Part III. But in all brigade deployments from quarter distance, the base points will be taken up three paces in advance of the front company of the battalion of formation.

(*Plate* 30.)

S. 18. *When a Mass of Battalion Columns, at close or quarter distance, shall be required to deploy into Line to any distant position on detached Points.*

1. The mass will disengage to the proper flank (b) either by deploying into a line of contiguous battalion columns, or by breaking into an echellon of battalion columns (b c). The general direction of the new line will then be given by a staff officer, and the regulating battalion (a flank one) will be named (c), according to the flank to which it is intended to incline. The field officers will take up the new alignement where the leading division of each battalion is to rest, in a line of columns, either contiguous or at deploying distance, as may be ordered, the adjutants marking the outward flank; and each battalion commander will conduct his battalion to his field officer, accommodating his march to the nature of the ground, and diverging as may be necessary, from time to time, by the wheel on the moveable pivot, the diagonal

march,

march, or the echellon march of sections, into the proper direction. If the battalions form in the new alignement in contiguous columns, the line is formed by a general deployment, (Vide S. 17, Part IV.): if at deploying distance, each battalion will deploy on its own ground.

2. When battalion double columns assemble in a line for deployment, a field officer will mark where the head of each column is to rest; the deploying distance or outward flanks of the battalion *of formation* will be marked by mounted officers, so that the next battalions may have no difficulty in taking up their proper distances, and each column on arriving in the line must in like manner mark the deploying distance of its outward wing. If double columns assemble in a contiguous line, they must open out to deploying distances before they can deploy.

SECOND LINES.

(*Plate* 31.)

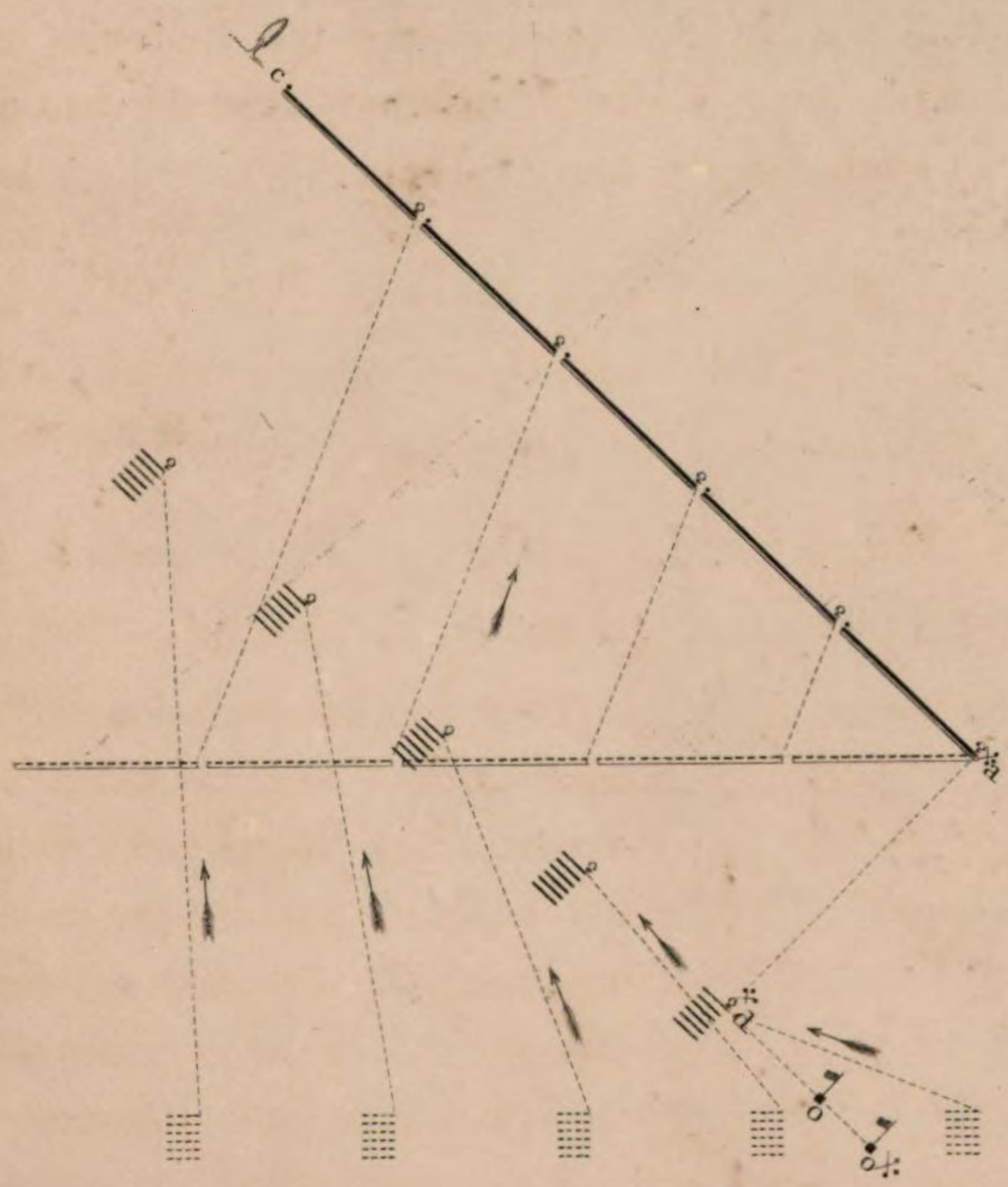
S. 19. *When two Lines change Front upon a Flank of the First Line. (Vide S. 7, No.* 14, *Part IV.)*

CHANGE FRONT UPON THE — FLANK OF THE FIRST LINE; LEFT THROWN FORWARD.

1. The first line will proceed to change its front to the given direction (a c) either by the echellon march of companies, or by the column movement, as directed in S. 10, Part IV. A point will be taken (d) by a staff officer, at a distance equal to the space which separates the two lines, and exactly perpendicular to the intended line; and this point marks where the right (d) of the second line is to form.

Two Lines changing front upon a flank of the first Line —

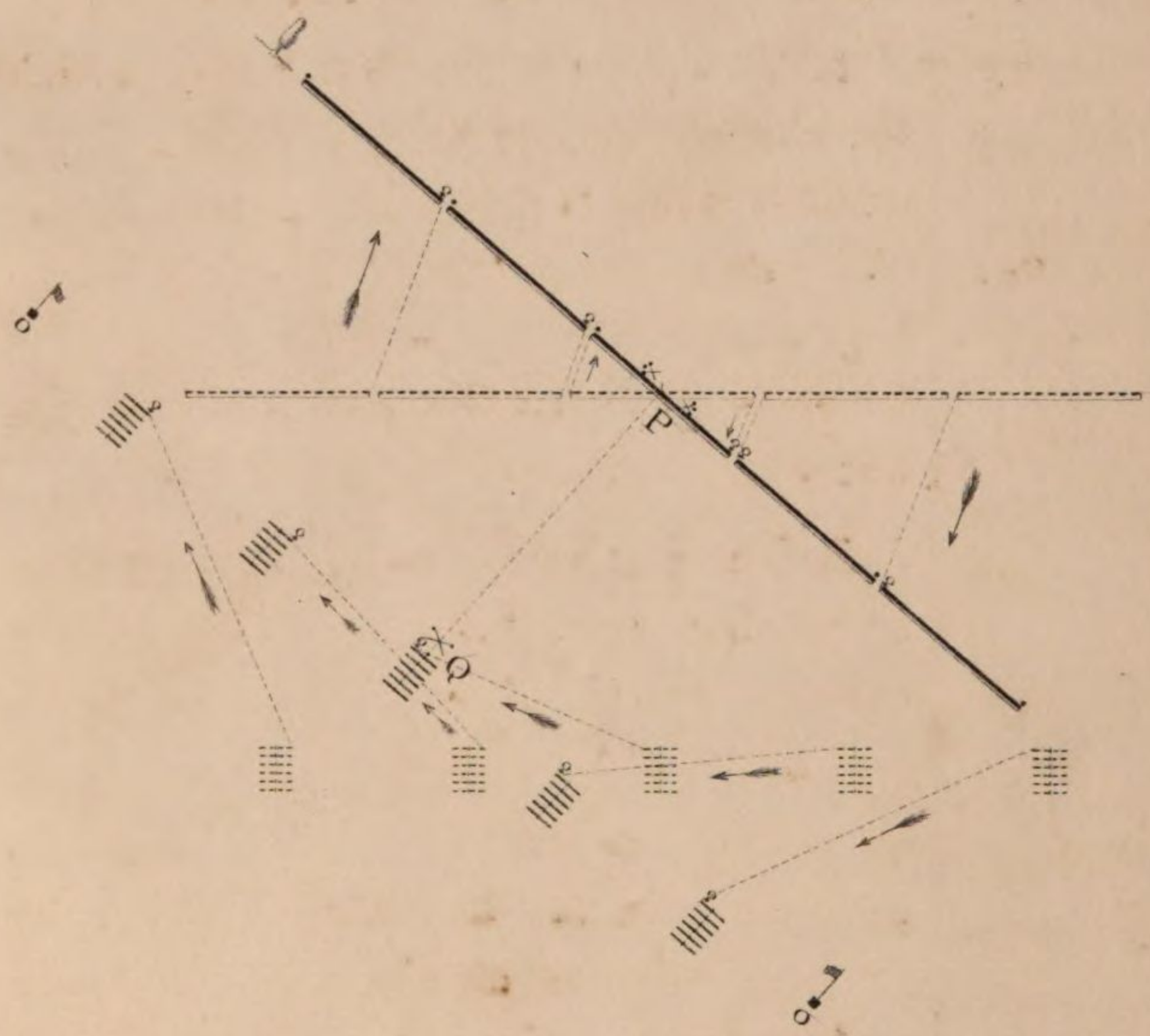
The second Line in Columns of Battalions at Quarter distance.



Scale of ½ an Inch

to a Battalion.

Two Lines changing front upon a Central point of the first Line — The second Line in double Column of Subdivisions.



2. Base points will be given (o o) to the right of the point (d), which will be prolonged parallel to the front line by mounted officers; and upon the caution, the second line will move in columns at quarter distance, upon their points of entry in the new line.

(*Plate* 32.)

S. 20. *When two Lines change Front upon a central Point of the first Line. (Vide S.* 7, *No.* 15, *Part IV.)*

CHANGE FRONT UPON THE CENTRE OF THE FIRST LINE; RIGHT OR LEFT THROWN BACK.

1. The point in the first line on which the change is made being determined (P), another point is taken in a perpendicular direction to the intended line (Q), which is prolonged (o) to both flanks, care being taken to preserve the parallelism of the lines.

2. The first line then changes its front or position upon the centre (P), by the echellon march, or as directed in S. 10, No. 2, Part IV.

3. The second line will change its position as in the last section, No. 2, by forming columns on the centre or flanks of battalions, and proceeding as therein directed.

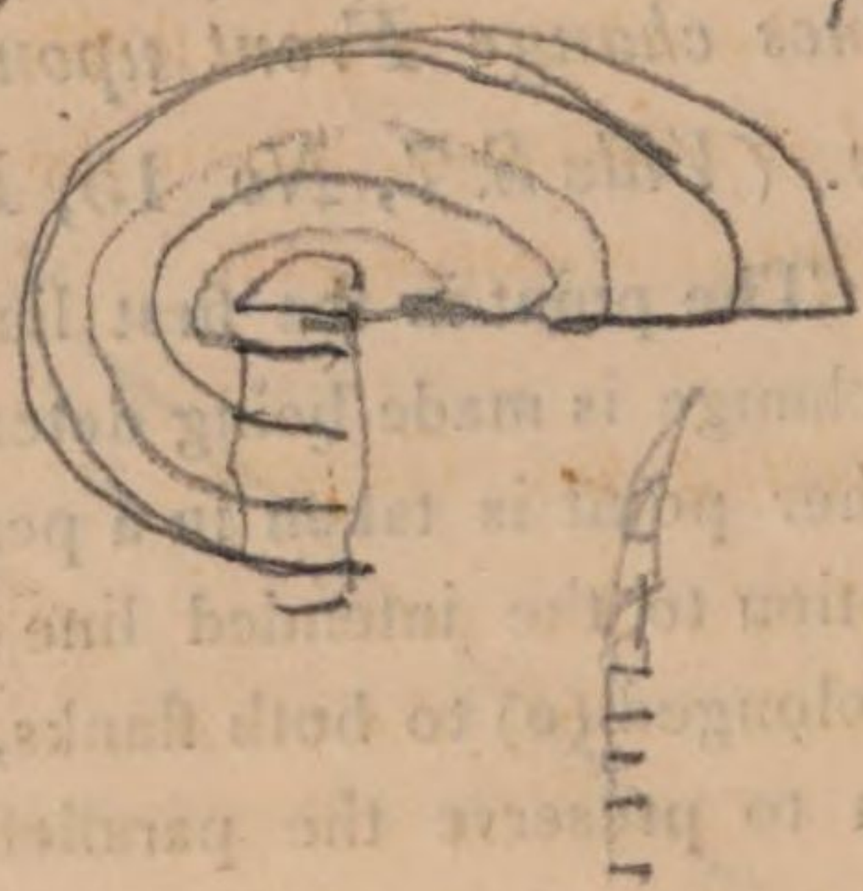
END OF PART IV.

INSPECTION

Part Two — Forward

marching 4 deep - Right Turn

On the Leading Sergt about face form



3

INSPECTION OR REVIEW.

THE battalion, formed in line at open order, will await the approach of the general. He is to be received with the compliments due to his rank, as set forth in the regulation of military honours. The colonel and lieutenant-colonel are on horseback, six and ten paces respectively in front of the colours.

A camp colour is to be originally placed 80 or 100 paces in front of the centre of the battalion, where the general takes his station, to see the battalion march past.

Receiving the General.

PRESENT ARMS. When the reviewing general presents himself before the centre, and is 50 or 60 paces distant, he will be received with a general salute. The men present arms, and the officers salute, so as to drop their swords with the last motion of presented arms; the music will play, and all the drums will beat. The colours only salute such persons as from their rank, and by regulation, are entitled to that honour.

SHOULDER ARMS. The men shoulder, and the officers recover their swords with the last motion.

The general will then go towards the right, the whole remaining perfectly steady, without paying any further compliment while he passes along the front of the battalion, and proceeds

ceeds round the left flank and along the rear. When the general is going round the battalion, the music and drums may play and beat; they will cease when he has returned to the right flank of the battalion.

REAR RANK. TAKE CLOSE ORDER, MARCH — While the general is proceeding to place himself in the front, this command will be given.

Marching past in Slow Time.

COMPANIES, ON YOUR LEFT BACKWARD WHEEL. QUICK MARCH, *Halt, Dress,* MARCH. — The battalion will break into column of companies, the right in front, and the column will be put in motion, pioneers, music and drums having been previously ordered to the head of it. Points will be fixed by the adjutant for the several wheelings of the divisions; so that their right flanks, in marching past, shall be only four paces distant from the camp colour, where it is supposed the general places himself to receive the salute.

Right Shoulders Forward. — The several companies wheel successively at the first and second angles of the ground on the moveable pivot; and the wheel at the latter angle will bring them on the line on which they are to pass the general. During this wheel each leader of a company will change his flank by the front, facing his men, as when wheeling into line

from

Forward.

from column, and having reached the point to which his right flank wheels up, he places himself square to the front, and gives the word *Forward*, as soon as the company has completed its wheel; upon which the men touch to the right, keeping their eyes straight to the front.

Rear Rank take Open Order.

The leading company, and each other successively, as it arrives within thirty paces of the general, opens its ranks, at which time the officers of companies move to the front, the captains being replaced on the right flanks by their serjeants.

In marching past the reviewing general, the colonel is to be in front of the grenadier company, with the major a little behind him, on his left. The music, drummers, and fifers, are six paces before the colonel, and the pioneers are in two ranks, six paces before the music, having a corporal at their head to lead them.

The lieutenant-colonel is to be in the rear; but, in the absence of the colonel, the lieutenant-colonel will supply his place. The second major is in the rear, behind, and on the left of the lieutenant-colonel; and the adjutant is behind and on the left of the major.

The colours, carried by the two *senior* ensigns, are three paces behind the fourth battalion company, covered by their serjeants Staff officers do not march past.

In marching past at open ranks, the serjeant who is on the right flank of the company is responsible for the proper wheeling distance being kept from the front rank of the company preceding him. The leading officer must invariably preserve his distance of three paces before the right of the company, and not derange its march; the rank of officers dress to him, their eyes are turned a little to the right, and they divide the ground, in order to cover the front of the company: if there is only one officer with the company, he is towards the right of it. Supernumerary serjeants are three paces in the rear of their several divisions.

The music will begin to play just after the leading company has made the second wheel; they will draw up opposite to the general, and they will continue to play until the rear of the column shall have passed him.

The officers, when they arrive at their proper distance from the general, will salute successively by companies, commencing when within ten paces of him, and recover their swords when six paces past him, (*vide Infantry Sword Exercise*, page 25,) without in the least altering the rate of march, or impeding the front rank of companies. The commanding officer, when he has saluted at the head of the battalion, places himself near the general, and remains there till the rear has marched past.

Rear Rank take Close Order.

The officers commanding companies will each successively, when he has passed the general by twenty paces, close his rear rank, and will resume his place on the right flank: each individual of the company will at the same time resume the post which he held when the column was first put in motion.

The

Right Shoulders forward. Forward. — The several companies wheel successively at the point which will be fixed opposite the ground where the left of the battalion stood; during the wheel, officers commanding the companies change by the rear to the left flank.

HALT. SLOPE ARMS. — When the leading company is near to where the left of the battalion stood, the whole HALT, arms are sloped, and the Quick March will instantly commence.

Marching past in Quick Time.

QUICK MARCH. — The whole march off in quick time. No music.

Right Shoulders forward. Forward. — The column makes three several wheels on the moveable pivot, *viz.*, at the point where the left of the battalion first stood; at the point where the first wheel was made; and at the point where the second wheel was made, which places it on the line of passing the general.

CARRY ARMS. — Before the leading company has made the last named wheel, arms are carried. When it has completed that wheel, the music begins to play.

The leading officer of each company will shift to its right in the manner already instructed. The supernumerary officers and serjeants march in a rank in rear of the companies, at one pace

pace from the rear rank, and officers' swords must be carried against the right shoulder, steadily.

The colonel, lieutenant-colonel, major, and adjutant, are in the same places as in marching past in slow time; as also music, drummers, &c., which will play drawn up as already directed.

Right Shoulders forward. Forward.

The companies successively wheel when opposite to the ground where the left of the battalion stood and will again wheel at the next angle, where the left actually stood, which will bring the column upon the original alignement. The leader of the front company will march upon a point, and each officer will cover in column and preserve distance, in order to be ready for the halt and formation of line.

Forming in Line.

HALT, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

The column will proceed on the alignement, until arrived at the point where its head, or right, is to be placed. It will receive the word HALT; pivots are instantly corrected, if necessary; it will then be wheeled into line, and the pioneers and music will go to their posts behind the centre.

When the line has formed, the commanding officer will give a caution that the manual and platoon exercise will be performed, and he will then go to the rear of the battalion. The major advances to the front of the battalion, OPENS RANKS;

UNFIXES

UNFIXES BAYONETS; SHOULDERS ARMS; makes the officers and colours TAKE THEIR POST OF EXERCISE in the rear, by facing to the right; MARCHING through the several intervals occupied by the serjeants; and when three paces beyond the rear rank, they halt, and then receive the word FRONT. The commanding officer, lieutenant-colonel, adjutant, pioneers, music, supernumerary serjeants, drummers, fifers, are at their posts in the rear, as when the battalion is formed in close order.

The major proceeds with the manual as directed by regulation. The serjeants, who preserve in the front rank the places of the platoon officers, remain there steady during the whole of the manual.

When the manual has been performed, the major will proceed with the platoon exercise as detailed in regulation, either in slow or quick time as may be required.

When the manual and platoon exercises have been finished, the major will go to his post, and the commanding officer of the battalion will prime and load with cartridge, and will then commence such of the movements laid down in the preceding sections, as may be deemed applicable to the nature of the ground, or as may be ordered, at the discretion of the general, or the commanding officer, if left to his own selection; observing always, that such of the specified movements as may be practised, are strictly adhered to in all their details, an that not less than ten or twelve of them are performed. Every commanding officer must consider himself ready and liable to be called upon for the immediate performance of any of the movements laid down in this book.

When two or more battalions are inspected or exercised together, they will be formed in one line, with the ordered

intervals

intervals, and will perform the same movements that are laid down for the single battalion, observing the additional directions that are given for such movements when applied to the brigade. Upon occasions when the troops to be reviewed may exceed to battalions, the reviewing general may, at his option, in order to save time, and preserve the troops fresh for the subsequent movements, direct them to be formed.

IN COLUMN.

1. The troops will be formed in a line of battalion columns at quarter distance, with such interval between battalions as may be necessary to admit of their wheeling into mass.

2. On the word OFFICERS AND COLOURS TO THE FRONT, the whole of the officers and the colours will move forward and place themselves in line, two paces in front of the column, the colours being in the centre, and the adjutant on the left, the field-officers two paces in front of the line of officers, and the commanding officer three paces in front of the latter. The paymaster, surgeons, and quarter-master to be in the rear of the battalion, and the staff serjeants in their rear.

3. The band and drums to be formed in several ranks in line with the front rank of battalion, and on its right.

4. The pioneers in one rank in rear of the drums.

5. The general officer is stationed twenty paces in front of the centre.

6. The

6. The reviewing general is saluted without opening ranks; the troops will then shoulder, and the whole stand in the order above directed, bands playing, while the general goes down the line.

7. To prepare for marching past, the officers and colours resume their proper places: the line of columns will wheel into a mass of columns, and again wheel in succession, at points placed for that purpose; commanding officers taking care to preserve the distance of twenty-five paces between battalions, and corrections may easily be made at each wheeling angle, provided the leading battalion will continue to proceed a certain number of paces at the double march after the word FORWARD (when the wheel has been completed), in order to prevent the other battalions from crowding upon it. It will generally be found that from fifteen to twenty paces between the words FORWARD and QUICK will be sufficient for the leading battalion: the commanding officers of the following battalions will regulate the interval of time between these two commands, as they may find necessary for the correction of distance.

8. Upon these occasions mounted officers, *only*, will salute: all other officers will march at their respective posts in column; but the leaders of companies will change their flank after the wheel, which brings them on the alignement where the general is placed, and on the word FORWARD QUICK BY YOUR RIGHT.

9. When artillery is in line with the infantry, formed in columns, the officer commanding the artillery must take care to occupy the space with his guns, which he will occupy in

marching

marching in column, so that no time may be lost in getting off the ground.

10. When the mass of columns which has thus marched past, shall reach the original position opposite the reviewing general, the major-general will halt the leading battalion, and the others will close to the front to ten paces' interval between each battalion: he will then wheel the mass into contiguous columns, PRIME AND LOAD WITH CARTRIDGE, and proceed with his intended movements.

11. THE FOLLOWING IS THE ORDER OF MARCH TO BE OBSERVED AT REVIEWS PERFORMED BEFORE HIS MAJESTY; AND IS ALSO TO BE OBSERVED, IN AS FAR AS IT IS APPLICABLE, AT ALL REVIEWS BEFORE GENERAL OFFICERS.

1. Detachment of life guards, or other cavalry, preceded by an officer of the quarter-master-general's department.

2. The King's led horses.

3. Aides-de-camp to the commander-in-chief.

4. Aides-de-camp to the King.

5. Deputy adjutant-general—deputy quarter-master-general—and King's equerries not in waiting.

6. Adjutant-general—quarter-master-general.

7. Commander-in-chief.

8. Princes of the blood.

9. The KING.

10. Gold stick in waiting, and master of the horse, if present.

11. King's equerry in waiting.

12. General

12. General officers *on the staff* in successive order, according to rank and seniority, followed by such other general officers, *not upon the staff*, as may be present; foreign general officers, and equerries and attendants upon the foreign princes.

13. Assistant adjutant-general, assistant quarter-master-general, and deputy assistants.

14. Aides-de-camp, and majors of brigade to general officers on the staff.

15. Royal carriages.

16. Detachment of cavalry.

END OF THE INSPECTION OR REVIEW.

PART V.

PART V.

LIGHT INFANTRY.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR LIGHT INFANTRY FORMATIONS.

S. 1. *Duties, Movements, Training, &c.*

Object of light infantry movements.

1. THE duties of light troops in the field are both varied and important; to them the safe guard of the camp is usually intrusted, and by them the cantonments of the army are protected from the sudden or unexpected approach of the enemy. When the army is in motion, the light infantry reconnoitre the country in its front, feel for the enemy, or clear the way for columns in advancing; and protect them from being too closely pressed upon, or harassed, in retreating. They conceal and cover the movements and manœuvres of the line, watch the motions of the enemy, and ascertain the nature of the ground and country in advance of the main body; and upon their efficiency, the general, often very much, depends for the necessary information, to enable him to regulate and direct his columns.

2. The

To be well versed in all movements of the line.

2. The first principle essential to these objects, is the utmost rapidity of movement, consistent with order and regularity: but it must be fully understood that no latitude can be permitted in the mode of executing the drill and manœuvres laid down in the first, second, and third parts of this book, upon the plea that they are performed by light infantry battalions.

Requisite qualifications of light troops.

3. Judgment, tact, and decision on the part of officers, and individual intelligence and correctness of eye, whether in selecting cover, or in taking aim, are the chief requisites, in good light troops, and which alone can ensure the prompt, and accurate performance of the duties enumerated in No. 1.

Battalions of the line required to practise movements in extended order.

4. When battalions of the line are in perfect order in all the detail of line movements, it is essential that they should be practised in certain extended formations. It is always desirable that a battalion of the line, in the absence of any force of light infantry beyond the light companies of regiments, should be competent to assist in protecting the front and flanks of a column of march; and the formation of an advanced guard and the posting of piquets apply to all descriptions of infantry corps.

General Remark.

5. The first thing to be attended to in the training of light infantry, is the careful instruction

struction of officers and non-commissioned officers. These points, indeed, constitute the elements of discipline in every corps, whose excellence or deficiency will ever be in proportion to the degree of information possessed by those who are to instruct the soldier and superintend his actions; but in light corps especially, the necessity of devoting additional time and attention to this object, will become at once apparent, when we consider the liability of this branch of the service to be detached in small parties, demanding in consequence, in the most junior grades, an extent of judgment and capacity, the exercise of which, circumstances may daily call for in the field. The light infantry officer who, on service, is constantly intrusted with command, and thrown upon his own resources, ought therefore to possess that quick and certain *coup d'oeil* (only to be acquired by practice), which will enable him readily to adapt his measures to the ground on which he may be acting, whether in driving back an enemy, in advancing, or in checking his progress in retiring:—in a word, he should be trained so as to prepare him for every contingency that may occur in the field, and be taught to know and feel that there are few situations in which a small body, ably conducted, may not retire in safety and with honour in presence of a large one.

S. 2. *Signals and Sounds for regulating Movements.*

1. Signals and sounds are necessary in various situations; they are intended as substitutes for the voice: but as they are liable to be misunderstood, they should never be resorted to, excepting when the voice cannot reach; or for the purposes of drill and instruction.

To be as few and as simple as possible.

2. For this reason, and as the same sound upon a different key, or in different time, is apt to occasion mistakes, they ought to be as few and as simple as possible.

No movement to be executed until the last sound of the bugle.

3. No movement should ever be executed until the bugle sound is perfectly finished; and in the combinations of the sounds with the "*Fire*," *that* sound should always be the *last*, otherwise the company might immediately commence a fire upon the spot; and if the march or retreat were to follow, it would not be heard.

4. The following sounds appear sufficient for every situation in which light infantry can be employed:—

The OFFICERS' CALL, { as established, and therefore not numbered.

I. To EXTEND—from that part of the line where the bugle sounds, except preceded by the distinguishing G.

II. To

II. To Close—to the spot from whence it proceeds, and for skirmishers to run in upon the supports, except preceded by the distinguishing G.

III. To Advance—in order of the present formation.

IV. To Halt—in the same order; excepting in retiring by alternate ranks, in which case they form up to the front. The *halt* annuls all previous sounds except to *fire*.

V. To Fire.—If when halted, they fire upon the spot, skirmishers selecting their objects. If on the march, whether advancing in a general line, or retiring by alternate ranks, the men of a file fire alternately, one being always loaded.

VI. Cease Firing.—Every man to cease firing and load.

VII. To Retreat.—When not firing, to retire immediately in *quick* time. The line, reserves, and skirmishers, facing to the right about, if no other order or rate is specified.

VIII. Assembly.—This sound may be used on many occasions, *viz.*, to turn out a corps, or company, at any time by day or night: to repair to a place of rendezvous previously appointed, when extended as skirmishers, and surprised by cavalry in open ground. For

skirmishers, with their supports and reserves to run in upon the battalion.

IX. Incline to the Right. If on the march, *Left shoulders forward.* If halted, the skirmishers will take ground to the right in file.

X. Incline to the Left. *Right shoulders forward,* or *Left face,* according as the skirmishers may be in motion or halted.

XI. The Alarm.

5. The following signals being repetitions, or combinations of the preceding sounds, are not numbered:

The Advance and Retreat.—Sounded when inclining to a flank, indicate, that sufficient space has been gained to a flank, and that the original direction is to be resumed. When a line of skirmishers, or an advanced or rear guard, is required to occupy more space to the right and left, the bugle will sound from the centre extend, upon which they will open out to one half more than their original extension.

Distinction between the assembly and the

6. If when the battalion or company is detached, the skirmishers have to close, they always run in upon the supports in the *first* place, and the assembly will afterwards be the signal for the *whole* to close in upon the battalion:

battalion: but if the assembly sounds first, without any close, it is a signal for the whole to make the best of their way to the rear of the battalion; in which case they must move as rapidly as they can, as this implies the necessity of greater expedition: the supports fall back in steady double time. If skirmishers are pursued when the assembly is sounded, they should be taught to keep wide of the battalion.

7. The ADVANCE—RETREAT—HALT—FIRE—CEASE FIRING, are the only sounds which should be repeated by all the buglers on every occasion.

How the use of the Bugle may be increased.

8. The use of the bugle may be considerably increased by adopting the use of three simple G's, as distinguishing sounds.

One G to denote the right of the line.

Two G's, the centre.

Three G's, the left.

This, preceding any sound, denotes the part of the line to which it applies. For instance, two G's before the EXTEND, signifies to extend from the centre. One G followed by the CLOSE, signifies to close to the right. When no G is prefixed to the EXTEND, it will mean from that part of the line where the bugle sounds.

9. There should be a pause of three seconds between all orders by sounds.

10. Signals by bugle sounds do not apply to bodies of troops in reserve.

Time of movement.

11. When no particular time is specified, light infantry movements, in close order, will usually be in quick time, formations from file or on the march excepted. Formations from extended order, and extensions on the march, are in double time, subject always to the discretion of the commanding officer, who will never apply it, so as to harass or exhaust the men unnecessarily. There are, however, occasions of constant occurrence upon service where no other time will suit,—such, for example, as to seize an advantageous point; and in formations on the march, when it is desirable that the leading company (or section) of a column should continue to advance, while the line is rapidly formed upon it, by those in the rear bringing shoulders forward, and moving up in double time, each company following and conforming to the movement of the one in front of it, without waiting for any word of command. There are many situations in which a light corps may be placed before an enemy, where this kind of training will be found both useful and effective.

NOTE.—Every regiment should have a well marked and simple regimental call.

S. 3. *Detail of Formation.*

1. When soldiers are drilled by word of command, they move at the *last* word, which should be given short:—PACES—FROM THE RIGHT—EXTEND.

PACES—FROM THE CENTRE—EXTEND, &c.

TO THE RIGHT—CLOSE, &c.

ADVANCE—HALT—FIRE—RETIRE, &c.

Light companies should often be practised in judging their own distance of files; the points on which the flanks are to rest being previously notified.

To extend from the halt.

As soon as the order is given, (either by word of command, or by bugle,) the officers drop to the rear: the captain places himself in rear of the centre; the first lieutenant is in rear of the right, the second in rear of the left; the third subaltern remains with the captain, ready to receive his orders. The serjeants fall likewise to the rear. At the last sound of the bugle, the named file stands ast; the remainder trail arms, face, and extend in quick time, unless ordered to move at the double march.

2. The front rank men of files move straight before them, covering correctly on the march; their respective rear rank men cast their eye over the inward shoulder, and tap their front rank men, at the distance of two, four, six

or

or any other given number of paces, as a signal for them to halt, front, and order arms.

Distance of files.

3. The paces are indicated by the previous caution of the commanding officer; but if no number is specified, six paces is the regulated distance between the files. If the left hand file, who leads on this occasion, be a steady man, and has moved correctly on his front, the line will require little dressing, too much attention to which, in extended order, is to be carefully avoided. If the distance between the files be not correct, it must not be altered by closing or opening out: this can only be done upon the march.

To fire in extended order on the spot.

4. So soon as the "*Fire*" has sounded, the front rank men fire and commence loading, and the rear rank men (when it is their turn to fire) take a step of ten inches to the right with the right foot, and, as soon as they have fired, they will again cover their front rank men and load.

To cease firing.

5. In this manner the firing is continued, until the bugle sounds the "*Cease.*" After this sound, not a shot must be heard; the unloaded men re-load as rapidly as possible, and the whole then remain steady, and ready to move.

6.

To fire kneeling on the spot.

6. This caution is repeated by the officers, and where there is any deficiency of them, by the serjeants, along the line. The bugle sounds the "*Fire,*" and the whole drop instantly on the knee. The right knee is on the ground, and the right leg to the rear. The rear rank man, in coming down, disengages to the right, so as to be able to fire clear of his front rank man. The firing proceeds as before, with this difference, that the rear rank men retain their place, and continue disengaged, to avoid the awkward movement of covering and uncovering upon their knees.

To fire lying.

7. The caution to *Lie down* is given as above, and at the "*Fire,*" the whole drop on both knees, (the rear rank men disengaging,) and throw themselves on their bellies;—the firing proceeds as before; the men load on their knees, or they may load lying, though the latter is an objectionable position, and very liable to accident. Riflemen may fire on their backs in favourable situations; in this position, the feet are crossed, the right foot passing through the sling of the rifle, and the piece supported by it; but this position is not suited to the musket of light infantry companies of the line: it furnishes a steady aim with a rifle. If, in a very exposed situation, the soldier attempts to load lying,

lying, he will, after priming, roll over on his back, and, placing the butt between his legs, the lock upwards, and the muzzle a little elevated, draw his ramrod, and go on with his loading without exposure, rolling over on his breast again when ready to fire.

The line will advance.

8. At the last sound of the bugle to "*Advance,*" the whole step off in quick time, keeping their distances from the centre.

The line will retire.

9. At the last sound of the bugle the whole go to the left about and retire together, rear rank leading.

To fire—advancing.

10. At this signal the front rank man of each file fires and instantly drops to the rear, by the left of his comrade, and loads upon the march; and as soon as he is loaded, he will give the word "*Ready*" in an under tone of voice, and the other man fires and proceeds in the same manner, taking care that both men are never unloaded at the same time. The men must cover their file leaders, who, without withdrawing their attention from the objects in their front, can with a glance of the eye avoid losing distance, or getting before or behind the file next to them towards their centre.

NOTE.—When any difficulty is experienced in loading on the

the march, (with riflemen, for example,) the men, after firing, may drop to the rear, and halt to load, running up to their file-leaders (who continue moving on) when loaded, and giving the word "*Ready*" as before—so on alternately. In parade practice, however, on open ground, it is desirable that the men should always go through the motions on the march, as it tends to make them expert and handy with their arms.

To fire—retiring. 11. If in motion the whole halt; the front rank men give their fire, and move straight to the rear, loading on the march: when their loading is completed they will halt, front, and kneel down, in the position of making ready. Then the rear rank men (who had kneeled down when their front rank men retired) will fire and retire smartly in the same manner, passing to the proper left of their front rank men, and commencing their loading as soon as they have passed, halt, front, and kneel when loaded, as before:—thus the ranks continue to retire alternately, as soon as they hear the ramrods working of the rank that has retired. In the field, however, the distance to be taken by each rank in retreating will depend upon the movements of the enemy, the nature of the ground, and other circumstances; but when cover presents itself at hand, the men should always avail themselves of it.

Halt. 12. At this signal, if *advancing*, the skirmishers

skirmishers kneel down, taking advantage of any inequalities of the ground in their neighbourhood, and continuing to fire until the *Cease firing* has sounded. If the skirmishers *are retiring*, the rank next the enemy will stand fast (or face about if not already fronting towards the enemy), and the other rank closes up to it, kneeling down; and the whole continue firing, taking care that both ranks are never unloaded at the same time.

To close. 13. On the signal being sounded, the men trail arms, face to the point required, close in quick time, and order arms. *If on the march*, the named file moves steadily on, the remainder make a half-turn and close in double time.

To extend while a division is advancing;— from the centre— from the right— or, from the left. 14. In all these cases, the files from which the extension takes place, move straight forward in quick time; the others make a half turn to the flank to which they are ordered to extend, and move off at double time. As soon as each file has got its regular distance, it will turn to the front, and advance, resuming the quick time; rear rank men covering their front rank men, and keeping in line with the directing file.

To incline to the right 15. The skirmishers make a half-turn to the flanks to which they are ordered to incline, (rear

Incline to the left. Advance. (rear rank men covering their front rank men, and continue in the diagonal direction, until the "*Advance*" is sounded, when they will return to their original front, and move forward as before. If, when the skirmishers have made the half-turn, the bugle should sound the "*Incline*" a second time, the men's shoulders should be brought up, so as to complete the face, and march in file.

To fire, inclining to a flank. 16. To fire when inclining to the right or left, the front rank men halt, take steady aim and fire, then drop to the rear, passing behind their rear rank men, and loading on the march; the rear rank men halt and fire as soon as their front rank men are loaded, and drop to the rear of their front rank, and so on alternately.

To halt from the incline. 17. At this signal, the whole front, and kneel down, continuing to fire until the signal for "*Cease Firing*" has sounded.

Change front: to the right, on the right file. 18. The right file faces to the right, kneeling, the others rise up and trail: at the word *Double March*, they bring the left shoulders forward, and form on the right file. The distance will be preserved from the halted flank. Each file will move in the shortest line to its situation in the new position, and instantly kneel down.

Double March.

19. But

Right or Left Shoulders forward.

19. But in throwing a wing backward or forward, the distance of files must be preserved from the inward flank, and they must look to the outward flank for dressing, and bring forward the shoulders gradually, conformably to its progress.

Change front on the left file, right thrown back.

Double March.

20. The left hand file faces to the *right*, kneeling. The others rise up, trail, and face to the right about; step off at the double march, and, when in line, face about and kneel.

General remark.

21. The movements and formations laid down in this section comprise the elementary part of light infantry drill in extended order, as taught the soldier on parade. The application of the drill to field purposes, comprising the instruction of the soldier in the value of ground, &c., will be treated of in the next and subsequent sections, which have for their object the training of the soldier to a practical knowledge of his duties in the field before an enemy.

S. 4. *Skirmishing.*

1. Skirmishing or acting in extended order requires, more than any other military formation, constant practice, on every possible variety of ground, to make a soldier expert at it: here the sagacity and experience of the man

man must often in a great measure supply the want of orders and directions from the officer. To his own eye and judgment the skirmisher must often trust in regulating his movements: it is therefore obvious, that without intelligence, and habits of observing, and profiting by, localities,—and without confidence in himself, the result of knowledge thus acquired, and of expertness in the use of his musket,—no man ever will become an efficient skirmisher.

2. A company, or companies, may extend by files from any part of the line, and at various distances, as may be ordered; and it is a rule that the men of a file invariably act together, to inspire confidence, and to afford mutual protection and support.

Detached skirmishers

3. Detached skirmishers are governed by circumstances and situation: they must never, however, get too far in advance, so as to expose their flanks, but must regulate their movements by the files upon their right and left. They will fire either standing, kneeling, or lying, as the case may require, ever bearing in mind that the grand requisites in skirmishing are a sure, quick, and steady aim, together with that ready tact in seizing, at a glance, those local advantages which enable a man to do the utmost injury to his enemy, with he least exposure to himself.

4. In

General line of skirmishers.

4. In the field, skirmishers advance in a general line, pushing on, or falling back from post to post, and never standing exposed even for an instant, when there is cover of any kind at hand. It is therefore always proper, when obliged to advance, across an open space, upon an enemy posted under cover, to make a quick and simultaneous rush towards the point: a regular and systematic advance, across such ground, however resolutely conducted, would entail a great and very useless sacrifice of lives.

To advance in a general line firing.

5. At the signal TO FIRE, the front rank man of each file fires and instantly drops to the rear by the left of his comrade, and loads as quickly as he can upon the MARCH, giving the word READY when loaded, as the signal for his file leader (who has continued leading on, in a threatening attitude) to fire. As often, however, as cover of any kind presents itself within reach, each file, in mutual concert, will make for it, one man running on while his comrade covers his advance, by aiming at the enemy, and distracting his attention: he then in turn runs forward, when the cover is secured, and both continue to fire from the spot as many shots as circumstances and the general movements of the line may sanction, always remembering, that the great object in advancing

advancing is to drive back the enemy's skirmishers, rapidly and in confusion, on their reserves, giving them no time for rallying, or making a stand. It is by individual intelligence and judgment in the knowledge of ground and choice of cover,—by the combination of individual exertion, directed to a general end, rather than by the semblance of uniformity,—that the proficiency and excellence of light troops must be judged and estimated.

To retire firing.

6. On a plain the skirmishers may retire by alternate ranks, as prescribed in last section but whenever the country is in the least degree wooded, broken, or inclosed, it will always be found advisable to retire in a general line, trusting to the skill of the officer, and the firmness and intelligence of the men, for disputing it successfully. By this method the well-trained skirmisher, whose eye is formed by practice, will often find cover and destroy his enemy, where his inexperienced comrade would stand exposed. Before moving, the skirmisher is taught to scan the ground he is to traverse in falling back, and having selected his next station, he will make for it with the utmost expedition. When a line of skirmishers is hard pressed in retreating, there is no better way of giving them relief, and at the

same

same time of offering an obstinate resistance to the enemy, than by extending the supports as often as an eligible line of defence presents itself, the old skirmishers passing quickly through the new line, forming into supports; again in turn extending, and so on alternately. Even on a plain this will be found to be the best mode of disputing the ground: the supports, after extending, should lie down until the old skirmishers have passed through them.

Accurately dressed lines no object in skirmishing.

7. Accurately dressed lines are not an object in skirmishing: the men must be guided entirely by the nature of the ground they are acting on; all that can be desired on this head is, that the files should be so placed as to support, and fire clear of, each other.

Skirmishers to be carefully trained to a knowledge of ground and distances.

8. Cover, as already observed, being the great object to be attended to, skirmishers, whether advancing or retiring, must be taught carefully to examine the ground they are to pass over, previous to quitting shelter; and to select some eligible spot for their next halting-place. Any open space to be traversed in advancing should always be run over; while, in retiring, they should endeavour, if the ground is open, to get beyond the accurate range of musketry from the spot they

they quit, before coming to a stand, thereby rendering the shelter they are leaving, useless to the enemy; and obliging them, in coming on, to pass over such open space, exposed to the destructive fire of men who are both sheltered and prepared.

General rule for loading.

9. It is a rule that both men of a file are never unloaded at the same time; that they always load when practicable under cover, previous to moving in advance, and after falling back in retreat, from one spot to another.

All unnecessary bugling to be avoided.

10. It will often be prudent to communicate orders to a line of skirmishers, by passing them along the rear, instead of betraying an intended movement by the bugle. For "*the retreat*" to one party is the "*advance*" to their opponents, who are generally well acquainted with the sounds and prepared to act upon them. Too much bugling under any circumstances is to be avoided, as tending to distract the attention of the soldier, and to cause confusion.

Supports and Reserve.

11. No line of skirmishers ever ought to be without near and sufficient supports, sustained by a main reserve, when acting at any distance from the main body. But it is inexpedient to distribute troops, in a variety of small supports, in turn supported by several

reserves, in rear of skirmishers. On an advanced guard *alone* numerous small parties are required for the purpose of feeling and exploring. But under all circumstances, the reserve should ever be a single body preserved entire and compact.

Strength and distances of supports and reserves.

12. With respect to the strength of supports, the rule is, that they should be composed of numbers equal to the line of skirmishers; and in general they should move from one hundred to a hundred and fifty yards in their rear. The reserve should always be at least one-third part of the whole body, and should generally be kept, from sixty to a hundred yards, in rear of the supports.

General rule for the movement of supports.

13. The supports advance and retire generally in line, except when threatened with cavalry, when they will move in close column of sections; and skirmishers, in running in on a support, form up in sections in its rear. Supports move to a flank in column of sections.

Skirmishers to overlap the flanks of line.

In covering the advance of lines, skirmishers will take care to protect and overlap the flanks.

14. In

Relieving skirmishers when halted.

14. In relieving a line of skirmishers, the new line extends in the rear, out of reach of the enemy's fire, and afterwards runs up to the old line; each file of the former proceeding rapidly to the rear, under the protecting fire of the new line, and, when out of reach of the enemy's fire, they close in upon their supports. But should an immediate advance be intended, the relieved skirmishers ought to remain in the line, lying down, instead of exposing themselves to a fire whilst retiring.

When advancing.

15. If the relief takes place while advancing, the new skirmishers will run up in the same way, and pass briskly in front of the others; the old skirmishers *lie down* till they are out of the enemy's fire, after which they close upon their supports as before.

When retiring.

16. If relieving while retiring, the new skirmishers extend a considerable distance in the rear, and each man looks out for a good situation. The old skirmishers continue to retire in their usual order, until within 20 or 30 paces of the former, they then run through them to the rear, until they are out of reach of the enemy's fire, after which they close.

Supports and skirmishers to relieve each other.

17. Those which have been acting as supports may relieve their own skirmishers in this way,—in which case the latter afterwards

form in as many parties of support as the others consisted of, closing to the right and left accordingly, when out of reach of the enemy's fire, and always, when practicable, completing their ammunition.

The whole relieved, or strengthened, or diminished.

18. But if the reserves and skirmishers are *all* relieved by fresh parties, each of the supports preserves the relative position with respect to *their own* skirmishers, until the two lines have relieved each other. Any *part* of a line of skirmishers may be relieved in the same manner: it may also be strengthened by throwing forward one or more companies or sections to particular parts of the line; in that case they must mix with the others, and divide the distances, or it may be weakened by calling in one or more sections; in which case the remaining skirmishers will extend to the right and left, so as to cover the vacancies of those who retired.

General rule to be observed when skirmishing at a distance from the column or line.

19. If a company be directed to skirmish at a distance, detached from the timely support of the column or line, one general principle must be observed, namely, that never more than one half must be sent forward to skirmish at a time; the other half remain formed and ready to support.

General rule for a battalion skirmishing.

20. When a battalion is employed in skirmishing, at a distance from the column, and

is

is required to extend its full complement of skirmishers, (which should never exceed a third of the whole,) the six right companies will move forward sixty paces, the three left companies, of the six, halt with closed ranks, the other three, moving on, extend in double time upon the march, from any named file, which file moves straight to its front in quick time. The supports divide the ground by companies in the rear, one towards each flank, the third behind the centre; and when the skirmishers are a hundred yards in advance, they will move on followed by the reserve. The distribution and distance of the supports must, however, always be left in a great measure to the field officer in charge of them, and he can be guided only by circumstances, and the nature of the country in his front. Should one half of the line of skirmishers, for example, occupy safe and strong ground, while the other half is exposed to danger on the plain, it is obvious that the one wing would require more support than the other. The commanding officer moves on, at the head of the main reserve of four companies, to sustain the whole, sometimes in column, sometimes in line, as the situation and the presence of cavalry, or the fire of artillery may require. His eye embraces the whole theatre of operations, and he is ever ready to avail himself of every advantage that may offer.

21. Should

The battalion from column covering the front of the division or brigade.

Plate 33.

21. Should the battalion *in column*, be required to cover the front of the division or brigade, the front company will, on the caution, move to the right in column of sections by the command, *Sections, left shoulders forward, forward*, following the direction of the outer flank of the third company from the front, which extends from its centre: the second company from the front moves *sections right shoulders forward*, to the left, in like manner following the direction of the left of No. 3. Nos. 1 and 2, when on the extremities of the *extended line* of No. 3, will *shoulders forward* into line, and extend from their inner flanks. Distance between skirmishers six paces. Simultaneous with the above movements No. 4 wheels forward by sections to the right, and moves to form the right support No. 5, by sections to the left to form the left support; No. 6 marches direct to the front and forms the centre support. The remaining four companies of the battalion form the reserve. Should a change of front be required (to the right), No. 4 wheels to the right and extends from the right: Nos. 6 and 5 bring their shoulders forward, and march to their places in the new alignement, where they extend and elongate the line of skirmishers. The old skirmishers close to that flank which will remove them farthest from the enemy's fire, and as soon as closed are marched

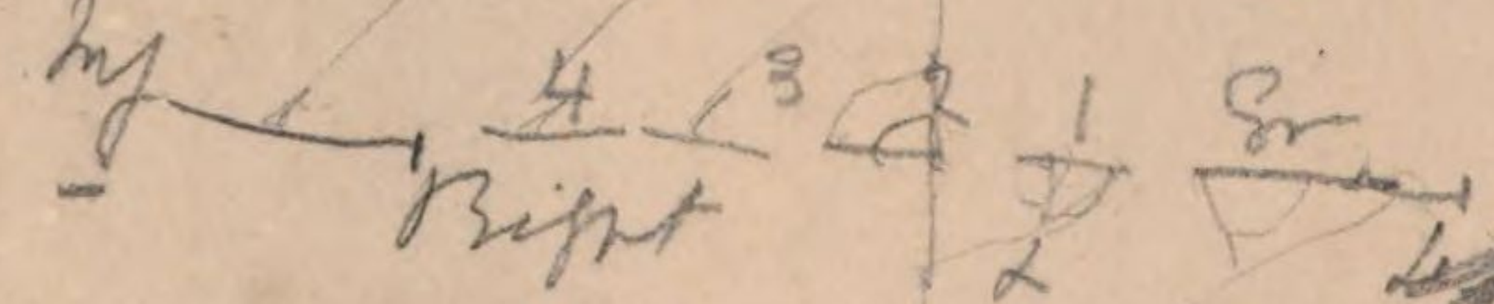
Change of front (for example, to the right).

Plate 34.

Line will change front
quarter distance -
2 Right Companies -

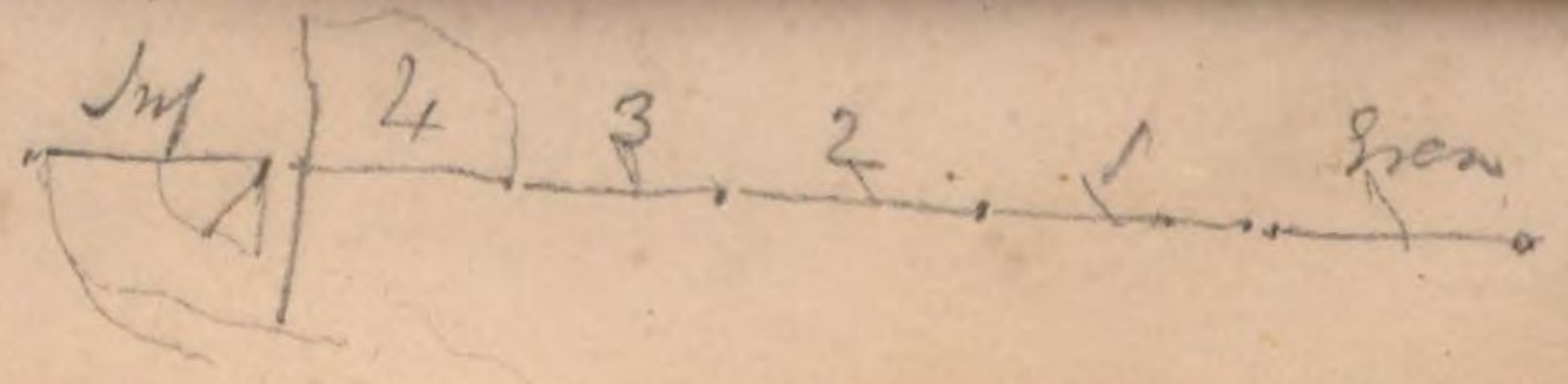
K Right on No 2 - wheeling
remainder 8 paces
Right about faces -

all 8 paces -

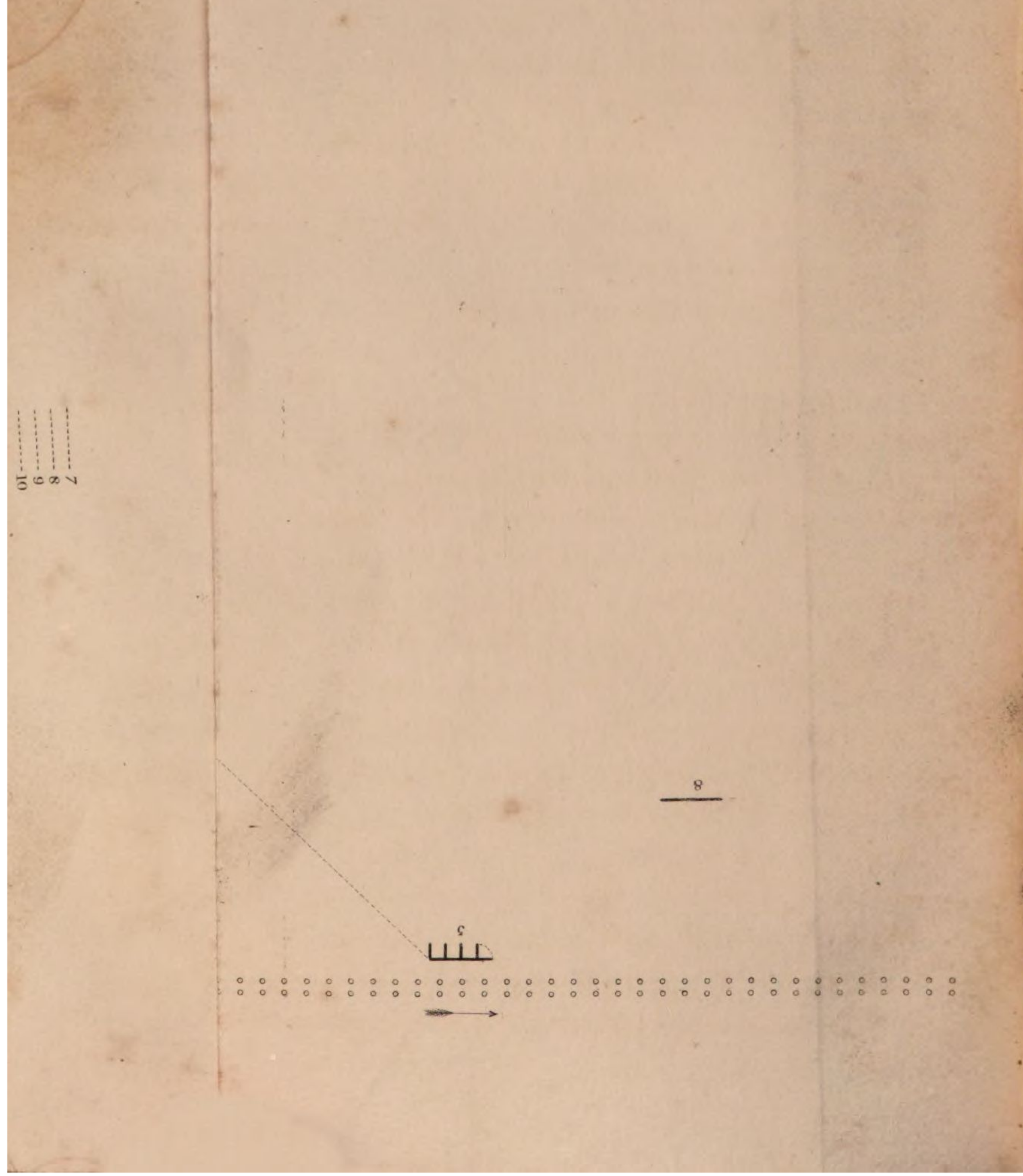


~~Left~~ wheel -

Quick March



Nº XXXIV.



marched by companies to the rear of the reserve, which sends out the three front companies to form new supports.

22. When a light battalion marches in open column in the vicinity of an enemy, one company will be formed in front, as an advanced guard; one in rear, as a rear guard; and half a company on each flank, as flanking parties.

23. The same disposition will extend to a brigade of the line, when the three light companies may be employed in the same manner.

Flanking parties.

24. The company to perform this duty will extend its sub-divisions, so as to cover the entire flank, or flanks, of the column with intermediate supports if necessary. The whole will move in file parallel to the column, and the leading file will take the outside flank skirmishers of the advanced guard for his general line of march. When the column halts, the flankers and supports face outwards to the enemy.

How the unity of companies when skirmishing is best preserved.

25. When more than one company is employed in skirmishing, one company should skirmish and another support. Unnecessary division of parts is always objectionable.

Skirmishers to clear the front of the battalion when the assembly sounds.

26. When a company is skirmishing in front of a battalion, and the ASSEMBLY sounds, it is of the utmost consequence that the front of

of the battalion should be left clear as soon as possible.

How to run in on the battalion.

27. The skirmishers, therefore, if detached to any distance, must endeavour instantly to discover the exact situation of the battalion and decide in what direction to run in, adopting that mode which will least impede, and soonest leave it in a situation for firing or advancing.

Formation of square.

28. When the battalion forms square, they will take the most direct and short way to the rear, and close up and compose the rear face.

29. If the skirmishers *are not called in* while the battalion performs any movement, they must, with the utmost rapidity, change their situation, so as to correspond with the new order of the battalion; and their attention and activity are chiefly required in protecting it during the change.

Instructions for skirmishers and their supports when charged by cavalry.

30. In skirmishing across a country either in advance or in retreat, there is nothing to be more guarded against, than a sudden rush of cavalry upon the extended line, while passing over any open space that may present itself. To protect the skirmishers from assaults of this nature, to give them time to rally,

rally, and to cover their formation, is one of the chief duties of supports, which should therefore be composed of compact bodies, not fixed to any particular point, but ever presenting themselves where the skirmishers are most exposed to danger from the enemy's horse—watching the flanks, and such other parts of the line as may be threatened, or appear most vulnerable.

Supports are points of formation for the skirmishers when charged, only when there is time to form without confusion.

31. It is clearly understood that the supports are only to be considered as points of formation for the skirmishers, when there is sufficient time to run in upon them and complete a formation without risk or confusion, and under no circumstances so as to interfere with their opening a fire when necessary. When circumstances render it imprudent for the skirmishers to endeavour to join the support, they will in that case run in upon their own centre, and form the rallying square.

Supports and reserve approach the threatened point previously to forming square.

32. On the first appearance of cavalry the nearest support should move towards the the threatened point, and, forming square as directed in Sec. 24, of Part II. for a company in close order, interpose itself as much as possible between the skirmishers and the cavalry. The main reserve will at the same time draw nearer the supports, and, forming square,

square, sustain the smaller bodies of which it forms the centre.

Rallying square.

33. The ALARM followed by the ASSEMBLY will be sounded on the first appearance of the enemy's cavalry, when, if there is no cover within reach, and not sufficient time to form on the support, the skirmishers will form the RALLYING SQUARE, the officer on whom it forms taking care so to station himself for its formation, as not to cloud the front of the support.

Rallying square need not be formed when cover is at hand.

34. But when there is cover near, such as a hedge, ditch, copse, &c., the skirmishers should at once make for it, and aid the supports by a cross fire.

General remark.

35. Even in the most sudden rush of cavalry that can happen, when there is neither cover nor time to form the rallying square, the individual firmness and intelligence of the men should enable them to protect each other. They should be taught to make formations for defence, however small, against contingencies of this nature; two files uniting in the first instance back to back, then three and four files, and so on: this practice will teach them to make the best use of their numbers, whatever they may be; and a skirmisher should be taught to know and feel that, *individually*,

dually, a man on foot, with a loaded musket and bayonet in his hand, ought to be a match for any horseman. To face the danger with firmness and steadiness is, in the smallest bodies, and in the worst emergencies, the safest course.

S. 5. *Advanced Guard.*

General intention of advanced guards.

1. Advanced guards are formed for the purpose of feeling the way through a country in front of a column, or the columns of an army—to gain intelligence of the enemy, and to give timely notice of his vicinity or approach, in order that the main body may have time to prepare either for making or repelling an attack.

Their strength and composition vary according to the object contemplated.

2. Advanced guards are sometimes pushed a considerable distance in advance of the column, for the purpose of seizing a post, or of anticipating the enemy on some important point: their strength and composition, therefore, must depend on the distance they are required to precede the main body, the object contemplated, the nature of the country, and a variety of other circumstances which can only be appreciated on the spot. The general rules and principles, however, which should govern the one, are, with a few obvious exceptions,

General rules applicable to all.

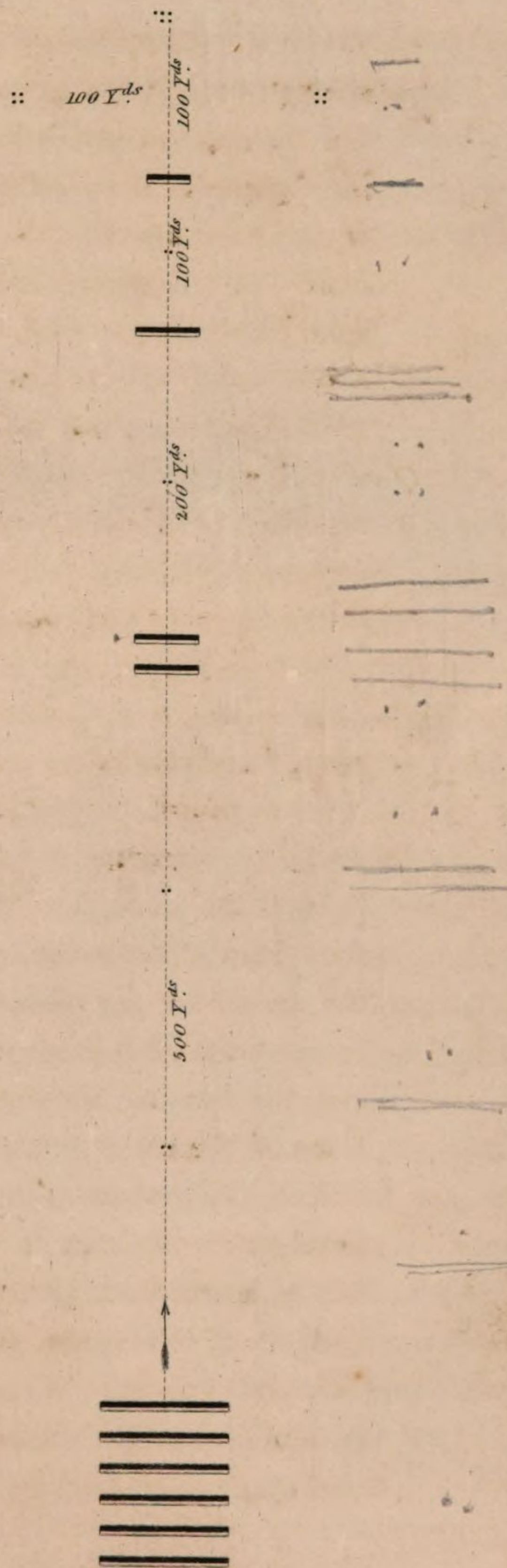
exceptions, applicable to all. To guard against surprise or unexpected collision with the enemy,—to watch his motions, or to gain intelligence of his situation,—and to cover and conceal the movements and formation of the main body,—are manifestly the great leading principles upon which advanced guards should be conducted, whether the object be to fall suddenly on the enemy's piquets, to dislodge him from a post, or merely to give warning of his vicinity. Vigilance, and a careful study of localities, are in every case the mainsprings of success.

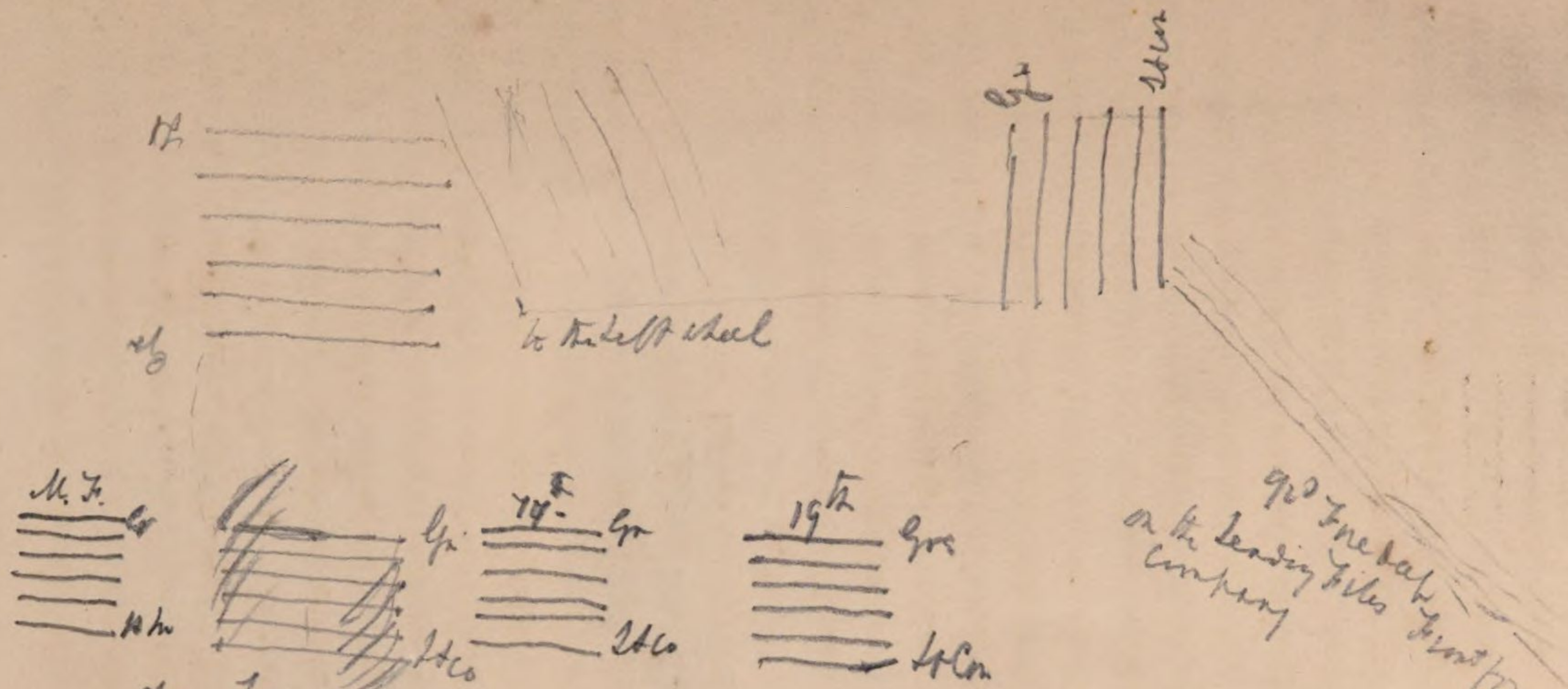
Advanced guard on the line of march.

3. When a column is marching along a road, the advanced guard will be composed of one or more companies, divided into four parts or sections; the two rear sections [under the command of the senior officer] will form the reserve, advanced in front of the column; the second section from the front will be 200 yards in front of the reserve; and the leading section will be 100 yards in front of the second section, and will detach a double file, under the command of a corporal, 100 yards in its front, and a double file to each flank, 100 yards from the road, and about 50 yards more retired than the corporal's party. These detached files must carefully examine all houses and enclosures within their reach; but should more distant

objects

Advanced Guard on the Line of March.





change Front to rear by countermarch of Subdivisions round the centre —

Halt front - dress

Florian Garden Wales

objects present themselves, patroles must be detached from the second section for their particular examination. Single files of communication will be placed between the different divisions, and also between its reserve and the head of the column. The distance between these two last must be regulated by circumstances; but it will be commonly estimated at about 500 yards during the day, and about 300 during the night.

Precautions to be observed in approaching a village.

4. An advanced guard, on approaching a village, must proceed with great precaution, if feeling for an enemy. The reserve and advanced parties on the road must be halted beyond the reach of musketry from the village, while strong flanking parties are sent round the outskirts so as to threaten the rear. The corporal's party on the road may then move on, in single files, with a considerable interval between them, followed by as many files in succession, from the support, as may be deemed expedient; and the supports and reserve will move forward when it has been ascertained that the place is not in the occupation of the enemy. The leading files should be instructed that the first object to be sought for in a village, is the church, from the belfry of which a view of the surrounding country may be gained.

5. The

Similar precautions to be observed previous to entering a defilé or hollow way.

5. The head of an advanced guard must never commit itself by entering a defilé, or hollow way, without previously occupying the heights on either side by flanking parties. When the heights are thus crowned, the leading party on the road will send on a single file, which will be followed by others in succession, near enough to keep the preceding one in view—the flanking parties on either hand continuing to precede the centre until the defilé is passed, when they will gradually fall back to their former stations, and the whole move forward in the original formation.

Advanced guard on a plain in presence of an enemy.

6. An advanced guard on a plain, in presence of an enemy, is in reality no more than a line of skirmishers with their supports and reserve; and the rules laid down on this subject, under the head of *Skirmishing*, are therefore applicable to the object here contemplated.

A line of skirmishers not required when not in actual contact with the enemy.

7. Generally speaking, however, when not in actual contact with the enemy, an advanced guard need not be preceded by a line of skirmishers; detached parties and judicious patrolling are the best means of attaining the desired end. One general rule obtains, viz. That woods, villages, and, generally, every local object capable of affording concealment

General rule in approaching villages, woods, &c.

to

to an enemy, will invariably be turned, and the rear threatened previous to being *felt* in front: by this means the enemy will be discovered, and most frequently dislodged without loss, as he will naturally fall back before his retreat is intercepted, while, if attacked at once in front, without such previous movements, he might still retire in safety after having inflicted a severe loss on the assailants.

Bogs and impassable ground of every kind to be carefully examined.

8. Should the advanced guard meet with bogs or other impassable ground of any extent, they must not leave it between themselves and the column, without careful examination; otherwise they might leave an enemy concealed within the chain, and not only risk being cut off themselves, but compromise the safety of the column.

The commander of an advanced guard to observe every thing himself, and to be distinct and accurate in his reports.

9. The officer commanding an advanced guard should endeavour to observe every thing himself, taking especial care that any reports he may have to make are clear, decided, and correct.

Conduct of detached parties and patroles in falling in with the enemy.

10. No specific rules can be laid down for the conduct of an advanced guard in every case of falling in with an enemy. It cannot, however, be too strongly impressed on all employed on services of this nature, that nothing is more dangerous or reprehensible than

than offensive or defensive measures undertaken in an isolated manner: advanced parties and patroles should never, therefore, be suffered to engage of their own accord, if it can possibly be avoided; but, as before remarked, they should, on the first appearance of an enemy, either fall back under cover or hide themselves on the spot (making a signal to the rear) according as he may be coming on, or stationary,—in either case securing all the advantages of a surprise.

Every advanced guard should be provided with axes and intrenching tools.

11. Every advanced guard should be provided with a proportion of axes and intrenching tools.

The advanced guard should invariably reform after dislodging the enemy from any post.

12. No advanced guard or detached party of any kind, after carrying a post, should ever be permitted to advance without reforming. The men should on no account pursue the flying enemy, but reform rapidly, and wait for further orders.

Usual mode of forming advanced and rear guards in the field.

13. Armies in the field usually form their advanced and rear guards from the troops employed on piquet: these, whether they consist of two or more companies, observing different roads, are under the field officer of the day, and the formation and arrangement will be precisely similar to that laid down in No. 3 of this section. The commanding

commanding officer retaining at least a third of his whole force, in reserve, in rear of the centre.

PATROLES.

Strength.

1. The employment and judicious management of patroles, form an essential part of the precautionary duties of an advanced guard. They may consist of a subaltern's party, a serjeant and twelve, or a corporal and six men, according to circumstances.

Utility of Patroles.

2. The object of a patrole is to obtain intelligence, and to ascertain the presence of an enemy. They are detached to examine houses, copses, enclosures, &c. near the line of march, capable of affording concealment to the enemy, and too distant to be inspected by the advanced or flanking parties. All heights from which a view of the surrounding country can be obtained, should also be ascended by patroles, precaution being used to see every thing, if possible, without being seen.

A Patrole never commits itself in action.

3. It is a rule, therefore, that a patrole never commits itself in action, if it can be avoided, but retires (under cover if possible) as soon as the requisite information is obtained.

4. The

The rules laid down for advanced guards apply equally to Patroles.

4. The rules laid down for the conduct of an advanced guard, in approaching places capable of concealing an enemy, apply with equal force, although upon a smaller scale, to a patrole. The house, or object, to be searched should, in the first place, be turned by one or two files on either side, and beyond the certain range of musketry; and this movement of itself will, in most cases, induce the enemy to leave it; whereas, if the approach were made in front, it could only be at the certain risk of losing men without an object. When the flanking files have passed the house, so as to command the rear, a file of the patrole advances to examine it, another file remaining behind will watch its motions, and be ready to give assistance, supported by the reserve if required. As soon as the file in advance is satisfied that there is no enemy in the place, one of the men will make a signal, by holding up his firelock above his head, in a horizontal position, and the rear file will join and move forward as before; the flanking files falling back at the same time to their former places.

To ascend a hill.

5. On coming to a hill the same caution will be observed. The patrole halting at the bottom will detach a file or two, in both directions round the base, before any one is permitted to ascend. A file is then sent to the top

top with instructions not to show itself upon the summit, but to make its observations from behind the brow, creeping on, or lying down, according to circumstances, and the nature of the ground. If no enemy is in sight, a signal as above directed will be made.

S. 6. *Rear Guard.*

General intention of rear guards.

1. A rear guard is an advanced guard reversed: it covers the retreating column from any sudden assault in the rear, and it prevents the enemy from stealing round, and gaining on the flanks of the main body. The prevention of straggling is also an important part of the duties of a rear guard.

Preparations for retreat are made in the rear.

2. All preparations for retreat, before the enemy, should be made in the rear. For example, a line, previous to falling back, will extend its skirmishers behind it, concealed from view as much as possible, and with supports and reserve ready to sustain them: these become the rear guard. In many cases an intended retrograde movement is concealed under a demonstration of attack, and the troops so employed in deceiving the enemy, will naturally become the rear guard, after that object is attained.

Strength and composition dependent on local considerations.

3. The strength and composition of a rear guard can only be determined on the spot, by the force and vicinity of the enemy, the nature of the country, and the degree of resistance that may probably be required, to give the column time to surmount any obstacles or difficulties in the route. The object being that of securing the retreat from interruption or annoyance, resistance will generally cease when that end is gained; but when the pursuit is close and vigorous, every hedge-row, copse, or defilé becomes a post, which a rear guard must defend with obstinacy to the last.

Degree of resistance required from a rear guard.

To be well provided with intrenching tools and axes.

4. Every rear guard should be well provided with axes and intrenching tools, to enable it to block up defilés and bridges, to break up the road, and throw impediments in the way of a pursuing enemy.

The rear guard to be informed of all obstacles in the route, and reinforced when necessary from the main body.

5. When a retreating column meets with obstacles in its route, or has to pass a bridge or defilé, an officer will be sent back to apprize the rear guard of the circumstance, in order that it may be prepared to hold the enemy in check, during the delay which must ensue; and when hard pressed it will generally be advisable to halt a detachment at any defilé or bridge the column may have passed, to make preparations for defence; to protect the

the rear guard in passing over, and afterwards to assist it in maintaining the post as long as may be practicable or expedient. Posts of this description may often be defended until dark, and thereby afford the greatest relief to the retreating column.

Flanking parties to be constantly on the alert to prevent the enemy from stealing round the flanks.

6. While the rear guard is disputing any point, the flanking parties must be particularly on the alert, to notice any attempt the enemy may make to turn its flanks, by a ford for example, when the stand is made at a bridge. Indeed, it may always be presumed, that a pursuing enemy will lose no opportunity, that may present itself, of stealing round the flanks of their opponents.

Retiring across a plain in presence of infantry only.

7. On coming to a plain (where there is no danger from cavalry), and closely followed by the enemy, the reserve and supports retire rapidly into the plain, beyond the range of musketry from the enclosures. The supports will then extend and lie down, and the skirmishers, when driven to the edge of the inclosures, will run quickly to the rear, pass through the new line of skirmishers, and close into supports.

In presence of cavalry.

8. But when the enemy's cavalry is near, the main reserve will halt in compact order, and draw off the skirmishers before retiring into

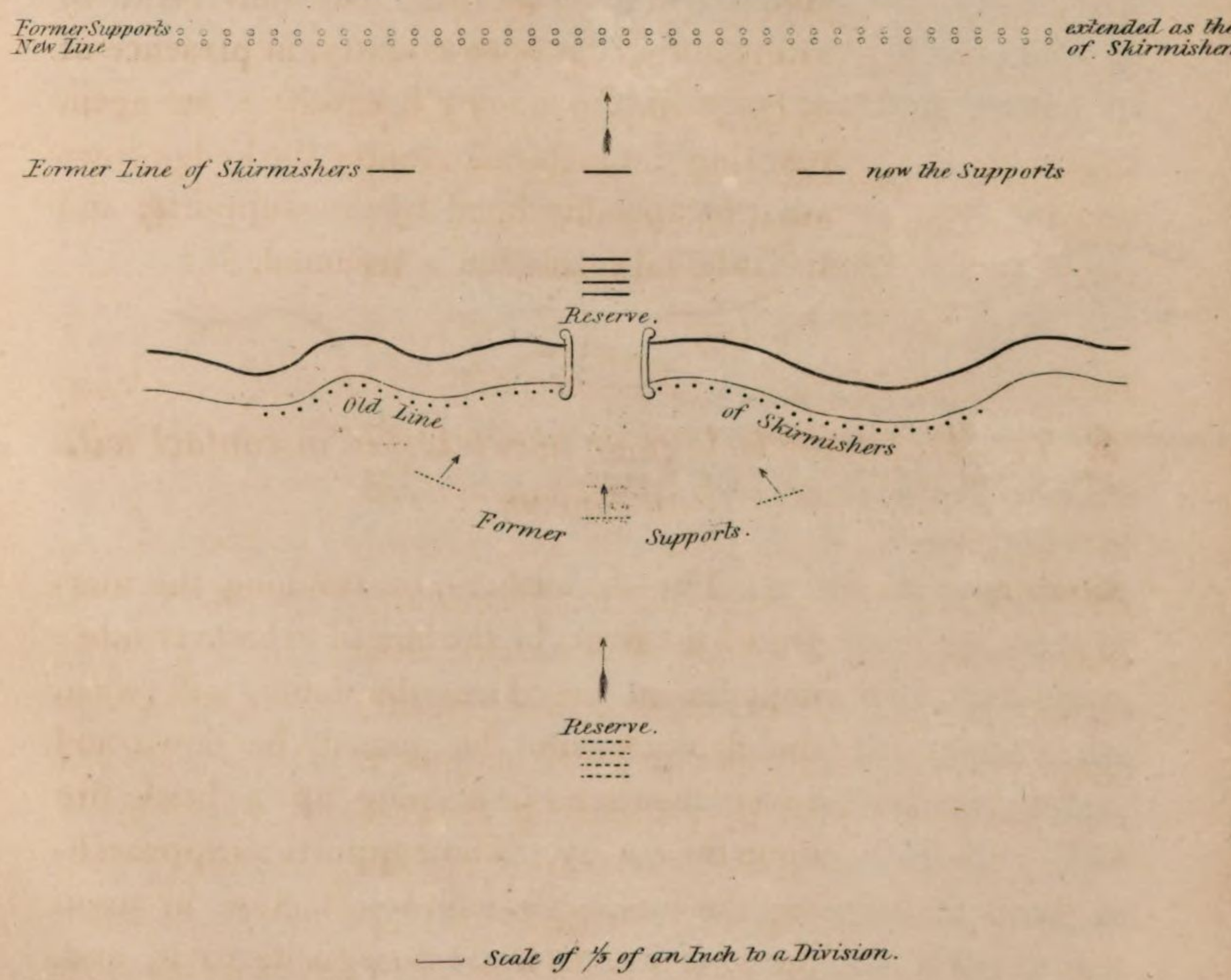
into the plain. The supports first retire past the reserve on either flank; and on a given signal the skirmishers will run rapidly to the rear, close upon the supports, and the whole forming close columns of sections will retire with expedition across the open country. The main reserve will then fall back with as much celerity as may be consistent with good order; and the rear guard, formed in separate bodies, but affording mutual protection and support to one another, may thus retire in safety across an open country, in presence of a body of the enemy's cavalry: on again reaching the inclosed country the hedge-rows must be speedily lined by the supports, and the original formation is resumed.

S. 7. *To pass a Bridge or short Defilé in contact with an Enemy.*

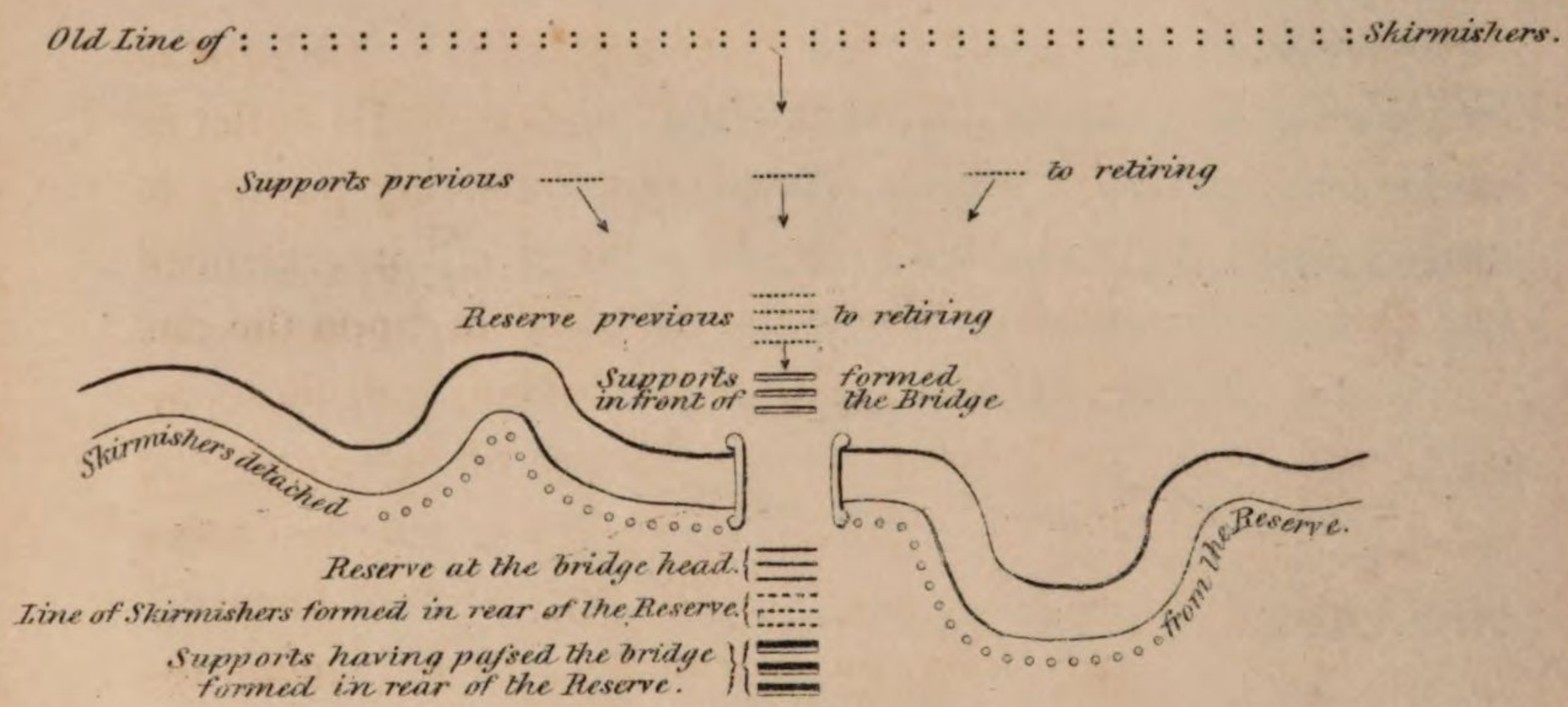
Advancing.

1. The skirmishers, on reaching the margin of the river, or the line of whatever other impediment may form the defilé, will (when the flanks cannot be gained) lie down and cover themselves, keeping up a brisk fire upon the enemy. The supports on approaching the bridge (or defilé) will close in upon the one which may be opposite to it, and, supported by the reserve, charge and force the passage with the bayonet: this point gained, and

To advance across a Bridge in Contact with an Enemy.



To retire across a Bridge in Contact with an Enemy.



and the reserve having crossed the bridge, the supports will *gradually* extend from their centre, the reserve maintaining possession of the bridge until the old skirmishers (who keep up their fire, until clouded in succession by the new line) have crossed in double time, and formed themselves into supports. The whole then move forward according to the original formation.

Retiring.

2. In retiring, the reserve first passes, and takes post at the bridge-head (or the outlet of the defilé), immediately detaching parties to both flanks to line the river, in extended order. The supports close in upon the one which is opposite the bridge, and, in compact order, halt in front of it, until the line of skirmishers is withdrawn: in order that this may be effected without unnecessary delay, the skirmishers should incline towards the bridge when at some distance from it, and, on arriving near it, they should run briskly over it, and form in rear of the reserve. The supports will then cross, and in like manner joining the reserve, the whole will be prepared to defend the bridge, or to retire, as may be ordered. The new line of skirmishers commence firing as soon as their front is clear; and if the retreat is to be continued, supports are again thrown out between them and the reserve.

S. 8. *Piquets and their Sentries.*

Piquets of two descriptions.

1. Piquets are of two descriptions—outlying and inlying—varying in strength according to the extent of front to be guarded, and the liability to be attacked. The outlying piquet is thrown forward a considerable distance in front of the camp or the cantonments—the inlying piquet usually remains in camp accoutred, and ready to turn out, and support the former at a moment's warning; having sentries advantageously posted for hearing and observing any alarm in front, and communicating, when necessary, by patroles with the advanced post.

Individual judgment and vigilance peculiarly called for upon piquet.

2. There are no duties in the field more important than those of the outpost, or which should call forth, in a higher degree, the individual judgment and exertion of all employed on them; neither is there any other situation, within the range of military service, where the misconduct of a single man could be productive of such serious consequences, as might attend any want of vigilance in the advanced sentry of a piquet.

Principal duties of an outlying piquet.

3. The principal duties of an outlying piquet are to secure the safety and repose of the camp, to prevent reconnoissances being made by the enemy, and to gain intelligence of

of his movements, and even of his intentions, by patrolling, by careful watching, by examining the peasantry of the country, and by all those indications with which every officer ought to be familiar—such as the strengthening of the enemy's posts, unusual bustle or movement in his lines, the sound of troops, or artillery, on the march at night, the diminution or the increase of fires, &c. &c.

How composed and distributed.

4. Piquets in the field are usually taken by brigades, the different regiments furnishing one or more companies as may be required; a field-officer of the day is placed in charge of the whole. The reserve piquet, of such strength as may be necessary, remains under the field-officer of the day, at least four hundred yards in rear of the centre of the line of advanced piquets, and which is taken up by companies, in direct communication with each other. The chain of sentries is thrown out in front, sufficiently in advance to give timely notice of the enemy's approach, and so placed as to insure uninterrupted communication, from one flank to the other. The field-officer will use his discretion in detaching officers' parties in advance of the captain's piquets, to furnish the sentries, and support the chain; but, on all occasions, such parties should be stationed before the flanks of the general line of piquets.

5. An

Necessary precautions for an officer ordered upon piquet.

5. An officer ordered upon piquet must take a close and careful survey of the country he passes over, in marching from the camp or the cantonment to his post, in order that he may defend it properly if attacked and driven back. The strongest points, in his line of retreat, ought to be selected, and noted down if necessary; and the officer's mind should be previously made up, as far as possible, upon the best mode of disputing the ground he must retire over.

How posted.

6. The officer intrusted with the posting of a piquet must select its station near the principal road to be guarded, and behind, if practicable, all cross roads leading into it, and taking especial care to leave no road unguarded on its flanks, by which it might be surprised in its rear. The piquet should, as much as possible, be concealed from observation, and where the ground naturally affords neither cover nor protection, the defect must be remedied by artificial means, and the employment of such materials as may be procurable on the spot.

Measures for immediate security.

7. As soon as the piquet arrives on the ground it is to occupy, sentries will be thrown out in elevated situations upon its flanks and front, for *immediate* security, and the officer commanding, *having reconnoitred the neighbourhood*

bourhood of his post, with a strong patrole, in person, will proceed to form a chain, covering his front and flanks, and communicating with the piquets on his right and left.

Line of sentries.

8. In selecting the line for the chain of sentries, care must be taken not to extend it too much,—to post the men in the most advantageous situations for observing the roads and country in front, and to keep them as much concealed from the view of the enemy as the nature of their duty will admit. It is very desirable that every elevated spot, which overlooks the communications in the rear, should be taken within the chain of sentries; but if this cannot be effected without extending the sentries too much, a party must be sent to occupy the height during the day, and care must be taken to support and ensure the retreat of this party if attacked. Sentries must be so placed, moreover, as to secure one another from being cut off, and at such distances as to prevent any enemy from passing unperceived between them during the night. Sentries never should be posted near any copse or cover from which a sudden rush might be made upon them; but all woods, ravines, &c., in the neighbourhood of the post, must be watched, and occasionally visited by patroles, to prevent the enemy from assembling, unobserved, a body of troops

in

in the vicinity. No sentry should be placed at such a distance from the piquet, that the report of his musket may not be distinctly heard from it; and he should always have the sentry on his right and left in view, as well as the intermediate ground between them, to prevent the enemy from passing through the chain unnoticed.

9. In order to guard against surprise of every kind, the sentries of an advanced piquet will be invariably posted double, and at night, or in thick or foggy weather, one of them will be always walking to the right, till he approaches the adjoining file, while the other is looking vigilantly out to his front. In this mode they alternately relieve each other. During the day an officer, provided with a good spy-glass, should always be kept on the look-out, in the best situation for commanding a view of the country occupied by the enemy.

Detached parties.

10. If the chain of sentries should be so far extended as to make it inconvenient to relieve them all from the advanced piquet, one or two small parties, under the command of an officer, may be detached to a convenient situation, for the purpose of furnishing the sentries, and forming an intermediate support to the chain.

Advanced piquets require three reliefs.

11. All advanced piquets must have three reliefs.

12. When

When any thing particular is observed in front, or firing is heard.

12. When any thing particular is observed in front during the day, such as any change in the enemy's sentries or piquets, the disappearance of any sentry of our own, any unusual bustle or accession of force in front, troops in motion, or the appearance of a cloud of dust indicating that troops are on the march, or when firing is heard by any sentry, one of the sentries will instantly run in, and report to the officer what he has noticed, taking care to mention the circumstance at any post he may happen to pass on his way.

When piquets are attacked.

13. When piquets are attacked, the same rule will be observed as in all other skirmishing, and the detached officers' parties will not run in on the main body, but support the skirmishers; and when compelled to retire, they will, if possible, retreat on the flank of the main body, and thereby afford mutual support to each other. When a sentry is satisfied that the enemy is moving on to the attack, he should not hesitate to fire at once, although the enemy may be far beyond the range of his musket.

When posted in a village.

14. If a piquet should be posted in a village, the main body must be placed so as to be behind the junction of all the roads that lead to the enemy's position, the entrances from

from which must be blocked up, or dug across, with the exception of a small retiring path for the sentries placed in observation in front. Small parties will be placed behind each barricade for its defence.

First duty of an officer on piquet.

15. The first care of an officer ought to be the strengthening of his post, by constructing abbatis, breast-works, &c.; and particularly where the defence of a bridge or ford is intrusted to him, he ought never to omit to throw up something of the kind to protect his men, and impede the advance of the enemy. An officer ought not, however, without permission, to block up a main road with other materials than such as are easily removed.

A piquet must not shut itself up without orders.

16. A piquet ought not to shut itself up in a house, or an enclosure, with the intention of defending itself to the last extremity, unless particularly ordered to do so, or that circumstances may render it necessary at the moment, for the preservation of the party, in the expectation of support.

Under what circumstances a piquet should retire.

17. A piquet may with safety defend its front as long as its flanks are not attacked, but as soon as the enemy attempts to surround the post, the piquet must begin to retire.

19. Signals

Signals by day.

18. Signals may be established by sentries during the day:—For instance—one man holding up his cap on the muzzle of his fire-lock, signifies that the enemy's patrole is advancing; and both men holding up their caps in the same manner, signifies that the enemy is advancing in force.

Flags of truce.

19. On the approach of a flag of truce, one sentry will advance and halt it at such distance as will prevent any of the party who compose it from overlooking the piquet-posts. The other sentry will acquaint the officer commanding the piquet of the circumstance, who will, according to his instructions, either detain the flag of truce at the out-post, until he has reported to the field-officer of the day, or he will forward the party blind-folded to the camp, under an escort. If the flag of truce is merely the bearer of a letter or parcel, the piquet officer must receive it, and instantly forward it to head-quarters. After having given a receipt, the flag of truce will be required forthwith to depart, and none of the piquet must be suffered to hold any conversation with this party.

Night duties.

20. At night the situations of the sentries ought to be changed, and drawn back from their elevated situations, so as to have the

the highest ground before them; as an object is more easily discerned at night from a low situation, than when looking from a hill. Night sentries will patrole alternately to the front (as well as to the flanks) to a distance of twenty or thirty yards, lying down also with the ear to the ground for the purpose of listening. The tread of men or horses on the march, the noise of artillery in motion, the neighing of horses, &c. are heard at a great distance in the stillness of the night; and not unfrequently the knowledge of an intended attack at day-light may be gained in this way.

Precaution to be used for directing the sentry's attention to the proper quarter.

21. To prevent sentries from looking in a wrong direction during the night, two forked sticks will be placed in the ground, and a horizontal stick be laid across them, so as to point out by looking along it, the situation of the enemy's posts. This precaution is also particularly useful to the sentries of reserve and inlying piquets, directing their attention to the proper quarter.

22. The sentries ought to be relieved every hour during the night.

The countersign only given to the sentries.

23. When a sentry is posted, the countersign only is given him; and no person under the rank of a non-commissioned officer is usually

usually intrusted with the parole, which serves as a test for passing armed bodies inside the line.

Challenging of a double sentry.

24. The moment a sentry sees or hears any person, he calls out, "Halt,"—"Who comes there?" and at the same time brings his firelock to the charge, fronting the party; his comrade instantly retires a few paces behind him, uncovering to the right, cocks his piece, and also comes to the charge. This will insure support to the sentry in advance, and prevent both men from being committed at the same time, as well as the piquet from being surprised. If the answer is not satisfactory, the leading sentry instantly fires and retires behind his comrade.

25. If more than one individual approach the post, the sentry will, on all occasions, command them to halt, and one man only to advance. If there ' the slightest hesitation, *or more than one* attempt to move, the sentry will instantly fire.

Deserters.

26. Sentries must be very distrustful of people who answer the challenge by saying "Deserters;" they must be immediately ordered to lay down their arms in the rear, and not suffered to approach the sentry, until a party arrives from the support to receive them,

and then singly. If the suspected person hesitate, the sentry will instantly fire.

27. When a piquet is permitted to have a fire, it should always be as much as possible concealed from observation; and the alarm post of the piquet, in the event of an attack at night, should invariably be fixed at a short distance in the rear of the fire, so as to prevent the piquet from being seen, when drawn up, and compelling the enemy to expose themselves while passing the fire in coming on.

Advanced piquets to be under arms an hour before day-light.

28. Piquets will get under arms in the morning an hour before day-light; and if every thing appears quiet in front, the officer will, as soon as he can discern objects distinctly, proceed to occupy the same posts that he held the day before; but he must previously send forward patroles to feel his way, and should any change be remarked in the enemy's posts or position, he will report it immediately to the officer of the day.

When advanced piquets should be relieved.

29. As attacks are most commonly made about day-break, a desirable accession of force will be always obtained by relieving the piquets at that hour.

Arrival of the relief.

30. When the new piquet has arrived, the officer commanding it will accompany the officer

officer of the old piquet along the chain of posts, and this officer will point out the situation and strength of all the enemy's posts, and afford every other information to the relieving officer, in his power.

Duty of the officer of the old piquet.

31. When the sentries are relieved, and the weather is sufficiently clear to ascertain that there is no indication of an attack, the officer who has been relieved will forward a written report to the field officer of the day, fall back upon the reserve piquet, and march to camp in the same order as when he advanced; *but if the advanced piquets should be attacked before he arrives in camp,* he will consider it his duty to face instantly about, and march to their support.

Patrolling.

32. One of the most necessary and effectual methods of preventing surprise, and of gaining information, remains to be noticed, viz. *patrolling*, without which, however active and alert the sentries, the service of the outpost never can be properly fulfilled. The mode of conducting these patroles, their strength, and the distance to which they may be sent, are all necessarily dependant on the ever varying local circumstances in which piquets may be placed; but it may be laid down as a good general rule, that, when near the enemy, a patrole should be sent out once between every relief during the night.

Vigilance, silence, and circumspection indispensable in patrolling.

33. Vigilance, silence, and circumspection must be strictly enjoined upon all patroles: no noise must on any account be made, and when any thing is to be communicated, it should be done in a whisper.

It is not pretended to lay down exact rules for conducting patroles in every case that may occur on service, but one or two of the most usual modes of carrying on this important duty may be briefly adverted to.

Patrolling in front of the line of sentries.

34. The patrole, on leaving the piquet, should, when practicable, communicate in the first instance with the next post upon the right (or left), and patrole cautiously along the whole front of the line of sentries, just near enough to see them, and communicating with the next post upon the left (or right) return again to the piquet by the rear of the chain. The sentries must not be thrown off their guard by the frequent appearance of these patroles, but be taught to expect an enemy in all who may approach them; some preconcerted signal, or interchange of countersign in a low tone, should be used, and which should be changed at every relief. Should the patrole, in returning along the rear of the sentries, fall in with the enemy, who must in this case have passed through the chain, a continued fire should be kept up to alarm the piquet, and prevent surprise.

35. When

When the enemy's posts are distant.

35. Patroles must also be sent along the roads in the direction of the enemy's posts, to such distance as may be deemed expedient. These patroles must be preceded by *feelers*, quick intelligent men, selected for that duty, whom no sound will escape, and whose experienced ears will detect the approach of danger long before it reaches them. A patrole must above all things avoid unnecessary firing, or, in other words, *false alarms:* on hearing the approach of footsteps the *feelers* should instantly fall back to the patrole; and should the sounds indicate the advance of a larger body than a patrole, one or two men should be sent back with all haste to inform the officer of the piquet, who will make immediate preparations for defence. The patrole retires steadily and unobserved, if possible, upon the piquet; but if perceived and overtaken by the enemy, an incessant fire must be maintained, in order to apprise the camp that the enemy is coming on in force; although it may safely be inferred, that if the piquets know their duty, and are judiciously drawn up for the defence of the roads, it will be extremely difficult for an enemy, however strong, *having failed in his plan for taking the advanced posts by surprise,* to make head, under all the disadvantages of a night attack, when resolutely opposed by men who know the ground, and whose

plans

plans have been previously concerted for disputing those points in their line of retreat, where the disparity of numbers must, in the dark, be in a great measure neutralized.

To avoid exchanging shots with the enemy's patroles.

36. In falling in with an enemy's patrole in advance of the chain of sentries, it will always be most prudent to retire at once without exchanging shots, which could only tend to harass and disturb the troops.

A strong patrole to be sent out just before day-light.

37. A strong patrole will always be sent some distance, on towards the enemy's posts, just before day-light, and this patrole, above all others, must proceed with redoubled caution, for fear of falling in with the enemy's columns, waiting for day-light to attack.

38. In the event of an attack, the commander of a piquet must ever bear in mind, that the great object of his efforts is to gain sufficient time to enable the main body in his rear to get under arms and prepare for action. The points he is to dispute in falling back having been previously selected, few cases can occur in which it will be impossible to attain that end, without endangering the safety of his piquet; but even in an extreme case, he must remember that it is his duty to sacrifice himself, rather than be driven in upon the main body, before it has had time to form.

GENERAL

GENERAL OUTLINE OF FIELD TRAINING TO BE PRACTISED BY BATTALIONS OF LIGHT INFANTRY, AND BY OFFICERS IN GENERAL.

THE study of localities, and instruction in the knowledge and choice of ground, whether for offensive or defensive purposes, are the only sound principles upon which efficient light troops can be formed. This study and instruction must be strictly practical, extending progressively through all the different grades, until brought home to the understanding of the private, who, when in extended order and left in a great measure to himself, must be as capable of selecting the ground best suited to his individual purposes, as is the officer, or non-commissioned officer, of posting his party to the best advantage. The knowledge, here insisted on, is to be sought for in the cultivation of those great inherent qualities of the eye, which enable us to measure distances, and at a glance to estimate the nature and utility of every local object that presents itself. It is this knowledge that *alone* distinguishes *the well-trained* skirmisher, and as it is only to be acquired according to the opportunities that are afforded for its exercise, too much time and attention cannot be devoted to the attainment of an object, upon which the efficiency of light troops in the field so materially depends. Light infantry battalions, therefore, should be trained to act, in extended order, on every possible variety of ground; and whenever local circumstances admit of it, should frequently be exercised, *across a country*, in all the various duties they are liable on service to be called on to perform.

perform. This practical training may be advantageously carried on, on commons, waste lands, and on the sea-beach, when within reach of the quarters of the regiment, and sometimes (with permission) over tracts of cultivated land in winter, when the fences are not of a nature to be injured by it. But even in situations where none of these advantages are enjoyed, the numerous roads, which intersect every part of the united kingdom, will always afford the means of teaching many useful lessons in the real duties of the field.

It is not contemplated, nor indeed would it be practicable, to lay down precise or specific rules for the guidance of commanding officers in the practical course of field discipline here prescribed: upon their judgment and experience, the progress and proficiency of their corps, in *individual* expertness and intelligence, must, from the very nature of the instruction, mainly depend; while no rules can supply the want of adequate attention and capacity in the instructor. All, therefore, that can be desired on this point, is, that the subject should be classed under certain heads, with a few accompanying remarks, pointing out, in general terms, the chief objects to be held in view; so that an uniform system may prevail, varying perhaps a little in the method of teaching, but still arriving, although by different roads, at the same end. It cannot be too strongly inculcated upon those intrusted with the command of light troops, that in all operations, *in extended order*—where every man is, in a great measure, thrown upon his own resources—success depends as much on the intelligence and tact, as on the moral courage of the soldier. In line the voice of his commander directs and guides him, and he mechanically

conforms

conforms to every movement that is ordered; but, in skirmishing, his quick perception of what is passing around him, and of every advantage that the ground presents to him, inspiring confidence into all his actions, can alone insure his acting with energy, comparative safety, and success.

INSTRUCTION OF OFFICERS.

The study of topography.

1. An aptitude in forming a correct opinion of a country, and a thorough acquaintance with the relative fitness or unfitness of ground for military purposes, are indispensable qualifications in all officers; but more especially so in the light infantry officer, who, when on service, may be daily called on to form a safeguard to the camp, to guide the column of route, or to cover the column of manœuvre. It is evident, therefore, that without previously formed habits of estimating local circumstances and position, no officer can discharge, with credit to himself, or advantage to the service, the important duties of his station.

The map to be compared with the country it embraces.

2. Every officer should be provided with a map of the district in which his regiment may be quartered; and he should be required to study it, and to compare it with the country it embraces, so as to acquire a practical knowledge of its military features—roads, rivers, morasses, woods, hills plains, towns, and villages—of whatever, in a word, is calculated to assist, or to impede, troops in offensive or defensive warfare.

3. The

Examination of the country along a given road.

3. The young officer is then directed to proceed a certain distance on any given road, and carefully examining the nature of the country, he will, in writing, submit his ideas and opinions of its military character to the consideration and correction of his commanding officer.

Choice of ground for piquets.

4. He is next required to select a spot upon which he would post his piquet (imagining the enemy in some given position), showing where his chain of day and night sentries would be placed, and how he would defend the ground if attacked and forced to retire; again he will be required to show how he would proceed if ordered to drive back the enemy's piquet from a given post, so as to push them briskly in, without undue exposure, compelling them to abandon advantageous ground, by pressing on a flank or any other weak part of the line. In a word, the experience of the commanding officer cannot be better employed than in bringing to the knowledge and observation of those under him, the various situations in which they may be placed before an enemy, giving them habits of reflection, and a promptitude in deciding judiciously for themselves in every supposed emergency.

Patroles, or small reconnoitring parties.

5. Every officer should be carefully instructed in the mode of conducting patroles or small reconnoitring parties, sent in advance for the purpose of obtaining information: the means used for that purpose, by parties of this description, are, necessarily,

necessarily, strictly passive, and the knowledge sought for must be gained either from the people of the country, or by a careful observation of surrounding objects, from which an intelligent officer will at all times readily detect an enemy's vicinity. Every information gained should be committed to writing on the spot, and the officer must also be prepared to give, on his return, a correct report of his route, and of the country he has passed over. The form of this report cannot be too simple and distinct. In speaking of distances, the time taken in marching is to be preferred to any guess at actual measurement, and no vague terms should on any account be used.

The report might run as follows :—

Form of Report. At 6 A. M. marched from camp on the road leading to ——. At half an hour's march we reached a large farm, surrounded by a wall, situated on the road side, and capable of being converted into a strong post: at the distance of an hour's march from camp, the road, which becomes much broken and nearly impassable for guns, ascends a wooded hill, and for the next half hour passes over a very rough and wilderness country, rising abruptly into rugged hills upon *our* right, from which the road may be commanded by musketry, and upon *our* left the road was shut in by a succession of stagnant pools, overgrown with long reeds and rushes. At 8 A. M. we descended from the high ground by a steep path, and crossed a sluggish stream, about ten

ten yards in breadth, by a single arched stone bridge of solid masonry, and too narrow to admit of carts or carriages passing on it: the bridge is commanded within two hundred yards from the ridge which we had quitted. The country beyond the river is flat, and laid out in a succession of meadows, divided by low mud fences, and well stocked with cattle. Ten minutes' march now brought us to the village of C—, situated in the plain, but with a small eminence rising behind it, on which the church and burying-ground, surrounded by a wall, are situated. The roads from D—, E—, and F—, unite in the village: here we learned that an enemy's cavalry patrole visited the village last evening, and that the enemy's advanced post is stationed at the town of G—, two leagues in advance, &c.

Foraging parties.

6. Officers must be instructed in the mode of conducting foraging parties, a duty of frequent occurrence upon service, together with the precautions to be adopted for protecting the foragers from surprise or interruption, while in the act of foraging, by throwing out parties in advance, and having *good eyes*, on the look-out, from the most elevated spots in the neighbourhood. The precautions, to be observed on the march, are similar to those prescribed for the guidance of advanced and rear guards, with this difference, that the parties, thrown out towards the enemy, must be at a greater distance from the convoy, and they should be sufficiently strong to resist long enough to enable the foragers to get away.

7. The

Defence of posts.

7. The defence of posts should constitute a most important branch of every officer's study; for, upon service, all are liable to be detached, and to be placed in charge of posts with orders to defend them. In almost every case of this description, some measures must be taken to protect the party from being overcome by a superior enemy; while, if placed to guard a bridge, or watch a ford, an officer, who neglected to strengthen his post by every means in his power, and to make the very most of his situation, would incur the hazard not only of his own destruction, but of entailing some disaster on the force from which he was detached. It is to be regretted that few opportunities occur in time of peace, of giving men and officers any practical lessons on this subject; but it is at all times in the power of a commanding officer to explain the principle upon which posts are defended, by the construction of barricades and abattis, loopholing houses, and intrenching, &c.

COMPANIES' PRACTICE AND INSTRUCTION OF THE MEN.

Instruction of the men in the choice and knowledge of ground.

1. The officers once thoroughly grounded in the practice and principles above adverted to, the training of the non-commissioned officers and privates will be comparatively easy. The same method of habituating and perfecting the *soldier's* eye in the judicious choice of ground for *individual purposes,* as that prescribed for the study of the officer

officer *on a larger scale*, must be adhered to; and if the mistakes, which will necessarily be made in the commencement of the drill, in shifting from one spot to another, expecting cover where the ground does not afford it, are only noticed, and the error pointed out, the men will very soon pick up the habit, not only of selecting their successive stages with judgment, in advancing or retiring, but also of reaching them with the least risk and exposure to themselves.

Practical lessons in skirmishing by companies.

2. This practice should, in the first instance, be taught in small parties,—with a company, for example, one sub-division opposed to the other, with a sufficient number of officers or intelligent non-commissioned officers to watch the conduct and progress of *every man*. One party may be posted on a hill, or any piece of intersected ground, and the other ordered to attack them; every mistake and unnecessary personal exposure, on the part of the assailants, will, of course, be seen and pointed out to those who are attacked, and who, profiting by their errors and the lesson just received, will in turn be required to act as the assailants over the same ground, and show their comrades how they can creep in upon them.

Taking up a line of posts.

3. When the men are sufficiently expert in the above practice, which contains the *whole secret* of good skirmishing, the corps should be frequently marched out, and the different companies directed

to

to take up a line of posts, connecting any given points, and guarding such roads as may lead to the supposed camp or cantonments of the army. The commanding officer will see that these piquets are posted advantageously; the *day* sentries properly placed, and situations chosen for the *night ones*. Parties, under the heads of flags of truce, deserters, &c. should then be directed to approach the sentries, in order to ascertain that all are properly acquainted with their duty.

Taking post before an enemy.

4. When sufficiently instructed in the mode of taking post, a company or two may be ordered to advance on any given road, and directed to select the most advantageous ground for establishing themselves as piquets for its protection from an attack to be made from the quarters of the regiment. The remainder of the corps may then move out, with advanced guard and flankers, instructed to feel for, without coming into actual contact with, the enemy: the officer commanding the advance will take up his ground before the *supposed* enemy, near enough to watch his motions, without bringing on a fire between the parties. A corresponding chain of posts may then be established, and the various ways of patrolling, &c. practised.

Feeling for and driving in the enemy's posts.

5. Two or three companies being, in like manner, sent to take post on any road, the remainder of the battalion may follow for the purpose of dislodging them. It is here that the proficiency both of officers

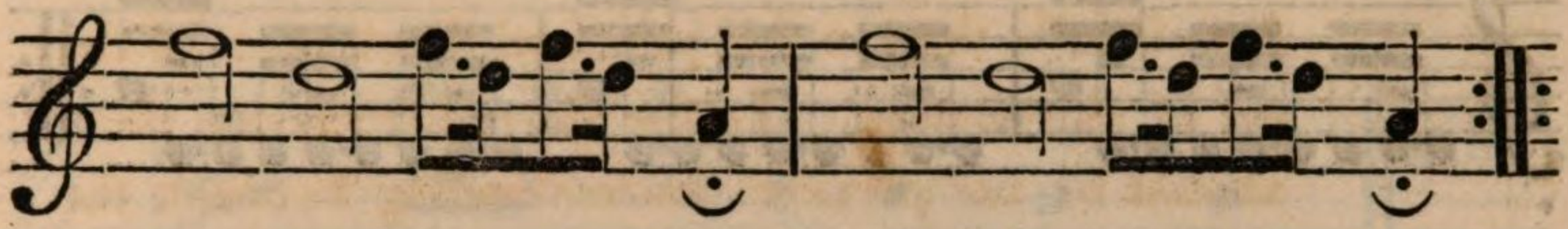
officers and men, in their business, will at once be seen. The former, in the selection of their ground and judicious use of their supports; and the latter, in the judgment and intelligence they display in availing themselves of any cover and advantages the localities may offer. The annual allowance of blank cartridge can in no way be expended more beneficially than in this practical illustration of the art of skirmishing. In the above instruction there should be no previous understanding between the parties: the officers should be left to their own judgment in their measures and arrangements; and the commanding officer will see at once, from the manner in which they occupy the ground and handle their supports, whether they are making the best use of their means, in detaching parties to protect, threaten, or turn a flank, and in bringing up the reserve to force a point, at the proper moment.

Concluding remark.

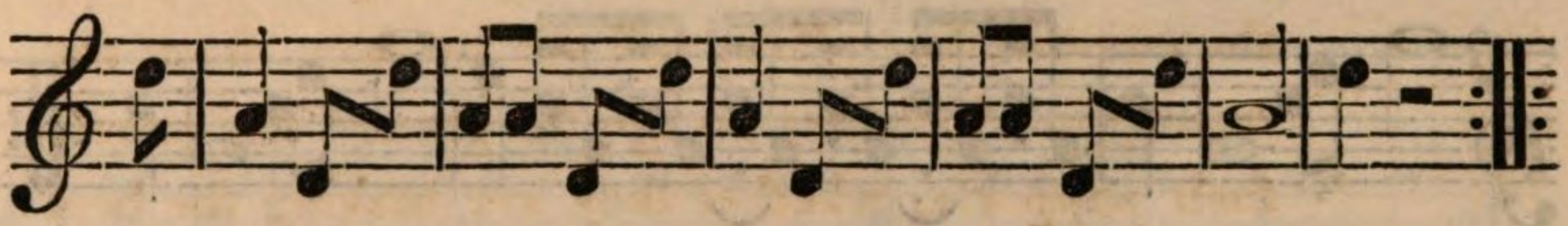
5. These lessons should be varied as much as possible; and if the course of training, of which an outline has been given, is zealously and attentively followed out by every commanding officer of light infantry, it is confidently anticipated that the very best effects will result from it, in the superior intelligence and efficiency of a description of force upon the excellence of which, so very much depends, in all operations in the field.

BUGLE SOUNDS.

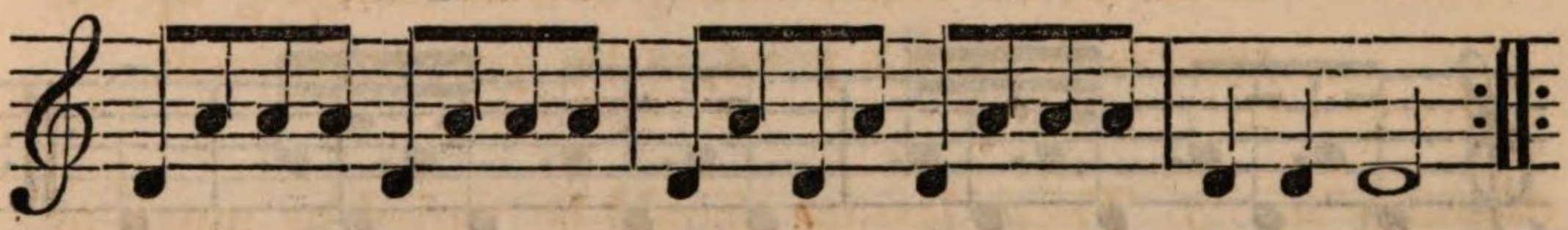
No. I.—*To Extend.*



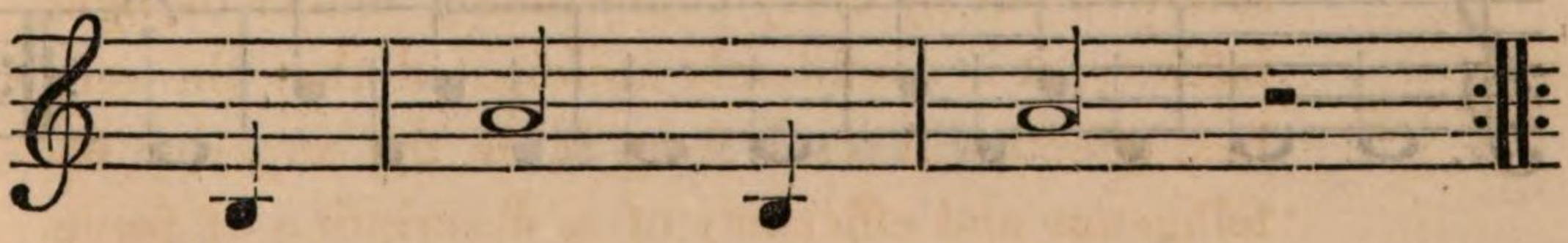
No. II.—*To Close.*



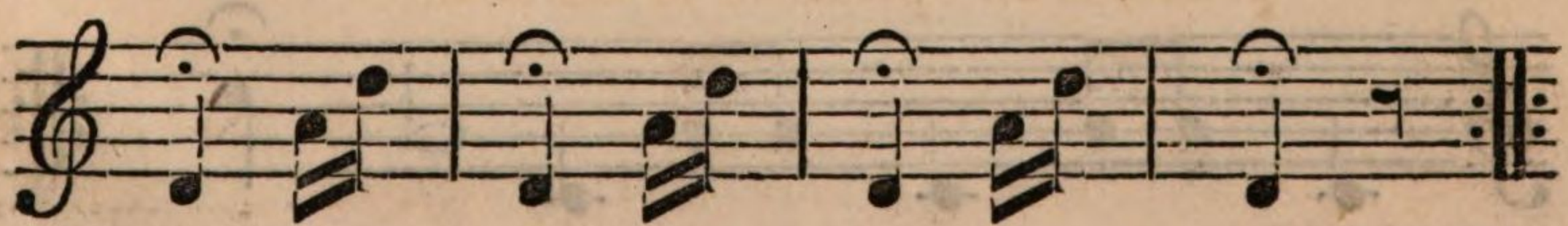
No. III.—*The Advance ; also Forwards ; after obliquing.*



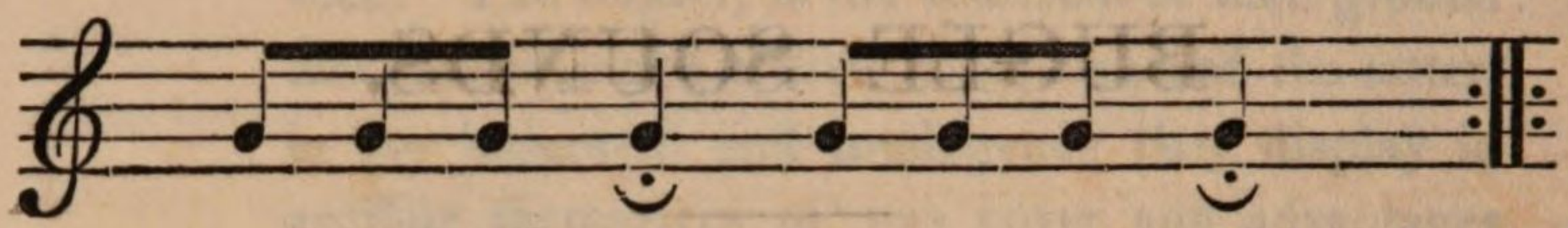
No. IV.—*Halt ; also to Annul ; annuls every previous sound excepting* No. V.



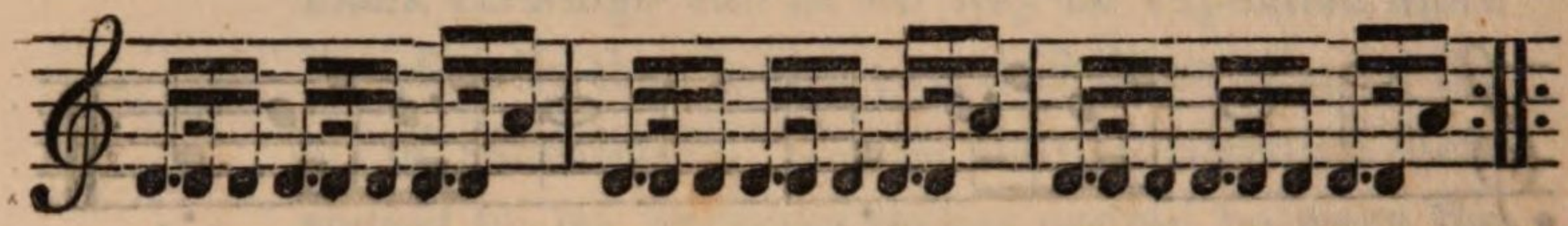
No. V.—*To Fire.*



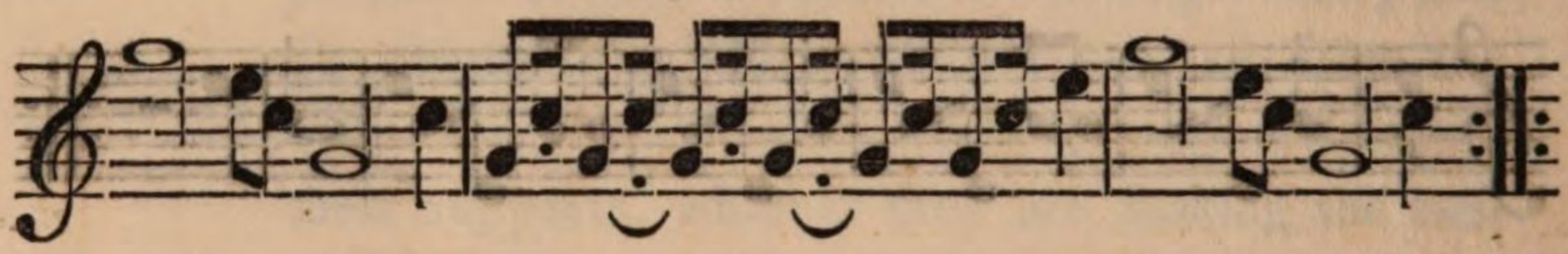
No. VI.—*To cease Firing.*



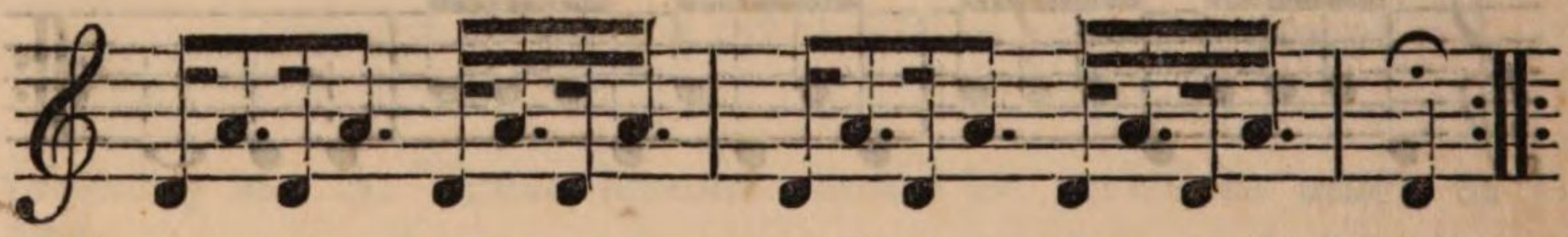
No. VII.—*To Retreat.*



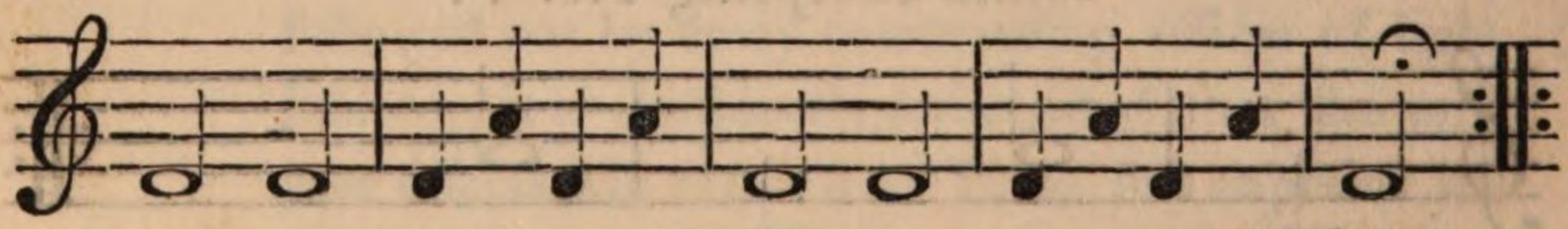
No. VIII.—*To Assemble.*



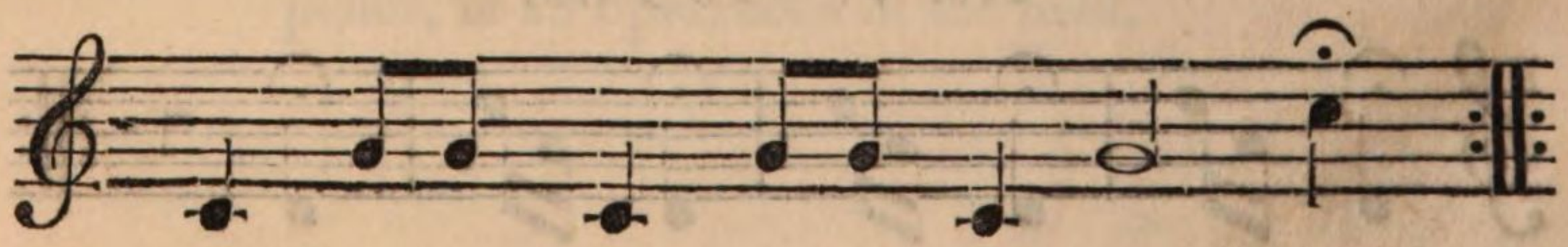
No. IX.—*Incline to the Right.*



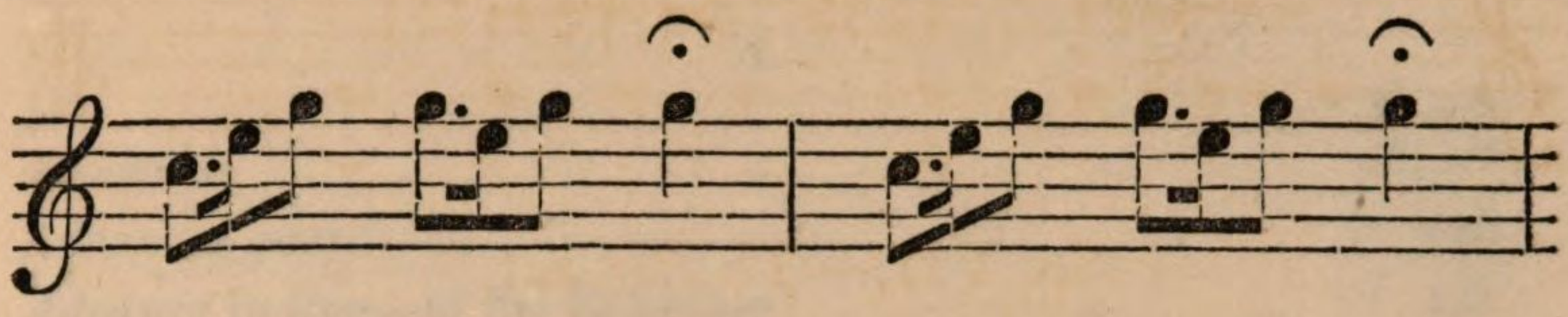
No. X.—*Incline to the Left.*

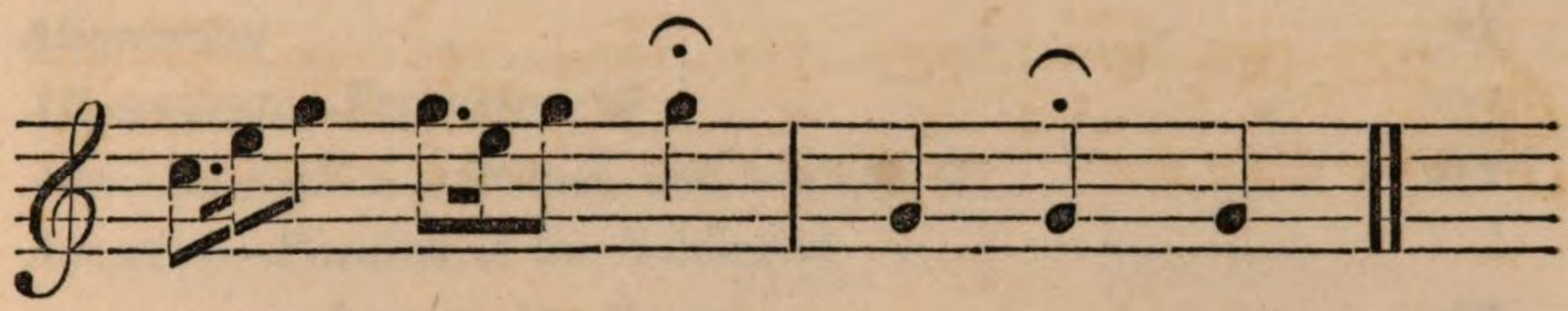


No. XI.—*The Alarm.*

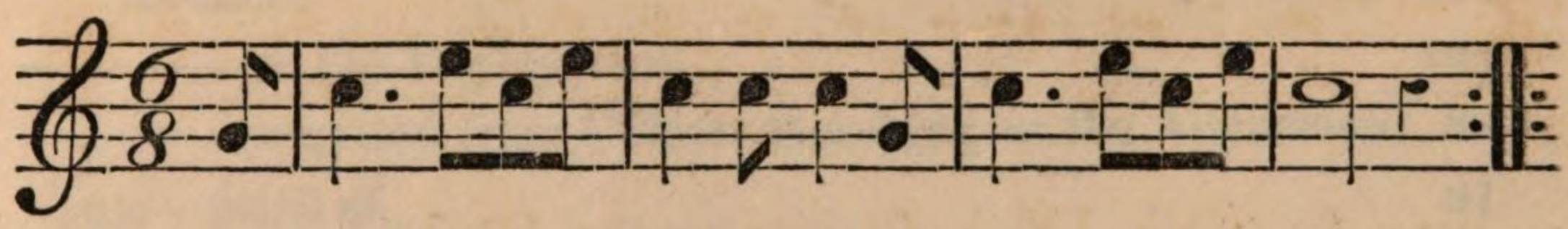


The Assembly of Officers.

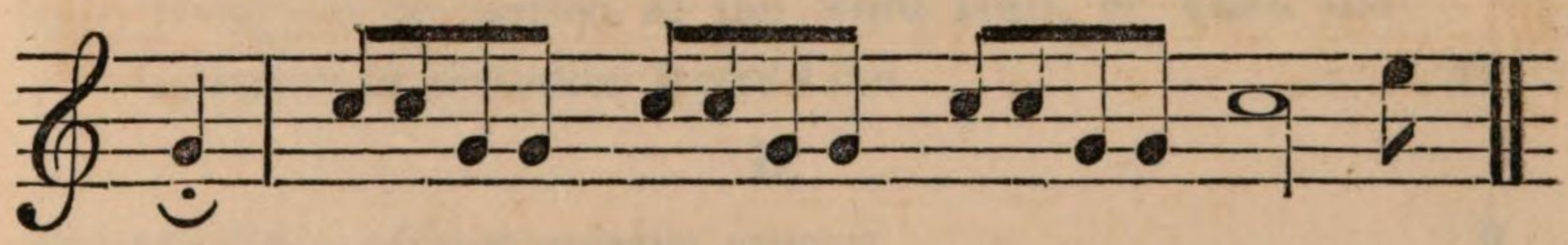




The Quick Time.



The Double Time.



END OF PART V.

INDEX.

A.

PAGE

Adjutants 69, 87
Advanced guard 283
Advance in line—of the Battalion . . . 71, 131
Alignement 81
Alignements—Prolongers of 84
Alternate Bodies—advance and retreat of . . 217
Attention—Position of the Soldier at 3
——— in forming the Squad 27
Attentions—special to the Wheel of a Battalion at quarter distance 104
——— to the Deployment 106
——— required from Officers marching on the Alignement 82
Appui—point of 81
Arms—Recruits must be accustomed to carry their Arms for a considerable time 27
—— always to be carried at the word Halt, or when the Company or Battalion forms Line . . . 27

B.

Balance Step—without gaining ground . . . 9
——— gaining ground 9
Base Points 86, 205
Battalion Points 85
Battalion—advance of, in Line 71, 131
——— Formation of 125
——— at Close Order 125, 129
——— at Open Order 128
——— Evolutions of 130
——— change of Front to the Rear from Line upon the Centre 153

PAGE

Battalion—changes of, from Line, by the movements of the Open Column 154
——— change of Position on the Centre . . 155
——— change of Position to the Rear . . . 156
——— on a distant point 157
——— change of Position by the Echellon March of Sub-divisions or Sections 191
——— Formation of Square, four deep on the Centre 144-50
——— two deep, to protect Baggage against Infantry only 151
——— Movements of, from Line . . . 131
——— Movement of, to attack . . . 136
——— March of, in Column of Divisions, to a Flank 143
——— to pass a Bridge or Defilé to the Front, from either Flank, or from the Centre . . . 136-40
——— to pass a Wood or other Impediment to Front or Rear, by the Flank March of Companies . . 133
——— to retreat by half Battalions . . 135
——— to retire over a Bridge or Defilé . . 140-3
Brigade or Line—Movements of . . . 195, 214
——— Movements to attack . . . 221
——— Changes of Front and of Position . 227-8
——— Commands in 197
——— Deployments in Columns of . . 235
——— Echellon Movements in . . 211
——— Evolutions of 224
——— Formation and Distances in . . 195
——— Inversion of Columns, &c., in . 216
——— March in Line of . . . 199
——— Passage of Bridge or Defilé by . . 224
——— Quarter Distance and Close Column of 229
——— Wheeling of Columns in . . 203, 232
——— Squares of 221
Bugle Sounds 256, 321

C.

PAGE

Central Movements—in Double Column . . 90
——— Columns, application of, and of Columns from a Flank 91
Challenging of Sentries 305
Changing Feet 13, 35
Changing Pace without halting . . . 31
Charge in Line 132
Colours . . . 96, 126, 130, 150, 164, 180, 190
Column—Open 89
——— Formation of, from Line . . . 89
——— Increasing and Diminishing Front of, at the Halt 54-6, 100
——— Ditto, ditto, on the March . . 56-8, 100
——— how to resist Cavalry, while moving by the Flank March of Companies 162
——— at Quarter Distance, and Close Column . 166, 118
——— Countermarch of, by Sub-divisions round the Centre 171
——— Deployments of 105, 174
——— Formation of, from Line . . . 163-6
——— Leading Flank of, how changed by successive March of Divisions 159
——— March of, to a Flank 167
——— Ditto, to Right or Left by Echellon of Sections . 167
——— March of, by Threes 94
——— Opening out from the Front or Rear . . 173
——— Wheel of, on a fixed or moveable Pivot, at Close or Quarter Distance . . . 168
——— Wings of, how changed, where the road does not admit of a Flank Movement . . . 160
Columns—Formation of 89
——— of March 89
——— of Route 98, 204
——— Double 90, 138, 224

PAGE

Column—Double, Formations from . . . 139, 149
——— Contiguous 196, 203-4
——— in Mass 203, 232, 237
Command—Words of, how given 4
Commands ——————— . . . 69, 197
Commanding Officers—Superintendence of . . 113
Companies—Position of, in Battalion . . . 125
——— Equalization of 125
Company—Formation of, on Parade . . . 37
——— Ditto, on the March, by the Flank March of Threes 60
——— Formation of, from File Marching . . 61
——— to either Flank from Open Column of Sub-divisions 62
——— gaining Ground to a Flank, by March in Echellon of Sections 63
Corrections—upon Flank Pivots 86
Countermarching 51
——————— by Files 51
——————— by Ranks 52
——————— by Divisions 96
Countersign 304
Covering—in the March, by Echellon of Sections . . 168
Covering Serjeants 85-7

D.

Defilé—Passage of, by breaking off Files . . 57
Degrees of March 70, 116
Deployments 105-7, 174
Deserters—how received 305
Diagonal March 24, 35, 54
——————— Application of, to taking Ground to a Flank in Column 168
Diminishing or increasing Front of Columns . 54-7, 100-1
Directing Files of Echellons 112

PAGE

Directing Serjeants 71-2
Disengaging Heads of Divisions 97
Distances—closing to correct 88
Distinctions between Open Column and Echellon . . 109
Divisions—Distance of, in Close Column . . 102
——— how told off in Battalions . . . 125
Double Column 138, 224
——— of Sub-divisions from Square . . 150
Dressing 87
——— when halted 17
——— a Battalion after an Advance in Line . . 88
Drummers 95

E.

Echellon 107
——— Advantages of 115
——— Changes to the Rear in . . . 113
——— Direct—Properties of 108
——— Wheeled—ditto 109
——— Directing Files of 112
——— Directing Points in 113
——— Formations and Movements in . . 178
——— March of, by Sections . . . 191
——— Method of Formation . . . 110-1
——— Passing Obstacles in 112
Exercise—Manual 28
——— Platoon 28
Evolutions of the Battalion 130
——— of the Line 224
Eyes—Right—Left—Front 5

F.

Facings, the 6, 7
Field Officers 69

PAGE

File Firing 120-1
File Marching 20, 43
——— Wheeling in 33
Firelock—different Motions of 26
Firing—Light Infantry in extended order 262-4
——— in Square 121
——— in Street 122
Firings 28, 119
——— Time of, by Divisions 119
——— by Wings 119
Flags of Truce 303
Flank Companies—how they Cover the Flanks of a Battalion in Retreat 74
Flanking Parties 279
Forming Company—from the Flank March of Threes . 60
——— Sub-divisions and Sections 60
——— from File Marching 61
——— to either Flank from Open Column of Sub-divisions 62
Formation—Points of 83
Four Deep—Formations of 42-3

G.

General Principles—for the Movements of the Battalion 69

H.

Halt—the 11
Horses—of mounted Officers 87

I.

Increasing and Diminishing—front of an Open Column halted 54-5, 100-1
——— on the March 56, 100-1
Inspection or Review 241
Instruction of the Recruit 1, 2

K.

PAGE

Kneeling Ranks--in Square 145

L.

Light Infantry—General Principles and Movements of . 253
——— Advanced Guard of . . . 283
——— Rear Guard of . . . 291
——— Covering Advance and Retreat of the Line by 279
——— Detail of Formation . . . 261
——— Extended Formations of . . 261-8
——— Flanking Parties of . . . 279
——— How to run in, and form in Battalion according to its situation 280
——— Patroles of 289
——— Passage of Bridge or Defilé by . . 294
——— Signals and Sounds of . . . 256
——— Skirmishing of 268
——— Time of Movement of . . 260
Line, The—Movements of . . . 195, 214
——— to Attack 221, 224
——— Advance and Retreat of alternate Bodies in 217
——— Commands in 197
——— Changes of Front . . . 227
——— Changes of Position . . . 228
——— Deployments of, in Column . . . 235
——— Echellon of 211
——— Evolutions of 224
——— Formation and Distances in . . 195
——— March of 199
——— Passage of Bridge or Defilé by . . 224
——— Retreat over ditto 226
——— Refusing a Flank by alternate Bodies in . 218
——— Squares of 221
——— Wheeling of Columns in . . 202, 232

PAGE

Line, The—Quarter Distance and Close Column of . 229
Line—Formation of, from Open Column . . 96
—— Formation of, from Square 149
—— Advance in 71, 131, 199
Lines—Distance between 219
—— Passage of 221
—— Second 219, 239
—— Change of Front of 238-9

M.

March—Degree of 70, 116
——— Slow 70
——— Quick 70
——— Double 70, 116
——— Diagonal 24, 35, 54
——— Oblique 13, 71
——— Column of 98
——— at Ease 98
——— Equality of, strongly inculcated . . 35
——— the Word, how taken when given singly . . 16
——— in Line 71, 131
——— How to pass obstacles in . . . 73
——— Retiring 74
Marching—to the Front 39
——— in File 20, 32, 43
——— to the Front and Rear 29
——— to a Flank 32
——— by Threes 58
——— Oblique in Front . . . 13, 23
——— Position in 8
Marking Time 12, 35
Motions—Extended, to be practised by the Recruit . . 3
Mounted Officers 87
Movements of the Battalion 80

PAGE

Movements—Each must be divided in distinct parts . 80
——— in general of the Brigade or Line . . 214
Music 95

N.

Night Duties 303

O.

Oblique—March 23, 71
Obstacles—in the March of Column . . . 101
——— Passage of in Echellon . . . 112
Officers—Instruction and Duty of . . . 66, 313
——— Posting of . . 37-8, 93-5, 105, 125-6
——— When the Pivots 104
——— Changing their Flanks . . . 88, 105, 167
Order, Close 28, 38
——— on the March 32
—— *Open*, how taken by the Recruit . . . 3, 28
——— by the Squad or Company . . 28, 38
——— on the March 31

P.

Pace—Changing the, without halting . . . 31
—— Stick 2, 35
Passage of Lines 134
Patroles 289, 307
Piquets—Posting and Duties of . . . 296-310
Pivots—Flank, corrections upon . . . 86
—— in all Wheels of a Column 49
—— proper Pivot Flank in Column . . . 46
Platoon Exercise 28
Plummets—Vibration of 2, 16, 35
Points of Formation 83, 85
——— to be always clear . . 85
——— intermediate . . 85
Position of the Soldier—without Arms . . 3

PAGE

Position of the Soldier—with Arms . . . 26
Position—Changes of, by the Open Column . . 92
——— Ditto, by the Echellon . . . 114-15
——— Ditto, in Column on the fixed or moveable Pivot . 93
Posting of Officers . . . 37-8, 93-5, 105, 125-6
Prolongers of Alignements 84

Q.

Quarter Distance—advantages of . . . 102
——— applicable to all Close Column Movements 103
——— Wheel of Column at . . . 103
——— Special attentions in . . . 104

R.

Rallying Square 63
Rear Guard 291
Rear Ranks—Opening and Closing of . . . 29
Recruit—(Instruction of) 1, 2
Regulating Body of Movement in Line . . . 216
Replacing Serjeants 127
Review or Inspection 241

S.

Sections—Formation of, on the March . . 61
Sentries 299, 303
Serjeants—Covering 85
——— Directing 71-2
Shoulders Forward—Right and Left . . . 23
——— Divisions may be brought into Echellon in this manner 115
Signals—by day 303
Skeleton or Rope Drill 193
Skirmishing 268
Skirmishers—conform to Movements of the Battalion . 280
Soldier—Position of, without Arms 3
——— with Arms 26

PAGE

Squares 117-18
——— Echellon of 118
——— Formation of from Column at Open, or Half Distance 161
——— at Quarter Distance 166
——— from Line 144-50
——— Hollow, Four Deep 118
——— Ditto, Two Deep 118, 151
——— Rallying 63, 282
——— Small 65
——— Solid 118
——— of Wings 148
——— of the Brigade or Line 221
Standing at Ease 4
Step—Balance 8
—— Back 41
—— Oblique 13
—— Quick 15
—— Side or Closing 12, 35, 41
—— Slow 10
Stepping—back 13, 35, 41
——— out 11, 35
——— short 11, 35
Street Firing 122
Sub-divisions—Open Column of, entering a new Direction on a Moveable Pivot 50
———— Formation of, on the March, by the Flank March of Threes 60
———— Ditto, from File Marching 61
———— Ditto, to either Flank from 62
———— Open Column of Marching on an alignement 47
———— Ditto, passing a Defilé by breaking off Files 57
———— Ditto, Wheeling into Line 48
Supernumerary Rank—Use of 126

T.

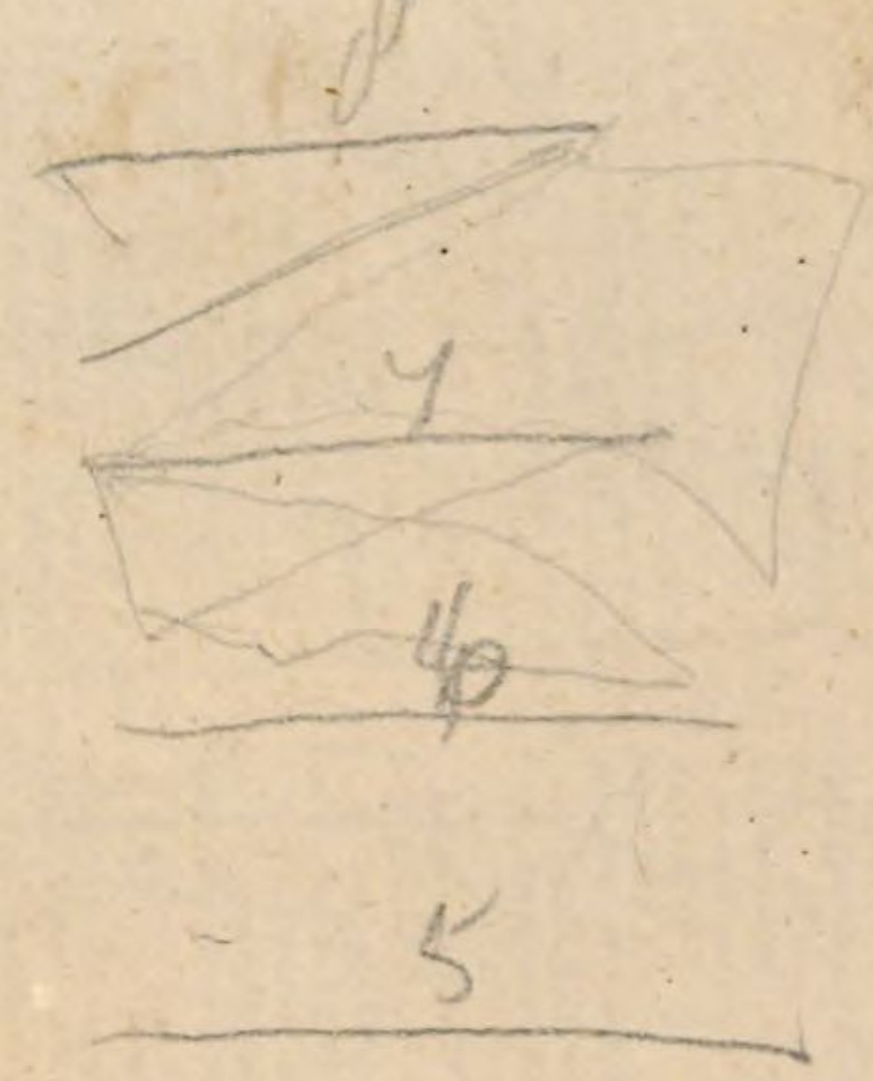
PAGE

Threes—general Operation and Movement of . 58-60, 94
—— how told off 38
—— how formed to the Right and Left . . . 58, 60
Turning—on the March 30
Two deep—how re-formed from Three Deep . . 60
——— how from Four Deep 43
Truce—Flags of 303

W.

Wheeling 74
——— on a halted Pivot 34, 75
——— on a moveable Pivot . . . . *ib.*
——— Ditto, by Sub-divisions . . . 45
——— of a single Rank in Slow Time, from the Halt . 21
——— Ditto, from the March . . . 22
——— Ditto, Backwards 22
——— Ditto, in File 33
——— of the Squad forward from the Halt . . 34
——— Ditto, Backward 34
——— Ditto, on a halted and moveable Pivot . . 34
——— of the Company from the Halt . . 45
——— Ditto, by Sub-divisions from Line . . 45
——— Ditto, Backwards 46
——— Ditto, into Line, from Open Column of Sub-divisions 48
——— Ditto, on the Centre of the Company . . 53
Wheels of Divisions may be made Forward or Backward . 76
——— how performed 77
——— necessary Recollections in . . . 78
Wheel of Quarter Distance or Close Column . . 168
Wings—change of, in a Column at Open or Quarter Distance 160
Wood—Passage of, by the Battalion in Line . . 133
Words of Command—in this book, how distinguished . . 38

London: Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES, 14, Charing Cross.



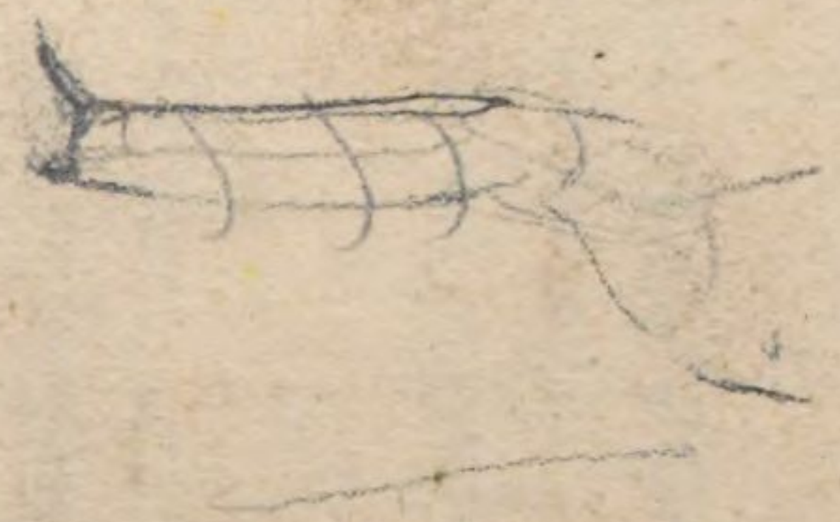
In relieving guard - the

Five by companies from the centre —
Right centre company commences

change front to Rear in centre

Right subdivision
Right about face.

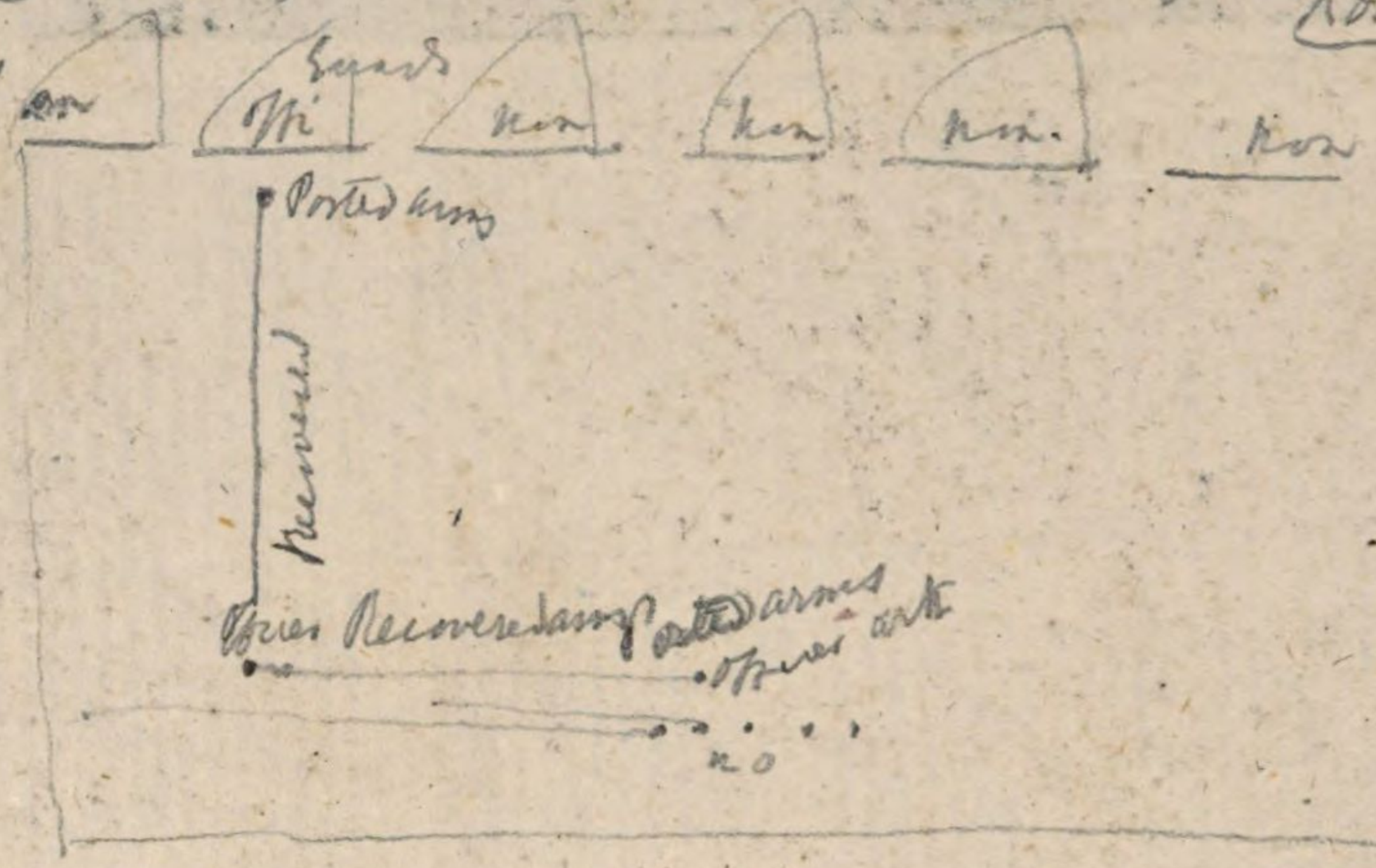
half front dress



Gewehr am Schulter
Rechts um

[redacted] ways on Right of his Company in Line & Wheeling from Colum into Line always proceeds to & dresses from the wheeling (Dwelling wheel)

T. Cank,



March past – (x Commence to m

in Relieving Guard x The old Guard stand with shoulder Corns –

x as you approach the old guard – you march slow – when you

alongside you open ranks – the old Guard present. you do do old Guard s

do – when God save Queen is pushed plant sentries, go round them &c – which done old Guard march

off – first part slow – while you present – let the drawn cease Beat

BSB Bayerische StaatsBibliothek

MDZ Münchener DigitalisierungsZentrum Digitale Bibliothek

Field Exercise and Evolutions of the Army, as revised in 1833

London [1833]

Sc.mil. 35 h
urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10784532-4